



*Yours Faithfully*  
*Sam Roberts*

Frontispiece

# MODERN BILLIARDS

BY  
**JOHN ROBERTS**  
AND OTHERS

EDITED BY  
**F. M. HOTINE**  
LATE EDITOR OF THE "BILLIARD REVIEW"

WITH 921 DIAGRAMS AND OTHER ILLUSTRATIONS

*SECOND EDITION*

London  
C. Arthur Pearson Ltd.  
Henrietta Street  
1902

Telephone.  
826 Hop

# Geo. Wright & Co.

Telegrams:  
"Billiards,  
London."

By Special  
Appointment to  
**HIS MAJESTY**



**THE KING.**

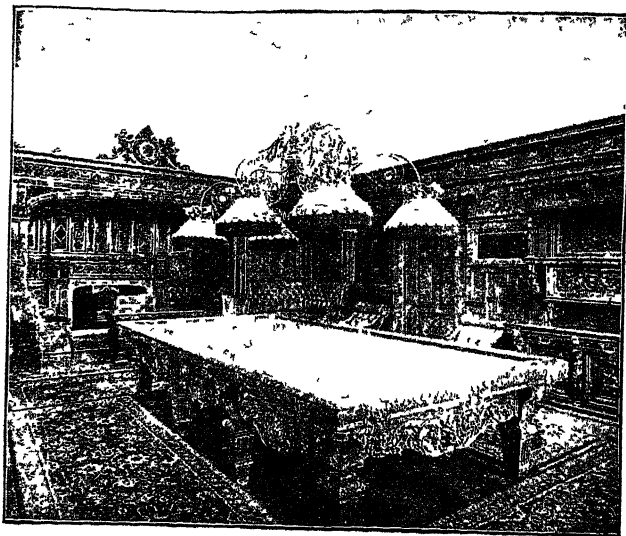
Makers to H.R.H.  
The Duke of York,  
H.M. Government,  
The War Office,  
and Admiralty,  
The late King of  
The Netherlands,  
H.M.I. The Sultan of  
Turkey, H.M. The  
King of Siam, The  
Sultan of Morocco,  
and the Leading  
Courts of Europe.

**TWENTY-ONE  
PRIZE MEDALS  
AWARDED.**

**TWO  
GOLD MEDALS  
AWARDED  
(HIGHEST AWARD)  
PARIS EXHIBITION,  
1900.**

**BILLIARD TABLE MAKERS,**  
Merchants and Shippers,  
AND  
HIGH-CLASS ART CABINET MAKERS,  
**158 to 164, Westminster Bridge Rd., London.**

SPECIAL NOTICE — West End Branch Show Rooms and Billiard Hall,  
7, ARGYLL STREET, REGENT STREET, W.



*This unique Room was Designed and Furnished complete by GEO WRIGHT & Co*

**SPECIALITY.**—Fine Art and High-class Panelling, suitable for Billiard  
Rooms, Entrance Halls, &c. Estimates Free.

ORIGINAL INVENTORS AND SOLE MAKERS OF THE

## **PATENT LOW EXCELSIOR CUSHION,**

*As used in the great ROBERTS and DAWSON Match, March, 1899.*

### **LARGEST SHOW ROOMS IN THE WORLD.**

Upwards of 250 Tables in Stock to select from. Prices from 50 to 300 Guineas.

Several FIRST-CLASS SECOND-HAND TABLES, equal to New, also some Good MATCH  
TABLES in Oak, Mahogany, and Walnut, used only for Matches, at greatly reduced prices

*Illustrated Catalogues (250 pages) and Testimonials Free by Post.*

The "Neoteric" Combined Billiard and Dining Table.  
(WRIGHT & CO.'S PATENT)

## PREFACE

IT may be as well to state at the outset that Mr. John Roberts is only directly responsible for the section of the book to which his name is attached, namely, that part which lies between pages 43 and 176. This section must not be confounded with the book under the same title which appeared some years ago. The complete work is here presented for the first time, and only thirty-five pages of it appeared in the book published under the title of *The Game of Billiards and How to Play It*.

*Modern Billiards* is distinctly an unique book. It is totally unlike any work on the game of billiards ever before published, and nothing between its covers can be found in any other book, of course with the exception above referred to.

Owing to space limitations much of the material at the Editor's disposal has been crowded out, but the selection he has made will, he thinks, prove the most instructive and interesting.



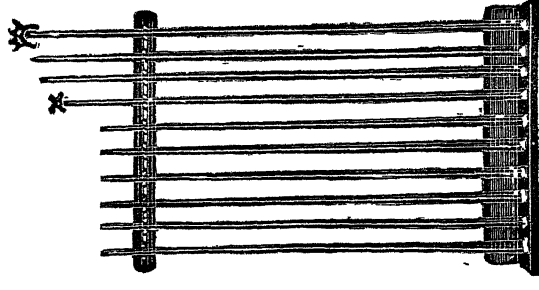
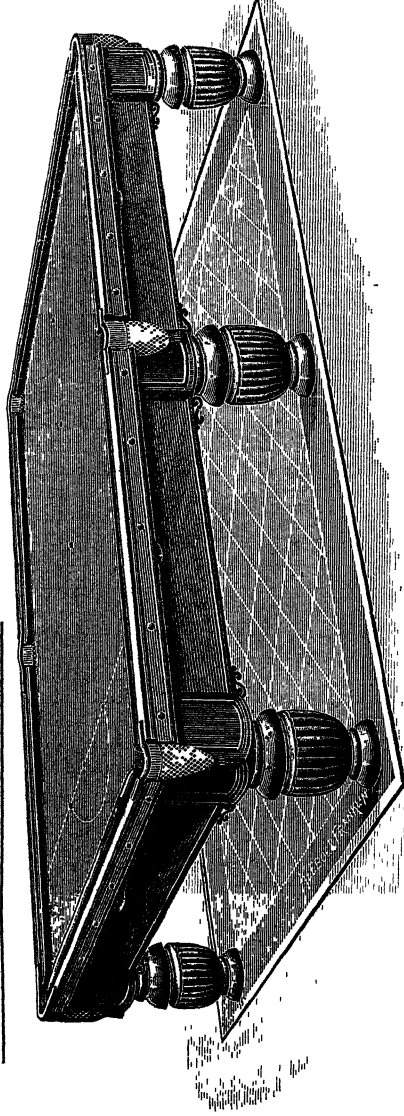
# The "Residential."

**£35 COMPLETE.**

SPECIALLY BUILT FOR PRIVATE RESIDENCES.

(Three-Quarter Size.)

THREE GOLD MEDALS AND DIPLOMAS.



## OTHER SIZES:

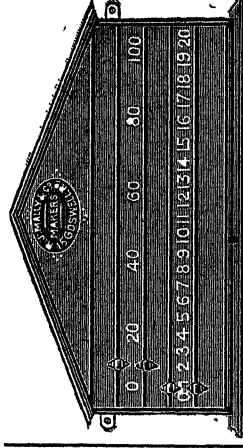
3 ft. 6 in.,	<b>£2 15 0</b>
4 ft. 6 in.,	<b>£5 5 0</b>
6 ft. by 3 ft.,	<b>£8 10 0</b>

SPACE OF ROOM REQUIRED 18 ft. by 13 ft. 6 in.

**SPECIFICATION.**—Solid Mahogany Rails, Low Fast Rubber Cushions, Thick Bolted Slate Bed, Superfine Cloth, White Cord Pockets, Chalk Cups, Mahogany Marking Board, Cue Rack for ten, six Cues, two Butts, two Rests, Holland Cover, 2-in. Ivory Balls, Box of Tips, Waters, Spots, Chalks, and JOHN ROBERTS' book on *Billiards*

**The "MALLY-SIMPLEX" Convertible Billiard and Dining Tables, from 12 Guineas.**

SEND FOR COMPLETE CATALOGUE GIVING FULL PARTICULARS.



**J. R. MALLY & Co.** Showrooms and Factory: **15, GOSWELL ROAD, LONDON, E.C.**

# LIST OF CONTENTS

JOHN ROBERTS THE YOUNGER. A Sketch . . .	PAGE I
--	-----------

## THE GAME OF BILLIARDS AND HOW TO PLAY IT. BY JOHN ROBERTS.

Introduction . . . . .	45
The Table and Accessories . . . . .	47
The Care of Table and Cues . . . . .	48
General Instructions . . . . .	49
Easy Losing Hazards . . . . .	51
Mode of Using the Rest . . . . .	54
Strength . . . . .	55
Kiss Cannons . . . . .	55
Losing Hazards with Side . . . . .	58
Some Cushion Cannons . . . . .	66
Cannons by First Striking a Cushion . . . . .	70
Some Cushion Winning Hazards . . . . .	83
Some Cushion Losing Hazards . . . . .	86
Close Cannons . . . . .	89

The Game of Billiards, etc.—*continued.*

	PAGE
Six Typical Close Cannon Positions . . .	95
Some Following Cannons . . .	102
Some often-occurring Winning Hazards . .	106
Some Gathering Strokes . . .	111
Some Useful Baulks . . .	116
Some Run-through Losers . . .	120
Importance of Position . . .	125
An Actual Break, giving the Reasons for each Stroke and Instructions for Playing	135

## TYPICAL BREAKS.

A Break by William Mitchell, with his own Instructions for Playing each Stroke . .	179
Breaks by an Amateur and a Professional from the same Leave . . .	199
A Losing Hazard Break by William Mitchell	219
534 Break by Chas. Dawson . . .	223
165 „ „ . . .	234
125 „ H. W. Stevenson . . .	238
Break by William Spiller . . .	240
„ W. Osborne . . .	241
„ F. Bateman . . .	245
 A BILLIARD "PATIENCE" GAME . . .	 248

# CONTENTS

xiii

## CELEBRATED MATCHES.

	PAGE
1. The Championship, and Accounts of the Sixteen Matches which have been played for it . . . . .	257
2. The Level Match between John Roberts and Charles Dawson . . . . .	300
INDEX . . . . .	317

# F. H. AYRES,

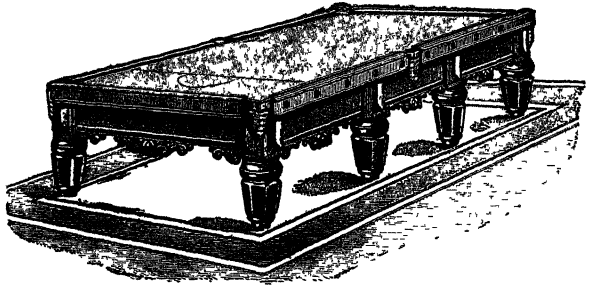
Manufacturer of all

INDOOR & OUTDOOR GAMES & SPORTS,

111, Aldersgate Street, London, E.C.

---

## BILLIARD \* TABLES



*SPECIALLY DESIGNED AND MANUFACTURED FOR  
HOTELS, MANSIONS, &c.,*

AND FITTED WITH THE

F. H. AYRES' "International" Low Fast Cushions

*AND ALL THE LATEST IMPROVEMENTS.*

---

**JOHN ROBERTS** made his record break of 679 Spot and  
Push Barred on one of these Billiard Tables.

---

TO BE OBTAINED FROM ALL DEALERS

---

Illustrated Catalogues on Application.

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

JOHN ROBERTS . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>	
AN ENAMELLED GOLD CUP AND SAUCER . . . . .	<i>To face page</i>	38
Presented to John Roberts by the late Maharaja of Jeypur		
LETTER OF APPOINTMENT AS COURT BILLIARD PLAYER . . . . .	„ „	38
JOHN ROBERTS' MODE OF HOLDING THE CUE AND MAKING THE BRIDGE . . . . .	„ „	50
JOHN ROBERTS' MODE OF USING THE REST . . . . .	„ „	54



## JOHN ROBERTS THE YOUNGER.

### A SKETCH.

JOHN ROBERTS, the famous son of a father no less famous in his day, was born at Ardwick, near Manchester, on August 15th, 1847, his father being at the time in charge of the billiard-room of the Union Club, Manchester.

When he was about ten years of age his father took the billiard-room at the George Hotel, Liverpool, and the family removed to that town. Young Roberts attended school at the Mechanics' Institute, Mount Pleasant, but the love of billiards was in his blood, and no sooner was he released from school than he used to make the best of his way to his father's billiard-room and knock the balls about for so long as he was allowed, which depended upon whether his father was present or not. If the elder was absent, young John would have fine times with Johnny Herst, one of the markers, who afterwards became a well-known player himself. It was from this Herst that young Roberts obtained much of his early instruction, if indeed he ever had any guidance beyond his own observation.

One of the regular customers at the "George" billiard-room at this time was Mr. James Barber, well known for his connection with the turf. He was a most enthusiastic billiard-player, and it was his custom to gamble heavily on any game he played. His most frequent opponent was a Mr. Hugh Williams, and they usually played games of 50 points up for £100 or £200, and the stakes in ready money were always stuffed into one of the pockets of the table. Mr. Williams always conceded Mr. Barber a start of 15 with the red hazard thrown in—that is, the red ball, instead of



being placed on the spot, was put into position for the easy loser. Barber was so enamoured of the game that he could not tear himself away from the table; in fact, on one occasion he had gone down to Liverpool to see the race for the Liverpool Cup, for which a horse of his had been heavily backed; but he got to playing billiards at the "George," and could not make up his mind to leave, with the result that though his horse won the cup he did not see the race! When playing billiards he would bet with the spectators on almost every stroke, stopping now and again to say in broad dialect, "Na then, aw think a'll hev a little settlin'." He was a good example of the men who make and lose fortunes on the turf. Of humble origin, he made a large fortune by horse-racing, and though he was up to all the tricks of the turf, his knowledge did not prevent his losing it again, so that he eventually died in very poor circumstances.

The elder Roberts afterwards left the "George" for the Queen's Hotel, in Lime Street, and it was here that the younger Roberts first noticed a trick of his father's, which ultimately had some bearing upon the introduction of the rule imposing a penalty for knocking a ball off the table. At that time there was no such penalty, and it was a common practice of old John's, if his opponent's score stood at 96 or 97, to knock his own ball and the red off the table, and so give himself a chance. The walls of the room were covered with dents at the height of the table where the balls had been driven against them with force, and on one occasion he actually drove a ball through a window nine feet from the ground. This was thought to be such an extraordinary feat that the pane was not put in for some time afterwards, the empty sash being covered with a curtain and shown as a curiosity.

The family came to London in 1860, and young John took his place as a regular assistant in the subscription-room of his father's rooms at Savile House, in Leicester Square. He says that money used to change hands very freely in this subscription-room, which was the resort of many well-known men about town, the late Lord Westbury and the late Earl of Dudley being two of the most regular players.

Savile House was burned down in 1864, and the elder Roberts went to Australia. He returned in 1865, and took billiard-rooms in Wellington Street, where the subject of this sketch played constantly.

The champion says that to the best of his recollection the first handicap he won was in 1866, but he has no particulars, and only remembers that his opponent in the final was H. Evans.

In 1867 he won a big handicap promoted by W. Dufton and played in the St. James's Minor Hall. The record of this handicap is valuable as showing the status of the different players before the public at that time, so it is given here in full.

Play commenced on Monday, January 14th, 1867. The heats were 400 up, and there were twenty-four players.

John Roberts, sen.,	London	.	.	owes	100
C. Hughes	.	.	„	rec.	10
Christmas	.	.	„	„	10
J. Bennett	.	.	„	„	10
J. Herst	.	.	„	„	10
John Roberts, jun.	„	.	.	„	35
W. Green	.	.	Liverpool	„	70
W. Dufton	.	.	London	„	70
W. Cook, jun.	.	.	„	„	70
H. Evans	.	.	„	„	70
T. Morris	.	.	„	„	70
G. Davis	.	.	„	„	70
A. Hughes	.	.	„	„	70
G. Mulberry	.	.	Twickenham	„	70
F. Symes (winner of a handicap at the Philharmonic)	.	.	.	„	100
S. Bunting	.	.	Manchester	„	110
W. Moss	.	.	„	„	110
G. Craggs	.	.	London	„	115
Gus Baillie	.	.	„	„	115
G. Collins	.	.	Bristol	„	120
J. Bradley	.	.	Scarborough	„	120
Bancroft	.	.	Manchester	„	120
Murray	.	.	Leeds	„	120
T. Ottoway	.	.	London	„	130

The results as far as Roberts was concerned were :—

FIRST GAME.—John Roberts, jun., beat W. Moss by 32.

*Breaks.*—Roberts : 11, 23, 11, 14, 16, 17, 28, 15, 21, 20, 10, 10, 15, 11, 12. MOSS : 10, 29, 12, 19, 21, 29, 10, 12.

Betting 5 to 1 against John Roberts, jun., for the handicap.

TENTH GAME.—John Roberts, jun., beat John Herst by 116. Time, 1h. 21m.

*Breaks.*—Herst : 13, 12, 10, 12, 48, 17, 14, 29, 19, 30. Roberts : 30, 11, 49, 15, 26, 14, 25, 15, 117, 19.

In the twelfth game John Roberts, sen., beat Dufton, and afterwards was freely backed for the handicap at evens, and 3 to 1 was taken about the chance of John Roberts, jun.

THIRTEENTH GAME.—John Roberts, jun., beat H. Evans by 101 in 1h. 17m.

At the start of this heat the odds on Roberts were 5 to 4. Towards the finish, after he had made a break of 53, £50 to £1 was laid on him. Other breaks were 51 and 63.

FOURTEENTH GAME.—John Roberts, sen., beat G. Davis by 90.

FIFTEENTH GAME AND FINAL.—John Roberts, jun., beat John Roberts, sen., by 97 in 1h. 28m.

Betting level.

*Breaks.*—John Roberts, jun. : 13, 61, 22, 14, 21, 48, 17, 50, 27, 13, 19. John Roberts, sen. : 45, 37, 31, 19, 55, 22, 42, 12, 22, 12.

In the final heat, according to the terms of the handicap, John Roberts, sen., had to score 500, while his son had to make 375. The elder man actually scored 403, or only 28 more than his son.

At this period the subject of our sketch had charge of the billiard-room at the Exchange Hotel, Newcastle-on-Tyne. This room was frequented by all the best people in the town, but the busiest time was when the race-meetings were on. Then there were high jinks, and the billiard-room was often kept going the whole night.

During Roberts' tenancy of this room, on the occasion of a race-meeting, the late Sir William Elliott played billiards

the whole of the night with a Pontefract bookmaker named Greaves. During the night, in the course of an argument between Sir William, who owned horses, and a Nottingham bookmaker named Nichol, who was also an owner, about riding, a match was made to be decided the following day, each to ride his own horse. The wager was for either £500 or £200 a side and the two horses. Owing probably to the "all-night sitting," which had a greater effect upon Sir William than upon the seasoned Nichol, the former was not able to do full justice to his horse, and accordingly lost the match.

Roberts played in another handicap about this time at the Post Office Hotel, Manchester. The players were almost the same as in the St. James's Hall Handicap. In this competition, however, young John owed 25 in 300 up, and his father owed 100. Young Roberts beat a player named Syddal in the first round, but in the second round he was beaten by W. Moss, of Manchester, the scores reading: Moss 300, Roberts 297. Moss won the handicap, the second prize falling to W. Green.

In the last game of the second round of this competition there was a good illustration of old-time tactics. The game was called, Green 297, Johnson 294; Green to play. With the object of leaving Johnson only one ball to play at and that ball on the spot, Green knocked the red and his own ball off the table. As already explained, this manœuvre was often resorted to, the elder Roberts being its originator. In the result it served its purpose here, for Green won the game.

W. Moss, the winner of this handicap, was about the best-known player in Lancashire. He was possessed of great nerve, and was, moreover, a great gambler. He was at the Chester Meeting the year that Beeswing won the Chester Cup. At the commencement of the meeting he had very bad luck, and had come down to his last five shillings. He put this on a winner, and then commenced "playing up." He backed winner after winner, and when the time arrived for the Chester Cup to be run he had quite a respectable

amount in hand, which he planked down to the last shilling on Beeswing and won £1,100.

He and Julius Johnson were always antagonistic. They were pretty nearly equal, not only at billiards, but at many other things, and they never met without having a dispute, with a consequent wager. They would fight, swim, play billiards, or anything else. It was not very material to them what they battled about, but they must battle about something. It is said that on one occasion, on a Sunday morning, when they were got up in silk hats, etc., they were walking on opposite sides of the river at Oxford. Though they were separated by the river, they must have the inevitable argument, which ended by both of them plunging into the stream to settle it in the middle. These two men played many matches in Manchester, when the bets would amount to thousands. Prior to a big match of this sort they would both go into training, but never in the same town; that would not have done at all. Moss usually selected Southport as his training quarters.

C. Hughes, another player in these handicaps, was a fine exponent of billiards, and at that time a great rival to J. Bennett. Bowles, Hughes, and Bennett were constantly meeting, and used to play at evens. Hughes afterwards went to India, and died there about 1873, on his way to Calcutta after visiting the Nawab of Dacca.

Christmas, the head marker at Pook's Club, St. James's Street (afterwards the "Cocoa Tree"), another competitor, was in those days supposed to be quite as good as anyone, except John Roberts, sen.

J. Herst, who has been previously mentioned as being a marker with old John Roberts at Liverpool, was also a very good player. After Cook had got into the form which led him to aspire to the championship, Herst beat him at evens in Scotland.

W. M. Green, who also was in the St. James's Hall and Manchester Handicaps, now keeps a large billiard saloon in Glasgow, where he has been for years.

W. Dufton, who promoted the St. James's Hall Handicap,

was selected by Earl Spencer to give lessons in billiards to the present King, and afterwards wrote a book on the game which he called *Practical Billiards*. In 1865 he played a great match for £1,000 with a well-known quasi-amateur named E. Green, who laid £600 to £400 on himself. Dufton won, and his backers thereupon presented him with an illuminated testimonial and a purse of 210 sovereigns. This testimonial was picked up in a saleroom a few years ago by William Mitchell, and is now in his possession. Dufton committed suicide, and Green, who at the time of the match was very well off, died in London about three years ago in the most extreme poverty.

H. Evans, another of the players, is still wielding the cue in Australia, and a few years ago was champion of that continent.

G. Davis, another of the players, was a turf commission agent, his principal employer being a gentleman named Nicholson, who raced under the name of Graham. As to one of this gentleman's horses, Gamos, who won the Oaks of 1870, Roberts tells a story.

He says that George Fordham, who was to ride, strongly advised him to back it, and meeting Mr. Hugh Williams, previously mentioned as being Mr. Barber's constant opponent at billiards, asked him to get £5 on, at the same time handing him a note for the amount. Mr. Williams replied that Roberts might consider it done. The horse won at 20 to 1, and Roberts, again meeting Mr. Williams about an hour after the race, asked him for £105. He said, "Good God! I forgot all about it, and did not put the money on, but I must pay," and pay he did.

About the end of 1867 Roberts played a series of games at pyramids with L. Kilkenney, of Huddersfield. The match was the best of twenty-one games for £50, Roberts conceding a start of one ball in each game. The score was ten games each, and seven balls all on the twenty-first game. Kilkenney got the remaining ball, and thus won the match. Roberts describes this as the closest and most exciting match he ever played.

Writing of Kilkenny brings to mind a funny story he used to tell. He was playing a match against a player named Bishop, and in the course of the game he made a simple *massé* stroke. This stroke was almost unknown in England at that time, and a pitman, who was in one of the top tiers of seats, was so overcome by what he thought was the unnatural behaviour of the ball that he started for the table, plunging through the spectators, and clearing his way by swinging his arms about. Arriving on the floor, he proceeded to shake Kilkenny violently by the hand, at the same time fairly shouting in a very excited way in broad Northumbrian, "By the holy —, did ye ivvor see such a shot in yor life!"

Roberts left Newcastle in the beginning of 1868, and spent most of that year between York and Scarborough playing pool and billiards. At the end of 1868 and beginning of 1869 he went on a tour in and about Lancashire with his father and William Cook. This was the time when Cook began to show promise of his future excellence by making breaks of 300 and upwards. He was then so much better than young Roberts that he used to beat him three times out of four, and had his physique and self-control been equal to that of the present champion, he might have remained his superior to the end of the chapter.

In those days, however, professional billiard players led very Bohemian lives, and the all-night sittings, the drinking, smoking, and other things were responsible for many good men losing form and weakening their constitutions. Roberts was no better than his contemporaries, but in addition to having the advantage of a strong constitution, he soon discovered that extreme Bohemianism and excellence at billiards do not keep company for long.

Somewhere about this time Roberts played a very sensational match at the Bush Hotel, Manchester, with W. Timbrel, giving him a start of 300 in 1,000. Timbrel finished the game with a break of over 100 with Roberts within 9 or 11 points of the game. During the course of this match one of the spectators actually laid £100 to £1 on Roberts, and, of course, lost his money. Nowadays there is

practically no betting or gambling at all on professional billiard matches, but at that time any match between professionals was sure to be productive of very heavy wagering, and in subscription and public rooms the amount of money which changed hands was enormous.

In December, 1868, a match which was productive of much interest and consequent speculation was played at the old Bentinck Club, which is now the Vaudeville Theatre. The players were John Roberts, jun., and W. Cook, and the stakes were £100 a side. Roberts was favourite at the commencement of the game, but Cook speedily deprived him of that position, and the game was called 346 to 288 in Cook's favour. Roberts then began to gain on him, and shortly after entering the fifth 100 he was again backed at odds on. Roberts won this game by 92, and his father, who was present, was so struck by the excellence of the play that he stated publicly that he doubted his ability to beat either of the players on the form displayed. Cook however, shortly afterwards evened up matters by beating Roberts easily in a match of 1,000-up at St. James's Hall.

Now occurred the first match for the championship, and here are some remarks of the younger Roberts concerning it. He says:—

“I fancy that it was about the beginning of 1869 that the idea first occurred to Cook to challenge my father for the championship. At any rate, I quite recollect Tom Cook saying about that time that he would back his nephew to play Roberts, sen., level if Will kept on improving as he did. When it became known that William Cook was actually going to challenge, I tried to persuade my father to retire and let me play instead, but he had the idea that he could not be beaten, and would not, therefore, give way. In vain his friends put before him the value of retiring with an unbeaten record, and assured him that he would have a magnificent testimonial given to him if he retired. He knew as well as anyone what Cook's abilities were, and could not disguise from himself the fact that it was by no means a good thing for him to beat Cook, but he would play.



"I was present at the match, which took place at St. James's Hall on February 11th, 1870, and, although odds of 5 to 2 were laid successfully on Cook, I certainly think that Cook was very lucky to win. He made his last break of 60 odd off a fluke, and on many occasions during the match the balls went very favourably for him and ran very adversely for my father. Again, the offer made by Lord Dudley while the match was in progress to give my father. £1,000 in the event of his winning rather upset his play for a time, and I have little doubt that it tended to defeat its own object by making him too anxious to win.

"During the match W. Dufton acted as a self-appointed master of the ceremonies. At the interval Dufton caused considerable amusement by advising the spectators to spend the most of the few minutes allowed in recovering their seats. As there were a large number of people standing, the hall being crowded and standing room at a premium, it was almost a certainty that anyone who left his seat for the interval would have to stand for the remainder of the time.

"If my father had won this match, he would probably have retired. If he had not done so, he would only have been putting off the evil day, as he must have been beaten a very short time after. After the match he had for a while the intention of trying to regain his position, but his play got worse, and with Cook and myself improving daily, he soon saw that it would be useless to make the attempt.

"In estimating my father's position as a billiard player, it must be borne in mind that for some time previous to this match he had had but little practice, and, in fact, never had more than could be obtained by playing an occasional match in public and by playing at his own rooms. Against this, Cook and I were always on the billiard table, and it is not surprising that while we, in the course of the four years from 1866 to 1870, improved beyond all expectation, my father deteriorated, or was at least left standing still. If the amount of practice my father had and the different conditions of play in his day and the present be taken into

consideration, I think that most people will agree with me in the opinion I have formed that he was a greater player than has been seen since. Had he taken the advice of his friends and retired without playing Cook, he would now, doubtless, be quoted by competent authorities as the greatest billiard player of any time."

Immediately after the conclusion of the first championship match young Roberts challenged the winner, a friend in the North of England promising to find the necessary £100. A week or two before the time fixed for the match this friend suffered a serious financial loss, and asked Roberts to try and find the money elsewhere. This he was unable to do in the time, and it looked as if the match would fall through. His friend, however, eventually found the money, and the match took place on April 14th, 1870, Roberts winning by no less than 478 points.

Roberts states that just before starting play he asked Cook how he felt, and he replied, "Oh, pretty well for a man who is going to be beaten." During the course of the match Roberts took a bet of £100 to £10 that he would win by 500 points, and lost it by 22 points.

Roberts was not allowed to rest on his laurels, for he was immediately challenged by Alfred Bowles, whom he easily beat by 246 points on the 30th May following. It may be doubted whether Bowles was ever really up to championship form, as he was always considered to be about 300 in 1,000 inferior to the elder Roberts. The strength of his game lay in cannon play, and it may have been this fact which led him and his friends to think that he would have a chance for the championship, as the small size of the pockets discounted hazard play. After this match he appears to have recognised the fact that he had attempted something beyond his class, for he never challenged for the championship again.

Bowles once played the elder Roberts a one-handed match for £100 a side. The match was played at Bowles's rooms, in Brown Street, Manchester, and, as might have been expected, Roberts won easily.

Five days after the championship match with Bowles Roberts played on the same day two matches of 1,000 up with Cook. The first one was played in the afternoon at the Crystal Palace, opposite the Handel Orchestra, and Roberts had the best of it all the way, winning by 226, the best breaks being 116 and 100 by Roberts and 104 by Cook. The second match was played in the evening at Cook's rooms, at the Prince of Wales Hotel, Paddington, when Cook won by 53.

A few days after this again (June 9th) Roberts played a somewhat sensational exhibition game at Birmingham with Alf. Bennett. He gave Bennett a start of 300 in 1,000, and actually caught him in the last 100, but for all that Bennett won by 77.

Alf. Bennett was a bit of a humourist in his way, and it was sometimes difficult to know whether his remarks were in jest or earnest. For instance, he once told Roberts quite seriously that he had improved in his play so much that he had not had a fluke for three years!

Roberts had to play for the championship again on November 20th. His opponent was Joseph Bennett, who succeeded in beating him by 95 points. Roberts thinks that Bennett's victory was much in the nature of a fluke, and was more due to Roberts having got careless in his play and deteriorated, owing to keeping late hours and not taking care of himself generally, than to the excellence of Bennett's game. He says further that the strength of Bennett's game lay in his losing hazard play, and that though he played what might be described as a splendid mathematical game, he ought not to be classed with those players who have the resource to make a game for themselves when they get into difficulty.

By the way, the honour of inventing the spot-barred game rightly belongs to Bennett, though it is generally ascribed to Roberts. So far back as 1869 Bennett issued a challenge to play anyone in the world "spot hazard barred," and this was long enough before Roberts thought of discarding the spot stroke. When Roberts did make the spot-barred game

his own, and had invented the break-making methods which every professional now aims at acquiring, someone asked Joe Bennett what he thought of it. "Think of it?" said Bennett, "why it's a devil of a game. He goes out for all sorts of strokes—and gets 'em too!"

Bennett was always very fond of dogs, and generally had several of them about him. A friend once asked him how it was that he showed such a predilection for canine society, and he is said to have replied, "I don't know. I suppose it's because they are the only pals I have in the world, and I can give 'em a good hiding if I like without their rounding on me."

About this time Cook's rooms at 99, Regent Street, were the gathering-place for men about town who liked a game of pool. The pools were open to the world—anyone could play—but professionals were only allowed two lives, and as may be imagined with this handicap, they did not by any means have the best of it. The play was not high—three shillings the pool and one shilling a life, but it was quite possible to lose pretty heavily. Roberts used to be a regular player there, and says that on the whole he does not think that he got anything out of it. It was by no means unusual for him to come away, after an afternoon's play, £5 or £10 out of pocket. He says in these pools he came across some of the best hazard strikers he ever met.

In those days a public billiard-room of good class was worth having, for club life had not taken such a hold as now, and the best amateurs used to do most of their play in public rooms. The attractiveness of pool, too, always made the rooms busy, but nowadays it is very much the exception to see pool played in a public room, and it is not played at all to anything like the extent it was.

In December, 1870, Bennett (champion), Cook, and Roberts played a series of matches at the Town Hall, Manchester. The opening match (750 up) was between Cook and Roberts, and Cook won by 428 points, making a break of 304, which included 59 spots. The same afternoon he beat Roberts two games out of three at pyramids. In the evening they met

again, when Roberts won the billiard game by the narrow margin of 24, and also took the rubber at pyramids. The following day Cook and Bennett played, and Cook won all the games, the billiards by 155 and 31, and the pyramids each time by 2 to 1.

In January, 1871, Roberts met Bennett again, this time at the Corn Exchange, Manchester. The game was 1,000 up, and lasted three hours. It was well contested, Roberts only winning by 30, his best break being 91. A day or two previous to this he had defeated Cook at the Maypole Inn at Nottingham in a game of 800 up at billiards, and the best of twelve games of pyramids.

The fifth match for the championship was played at St. James's Hall on January 30th, 1871, and resulted in the decisive defeat of Bennett by 363 points. Roberts was so confident of his ability to reverse the result of the previous match that he did not train or practise, though in the game itself he played very carefully, and did not throw away any chances. There was a great deal of betting on this match, odds of 6 to 4 being laid on the winner.

Between this time and May 25th, when Roberts met Cook in the sixth match for the championship, they played five matches together at Paddington, Bala, Great Yarmouth, Hartlepool, and Boston. Of these matches Cook won four, so that it was no wonder that he was made favourite when the championship contest came on. At one period of the game Cook was 150 ahead, but Roberts passed him at 624, and was himself caught at 668, and he did not get in front again until Cook was 872. Roberts absolutely threw this game away. He only wanted 15 to win while Cook wanted 36. Roberts had an easy screw cannon to go at, which should have left the balls together, making his winning a certainty, but he missed the stroke, leaving excellent position for his opponent, who ran out.

In the month previous to this match (April 21st) Roberts played a match of 1,000 up at Hull with William Mitchell, then known as "Bradley's Boy." Young Mitchell on this occasion received a start of 500, but he managed

to win by no less than 452, and also won the three games of pyramids which followed. In speaking of Mitchell, Roberts says that he has always thought that if the Sheffield player had taken more care of himself he might have made a bold bid for premier honours. Almost everyone who knows Mitchell is much of this opinion, and the glimpses of marvellous form which he even now gives us occasionally amply confirm it.

On January 2nd, 1872, Cook and Roberts played 1,000 up at the White Bear Hotel, Manchester. The highest breaks were 127 by Roberts and 111 and 100 by Cook. Cook won this game mainly by spot-stroke play, and, bearing in mind the mammoth "all in" breaks which were the rule only a few years afterwards, it is noticeable that his highest break was only 111.

Roberts tells the following story of the after-proceedings on this occasion :—

"In those days it was hardly considered the thing to go to bed before the small hours, and after the match Cook and I sat up with others talking billiards, and, as was also the custom of the time, taking a fair quantity of drink. About two o'clock Cook and I were engaged in a hot discussion as to our respective merits at pyramids, and by way of settling the question, I offered there and then to give him a ball. We adjourned to the billiard-room with several of the company, but we played so slowly that they filed out one by one, until Cook and I had the room to ourselves.

"About four o'clock a gentleman named Ainsworth, who was at the time the secretary of the Gun Club, came in, and hearing from the night porter or someone in the smoking-room that we were in the billiard-room, he came up. At this time we had been playing for nearly two hours, and we had been playing so much safety, and, moreover, the sitting up had so affected our play that in all this time neither of us had taken a ball. We both owed three balls, and had we continued playing, the game might reasonably have been expected to finish some time the next night.

"Mr. Ainsworth, seeing the position of affairs, suggested that we should postpone the game until another evening, and we readily fell in with the idea, as we were both heartily sick of the game. This incident led to my making a match to play Cook the best of twenty-one games of pyramids for £50 a side, I owing a ball in each game. We played at the 'White Bear,' on February 13th, with the result that I won by eleven games to seven.

"On one of these occasions I met a gentleman named Washington Taylor, an American resident in Manchester. He was a great frequenter of the Albion Hotel, then perhaps the place in Manchester most resorted to by billiard players. On the occasion I refer to he invited Cook and me to go up and play a game. We did so, and Cook won. Afterwards, sitting in the smoke-room, the talk turned on hotels, and I, having already had some experience of hotels in all parts of the United Kingdom, was airing my knowledge a little, when Taylor, turning to me, said, 'Why, you haven't any big hotels in this country at all. If ever I see you in America I'll show you what I call a big hotel.' Strange to say, some four years afterwards, when passing through San Francisco on my way to Australia, and having to stay there a few days, I put up at the Palace Hotel, then perhaps the largest hotel in the world, and going in at the door, I came face to face with Mr. Taylor, who hailed me with the remark, spoken as if we had only been arguing about the matter the day before, 'Ah, now I can show you what a big hotel is like!'"

It was in 1872 or thereabouts that Roberts took the billiard-rooms at 82, Market Street, Manchester, now in the occupation of Edward Diggle. He retained these rooms until 1876, and for about three years of the time he had them he was a total abstainer and won £2,100 in stakes.

It was in January, 1872, too, that John Bennett promoted a handicap at the Nell Gwynne Tavern, near the Adelphi Theatre. The heats were 500 up, and the final was 1,000 up.

The players and the starts were as follows :—

W. Cook	}	Each owed 100.
John Roberts, jun.		
Joseph Bennett		
Kilkenny	}	75 start.
Harry Evans		
Alfred Bennett		
John Bennett		
Fred Bennett		
Stanley		
Taylor		
Richards		
T. Morris	}	100 start.
R. Inman		
R. Wilson		
John Stammers	}	125 start.
W. Hinton		

Roberts was beaten by Morris in the first round by 89, and Morris was beaten in the final by Joseph Bennett, who won the handicaps.

On January 25th, 1872, Cook and Roberts played two matches at the Angel Hotel, Macclesfield, and Roberts won both. With the exception of the pyramid match above mentioned, they did not meet again until they played the eighth match for the championship on March 4th. Roberts was dead out of form on this occasion, while Cook was in very good trim. Cook won by 201 points, and in the course of the game made a break of 116, which up to that time was the highest break ever made in a match on a championship table. As to his doings during the summer of 1872, Roberts says —

“After this match I played but little exhibition billiards until the winter, being engaged very much in racing. In the racing centres there used to be a deal of high play at billiards and pool in the evenings, and though I must admit that at times I won some money, generally speaking, I was too heavily penalised to make much. As I have before mentioned, those were the days of late sittings and much



drink, and had I continued at this mode of life I am afraid that my billiards would have suffered permanently.

"A prominent figure in these gatherings, and an enthusiastic billiard player, was E. Green, who died only a couple of years ago in abject poverty. Green was to be found in the billiard-room in one of the hotels affected by racing-men at every meeting. He was, in my opinion, one of the gamest players that ever played, and played pool as well as anyone, especially on the tables we used to come across in these provincial hotels, where neither the tables nor the balls were calculated to enhance scientific play. Green was a very successful owner of racehorses, and was on one occasion reported to have won over £100,000 on two races. His good fortune on the turf, however, was more than counter-balanced by his ill luck in other lines, and he was eventually brought to extreme poverty, not, as might be supposed, by his turf speculations, but by commercial losses. If I remember rightly, one ship went down which meant a loss to him of some £34,000. Up to the end of his life he used to lament the fact that he had embarked in commercial speculation, and was firmly of opinion that had he stuck to the turf he might have died a rich man. He once played a match at billiards with Dufton, the professional player, for £1,000, Green laying £600 to £400. Dufton won, but it was generally considered that he was rather lucky to do so.

"The last I heard of poor Green previous to his death was of his being in the habit of frequenting a licensed house at Walham Green, where he used to pick up a few coppers at 'shell out.' As to this, my informant told me the following story: Green, just before his death, suffered from a trembling in the hands, and generally looked the very last man to be successful in a game of either billiards or pool. Well, one day—it was an early-closing day—he went into the billiard-room above mentioned and found about a dozen shop-assistants and so forth playing 'shell out.' He diffidently asked to be allowed to take a cue, and the players, after some demur from one of them as to the iniquity of 'sharking' the poor old gentleman, let him in. Now it was

a curious fact that, though ordinarily his hands shook as though he had the palsy, no sooner had he got his left on the table and made his bridge, than they were as steady as those of any of the company, and it was found at the finish of the game that the 'poor old gentleman' had pretty nearly all the money in the crowd."

The antagonism with Cook was renewed on November 9th, 1872, when they played two matches of 500 up at Pursell's, in Cornhill. They each won one of these games, but Roberts won the best of eleven games of pyramids by taking six games to two.

Pursell's was another great pool-room. As at Cook's, the game usually played was threes and ones, and the tables were going continuously from about 10.30 in the morning until seven or eight at night, when the place closed.

Before the year ended the rivals met again at the Grosvenor Hotel, Blackburn. In the afternoon they played 500 up and the best of six games at pyramids, and Cook won both events. In the evening they played 1,000 up at billiards, and Cook again won by 179.

It was Cook and Roberts again in the first half of 1873. On January 1st and 2nd they played two games of 1,000 up at the Hen and Chickens Hotel, Manchester. Cook won the first by 299, and Roberts won the second by 236. In the first game Roberts's best break was 114 (22 spots), but Cook made what was then considered the magnificent break of 396 (110 consecutive spots) and another of 112 (22 spots). In the second game the best breaks were: Roberts, 109 (27 spots), 50 (9 spots), 63, 59, 46 (these three breaks being all-round), 73 (mostly nurseries), 51, 65 (7 spots), 65 (9 spots), and an all-round 101 unfinished. Cook made 66 (9 spots), 122 (19 spots), 55 (16 spots), 141 (30 spots), 65 (20 spots), and 104 (11 spots). At pyramids they left off equal, each of them winning one of the sets of five games.

On January 27th and 28th they played a somewhat sensational match at the Waverley Hall, Edinburgh. The conditions were that four games should be played—two of 1,000 and two of 750—the player making the highest

aggregate to be the winner. Cook won the first game of 1,000 up by 259, and the following game of 750 by 516, thus securing a lead of 775. On the second day Roberts won the 1,000 up by 405, and the 750 by 392, thus beating Cook's aggregate by 22 points, and winning the gold medal which was offered as the prize. Roberts also beat Cook at pyramids on this occasion.

They again met on February 23rd, at the Albert Institute Hall, Dundee. There they played two games of 1,000 up, and Roberts won both, the first by 248, and the second by 146. Cook won the best of nine games at pyramids. Again, on the afternoon and evening of March 4th, they played two games of 750 up. Roberts won the afternoon game by 131, and Cook won the evening game by 219. They played the best of seven games of pyramids at each sitting, and each won a turn.

They met again at the same place on March 5th, when Roberts beat Cook by 74 in 750 up in the afternoon, and by 53 in the evening. They each held their own at pyramids.

Cook won two games which they played on April 1st, 1873, at the White Hart Hotel, Lewes. The first game of 500 up he won by 148, and the second of 1,000 up by 387. Cook was again successful in two games played on the following day at his rooms at 99, Regent Street. In the afternoon the game was 500 up and the best of eleven games of pyramids. Cook won the billiards by 114, and Roberts the pyramids by six games to four. In the evening the game was 1,000 up, and Cook won by 278.

On May 26th there was an exciting match at pyramids between Roberts and Cook. Roberts undertook to concede a ball in each game. The stakes were £25 a side, and the game ended in a draw, each player winning ten games.

Roberts went racing again this summer, and did not play in public until December 9th, when he took part in a big handicap promoted by Cook, and played at the Guildhall Tavern, Gresham Street. The entries and the draw for this contest were as follows :—

## MONDAY, DECEMBER 8TH.

H. Evans (130) *v.* S. W. Stanley (120), W. Dufton (170) *v.* T. Taylor (120), Joe Bennett (scratch) *v.* John Bennett (150).

## TUESDAY, DECEMBER 9TH.

L. Kilkenny (130) *v.* G. Collins (130), J. Roberts, jun (scratch), *v.* F. Bennett (120), J. Stammers (200) *v.* A. Bennett (150).

## WEDNESDAY, DECEMBER 10TH.

W. Cook (scratch) *v.* T. Morris (140), J. Roberts, sen. (130), *v.* A. Hughes (140).

Roberts beat F. Bennett in the first round by 133, but was himself beaten by Cook in the second round by 223. Cook won this handicap, the runner-up being Kilkenny. The heats were 500 up all in.

After this there were two games with Izar, the celebrated French hand-stroke player. They took place at the Falstaff Hotel, Market Street, Manchester, and Izar won both. The first was a cannon game of 150 up, which the Frenchman won by 18 points, and the other was a game of 500 up at ordinary billiards, at which Roberts was beaten by 198.

On January 14th, 1874, at the Guildhall Tavern, Roberts conceded F. Bennett a start of 300 in 1,000 for £100 a side. Roberts won by 68 in two hours and forty-four minutes.

He was at Cook again on January 27th, when they played 1,000 up at Pontypool. Cook was in excellent form, making breaks of 380 (125 spots), 157, and 129, and won by 122. Roberts's best break was 124.

On the following day they played two games at the Royal Hotel, Cardiff. The first game was 500 up spot-barred, and Roberts won by 116. The other was 500 up all in, and Cook won by 24.

In February, Roberts himself promoted a handicap at the Bush Hotel, Manchester. The entries and draw were.—

## MONDAY, FEBRUARY 2ND

L. Kilkenny, Yorkshire (130), *v.* John Smith, Liverpool (160); John Roberts, jun, Manchester (scratch), *v.* John Roberts, sen., Manchester (130), W. Timbiell, Liverpool (120), *v.* D. Richards, London (150)

## TUESDAY, FEBRUARY 3RD.

A. Hughes, London (150), *v.* G. Collins, Bristol (130); John Bennett, London (160), *v.* S. W. Stanley, London (120), W. Cook, London (scratch), *v.* W. Dufton, London (180)

## WEDNESDAY, FEBRUARY 4TH.

F. Bennett, London (130), *v.* H. Evans, London (130), A. Bennett, Birmingham (130), *v.* T. Taylor, London (130).

The heats were 500 up, and the final was the best of three games. Roberts beat his father in the first round by 131, but Cook knocked him out in the second round by 273 and eventually won the handicap by beating Joseph Bennett two games out of three in the final round.

On February 24th Cook again defeated Roberts for the championship by 216 points.

There was another handicap promoted by Cook at the Guildhall Tavern, commencing March 16th, 1874. The draw was F. Bennett (received 140) *v.* J. Stammers (received 250); H. Evans (140) *v.* T. Morris (160); Jos. Bennett (scratch) *v.* Louis Kilkenny (140); A. Bennett (140) *v.* D. Richards (180), J. Roberts, jun (scratch), *v.* John Bennett (180); S. W. Stanley (200) *v.* G. Collins (150); J. Roberts, sen. (140), *v.* W. Dufton (200), W. Cook (scratch) *v.* T. Taylor (180). The heats were 500 up, and Roberts was knocked out in the first round. The final lay between Stanley and Taylor, the former proving successful.

After this nothing of note transpired until the following June, on the first of which month Roberts met Bennett at St. James's Hall in a game of 1,000 up for £100 a side. The table was a difficult one, which, with the great amount of safety play, accounts for the fact that the breaks were small. Bennett never appeared to have a chance of winning, and was beaten by 432 points.

Beyond taking part in an entertainment for the benefit of William Cook at St. James's Hall, on August 20th, 1874, Roberts made few appearances in London, and none of any importance, until November 27th, when he beat Cook by 63 points in a game of 750 up, at 99, Regent Street, and

also on the same occasion took five out of nine games of pyramids.

In the early part of the same month Cook and Roberts had played together at the Brookland Hotel, in Manchester, and at the Victoria Hotel, Widnes. Both games were 750 up, and took place on succeeding days. On the first occasion Roberts won easily by over 200 points, but the second game was productive of a rather remarkable finish, for Cook only wanted 6 points of game when Roberts ran out with an unfinished break of 211.

The year 1875 is notable for the introduction of the American tournament into England. Previous to this all tournaments in England were played on the "knock out," or coursing principle. In the American tournament each player meets every other player, and the winner is he who wins most games. Cook was the introducer of this system into England. He had been to America, and on his return mentioned the matter to Mr. J. S. Burroughes, of the firm of Burroughes and Watts. Mr. Burroughes at once fell in with the idea, and his firm offered to give £100 as prize money. A meeting was held at the house of Mr. Burroughes, at which preliminaries were arranged. The eight selected players were W. Cook (champion), John Roberts, jun., and Jos. Bennett (scratch), T. Taylor (100 start), S. W. Stanley (120 start), W. Timbrell (140 start), A. Bennett and L. Kilkenny (160 start). The heats were 500 points up. The distribution of the prize money and the "gate" was to be *pro rata*, according to the number of heats won. Thus the winner of the greatest number of heats would receive nine shares, the next eight, and so on, down to the winner of the least number of heats, who would receive two shares. The winner was also to receive a gold medal, presented by Messrs Burroughes and Watts, and W. Cook presented a locket, value £10, as a prize for the highest break.

No one knew how to arrange the order of play, but after some trouble and guess and trial figuring, this was managed. The competition commenced at Bennett's Billiard Rooms, 315, Oxford Street, W., on January 18th, 1875, and was

an enormous success. It is pretty safe to say that there has never since been a tournament which at all approached it for public interest. The betting on the handicap was very heavy. A. Bennett was the favourite, his backers having to lay odds of 6 to 4 on his chance when he had won his first five games.

Roberts in the meantime was so unfortunate as to lose two out of the first three games he had played, so he was not thought to have a chance. He won the next four games, however, and tied with Bennett for first place with a score of five games out of seven, and beating Bennett on playing off the tie, he came out the winner. Cook, Stanley, and Taylor dead-heated for the third place, but did not play off the tie, while Taylor won the highest break prize with 248. Roberts was rather lucky to win, for had it not been for a fluke in his game with Taylor, he would probably have been beaten, and have had to put up with second place.

In February there was a handicap at the Montpelier Tavern, Walworth, in which Roberts beat Taylor in the first round, but was knocked out by Kilkenny in the second. This handicap went to Stanley, who in the final with Cook won two out of the three games of 500 up.

Cook defeated Roberts twice on the 24th February, at 99, Regent Street, in games of 500 and 1,000 up.

During the progress of the American tournament a match had been made for Roberts and Cook to play Taylor and Stanley a four-handed match of 1,500 up for £200 a side, the two champions conceding 300 start. This match took place on March 26th, 1875. Though the charge for admission was a sovereign, the hall of the Guildhall Tavern was packed, and money had to be refused at the doors. There was much speculation on the result, Roberts and Cook being made strong favourites at 5 to 4 on. One does not ordinarily look for the best of form in a four-handed match, but this was a notable exception, for each of the four played quite up to his best form, and it was a stern struggle all the way. Stanley was the first to make anything like a break, when he put on 209, which included sixty-three spot

strokes. Roberts shortly topped this with 289, also made mostly by the aid of the spot. Then it was Taylor's turn, and after getting spot position he was nearing 200, when in getting down to play he touched his ball with the side of his cue near the tip. Roberts at once claimed this as a stroke, and as no referee had been appointed the matter had to be settled by argument. At one time it looked as if the match would not go on, but eventually Roberts and Cook gave way, and the point was decided in favour of their opponents. Taylor ran the break into 348, which gave his side a lead of nearly the start received. Cook following, only scored just over a hundred, but Stanley, though left with fine position, could not take advantage of it, and, breaking down, left the balls in fine position for Roberts, who made 148. Taylor replied to this with 79, and after this play ruled somewhat slow until the game was called, Taylor and Stanley 1,333, Roberts and Cook 1,303, with Stanley to play, and left in dead position for the spot. The excitement was now very great, and it looked as if Stanley would finish the game. Alas! for the hopes of his backers, for he missed the very first hazard, and let in Cook, who made no such mistake, for he finished the game with a break of 197, winning one of the most remarkable games ever played between professionals by 167 points.

Though it had no connection with Roberts beyond the fact that he backed the loser, it may be recorded here that on the following day at the same place Cook played Richards the best of twenty-one games of pyramids for the pyramid championship. Cook was made a very strong favourite at the start, odds of 7 to 4 being laid on him, but in the opinion of many good judges who were present this was a false price, for so far from its being odds on Cook, the balance should have been the other way. Richards took the lead from the start, and when the game was called, Richards 9, Cook 6, it looked such a good thing for Richards that John Roberts himself laid odds of 5 to 2 on him. The game was not, however, by any means over, for Cook was never beaten until the marker called game. He took the next two games



in fine style, bringing off some hazards which called forth the enthusiastic applause of the spectators. Richards won the next game, which made the score read 10 to 8 in his favour. He had only to win one of the three remaining games to win the match, and his backers were already congratulating themselves, but they were doomed to disappointment, for Cook took the whole of the three games, and thus won the match.

The success of the London tournament on the American principle led Messrs. Burroughes and Watts to promote another one to be played in Manchester. The idea was to have the same eight players who had competed in London, but Timbrell was not available to play, and his place was taken by Harry Evans. The entries and starts were: W. Cook and J. Roberts (scratch), Jos. Bennett (100 start), T. Taylor (100 start), S. W. Stanley (100 start), A. Bennett (160 start), L. Kilkenney (160 start), and H. Evans (160 start). This tournament was played at the Cotton Waste Exchange, Manchester, in March, 1875, and was won in hollow fashion by John Roberts, who won the whole of his seven games and received a special prize in the shape of a silver tankard valued at fifteen guineas, in addition to the first prize. The second prize was taken by Louis Kilkenney, who won six games out of seven. W. Cook and A. Bennett tied for third place with four wins each, while Cook won the prize for the highest break, a handsomely fitted suit case, with a break of 304. Jos. Bennett retired after losing three games.

On April 30th, 1875, Roberts beat Cook in a game of 500 up, and in the evening of the same day Cook turned the tables in a game of 1,000 up, and also beat Roberts at pyramids. These games took place at Cook's rooms, 99, Regent Street. On May 5th they met again at the Angel Hotel, Chesterfield, when Roberts won a game of 1,000 up by 193.

Roberts succeeded in wresting the championship from Cook on May 24th, 1875, by 163 points after a very interesting game, and following this he twice beat Cook (500

and 750 up) at Newton Heath, on June 19th, in one of these games making a fine break of 290.

Between this date and September he played no public matches. At the end of September he met Louis Kilkenny at the Union Cross Hotel, Halifax, for two days' play. On the first day the game was 1,000 up, Kilkenny receiving 250 start. This game Roberts just won by 11 points only. The next day Kilkenny, receiving a start of 150 in 700, was beaten by 244. On this occasion they also played nine games at pyramids, Kilkenny receiving a ball, and Roberts won by five games to four.

The next public match played by the champion was at the Queen's Theatre Hotel, Manchester, for a piece of plate value £300. His opponent was W. Timbrell, who received a start of 300 in 1,000. Roberts was defeated after a close struggle by 62 points. This was on October 18th, 1875.

Two days afterwards the champion made his first and only appearance in public as a bagatelle player. Mr. Grundy was playing bagatelle in fine form just then, and—the result of some banter and argument—he and Roberts made a match off hand for £10 a side. Roberts was beaten easily, but was not satisfied until the process had been repeated. It is somewhat difficult to see why Roberts ever went into this. His chance of winning was small, and he had little to gain if he did win, while he suffered the loss of a certain amount of prestige by being beaten.

A few days afterwards he again met Kilkenny on successive days—at Lanscher's Hotel, Bradford, and at the Union Club, Bradford. Each game was 750 up, Kilkenny receiving 150 start, and Roberts won both, the first by 118, and the second by 17. At pyramids honours were divided, Kilkenny winning on the 29th and Roberts on the 30th.

On November 15th Cook won a game of 1,000 up in hollow style at Chelsea. Roberts was dead out of form, which may have been partly due to the want of public interest in billiards just then. Tom Taylor tried to take 250 points in 1,000 from the champion on November 29th,

at the Gloucester Hotel, Park Street, Oxford Street, but was beaten easily by 156.

December 20th, 1875, saw a very keen struggle between Cook and Roberts for the championship. H.R.H. the Prince of Wales was present, and it was evident that the lack of public interest in the game did not extend to championship matches, for St. James's Hall was packed. The players passed and repassed each other many times, and Cook was in front at the interval, but after nearly three and a half hours' play Roberts won by 136.

Shortly after this there was some rather sensational billiards at Cook's rooms, in Regent Street. He and Roberts were giving an entertainment, consisting of two games of 500 and 1,000 up. Roberts won the game of 500 up in the afternoon, and it looked as if Cook was going to run away with the game of 1,000 up in the evening, for early in the game he made a break of 362 (113 spots), and by the aid of other breaks got so far ahead that Roberts appeared to be hopelessly out of it. Much to the surprise of everyone, however, Roberts came out with breaks of 345 (98 spots) and 448 unfinished, and beat Cook on the winning-post.

In the beginning of 1876 Roberts left Manchester and removed to Brighton, where he had billiard-rooms behind the Bedford Hotel. Kilkenny was given a complimentary benefit at the Imperial Hotel, Huddersfield, in February, 1876, and Roberts gave his services. He played Kilkenny 1,000 up, allowing 250 start, and won by 218. Following an unimportant victory over Tom Taylor, Roberts played Timbrell for £300 a side at St. James's Hall, on February 21st. It was a very tame match indeed, and evoked little or no public interest. Roberts, who conceded a start of 300, won by 236, Timbrell never having the ghost of a chance.

A match played with Tom Taylor at the Globe Hotel, Newton Abbot, was remarkable by reason of Roberts making half his total points at one visit to the table, at that time a great feat. He was giving Taylor 250 points in 1,000, and made a break of 558 (175 spots), which enabled him to win very easily.

A few days after this Cook and Roberts played 750 up to celebrate the opening of the billiard-room at the Pavilion Hotel, Brighton. In this game the number of consecutive spots was limited to 20. Cook was dead out of form, and was beaten by more than half the game. The next night, at the Bedford Hotel, Bedford Hill Road, Balham, Roberts defeated Cook by 174 in a game of 750 up, and also took four out of five games of pyramids.

Roberts now made his first visit to Australia, leaving this country on April 6th, 1876. Here, in his own words, are his experiences of that trip :—

“Acting on the invitation of Mr. Alcock, a billiard-table maker, of Russell Street, Melbourne, an old friend of my father's, I went to Australia, little thinking at the time that the journey was to be the first of a series which was to include eleven visits to India, three visits to Australia, two to New Zealand, two to America, and six to South Africa. I, of course, went to Australia on a professional tour, and when I arrived there one of the first things I did was to make an arrangement with an agent to conduct all the business arrangements of the tour in consideration of his receiving one-fourth of the profits.

“The success of the Australian tour was so great that, happening to see an advertisement in the *Melbourne Argus* offering advice on that country to those about to visit India in a professional capacity, the idea occurred to me that it was very likely indeed to yield at least sufficient to pay expenses, and I accordingly had an interview with the advertiser, who, it turned out, had been travelling in India with theatrical companies, and was therefore just the man for my purpose. He advised me to write to two men named Soundy and Breslauer, who went in for theatrical speculations, and would, he thought, be very likely to take me up at their own risk. I accordingly wrote to them, and, having made up my mind to go on to Ceylon, I asked them to reply to me at Point de Galle, where the Peninsular and Oriental Company's boats called at that time. When I got to Point de Galle I found a letter awaiting me, offering £300 for a month, in addition to all my expenses. I at once closed with the offer.

“While in Ceylon I met and played with a precious stone trader named Mohammed Bey. Mohammed sold me two

sapphires, and on my hesitating as to their value, he offered to give me my money back at any time if I found that the stones were not worth the money I had given him for them. Sure enough, when I returned to England the next year I found that the bland Ceylon trader had not treated me any better than they are reputed to treat everyone when they get the chance, and that the stones were certainly not worth anything like the money I had given for them. I was mindful, however, of his promise to refund, which was probably made on the supposition that he would never see me again, and on my next visit to Ceylon I kept a sharp look-out for the gentleman, and on seeing him, at once tendered him his sapphires and demanded my money. He was very much surprised, but paid me at once, simply remarking that such a thing had never happened to him before.

“When I had finished the month for which I had engaged myself to Messrs. Soundy and Breslauer—out of which, by the way, they made a gigantic success—I decided to stay awhile on my own account, and engaged Mr. Breslauer as my agent. I made such a success of this tour, playing in military messes, clubs, etc., that the *Pioneer*, the leading Indian paper, referred to the tour as ‘The Great Billiard Epidemic.’

“It was on this tour that I first made the acquaintance of Ram Singh, the Rajah of Jeypore. It came about almost by sheer accident. I was playing at the Agra Club, and Breslauer, my agent, went on to Jeypore to ask for an engagement. The Rajah declined to give me an engagement, but said that if I chose to come he did not think that I should go away disappointed. We naturally thought that this was encouragement enough, and I went. I certainly never have had cause to regret that visit, for on that occasion the Rajah made me a present of 1,000 rupees, and afterwards became a most munificent patron of mine, giving me an annual salary of £500 as his Court billiard player, besides making me many valuable presents. This tour lasted a year and a day. I left England on April 6th, 1876, and returned on April 6th or 7th, 1877. I think I made about £7,000 over this trip, so there was no cause to regret having made the journey.

“I arrived at Bombay on the morning of the 24th January, in the Peninsular and Oriental Company’s steamer *Assam*. Perhaps the most important match I played in the course of this tour was one I played on the evening of the 24th February,

1877, at the United Service Club, Calcutta. My opponent was Major Mant, Royal Engineers, who at that time was considered, and I should say justly so, to be one of the best players on the Bengal side of India. Certainly up to the time of our meeting he was the toughest opponent I had met in India. The game was 1,000 points up, and I conceded the amateur a start of 600 points. I recognised the fact that I should have to go at my best pace to win, and accordingly made the most of my opportunities. I started with a break of 60, which was almost immediately followed by one of 23 and another of 21, and then the largest break of the match, viz 188, in which there were no less than 44 consecutive close cannons. This was followed by breaks of 56, 52, and 39, bringing my score to 508 to my opponent's 698, I having scored 508 to his 98. After the interval, however, I did not have it all my own way, and Major Mant overhauled me at a rapid rate, scoring almost every time he visited the table, his best breaks being 17, 23, 25, 21, and 31. Eventually I won by the narrow margin of 46, the scores at the conclusion reading: Roberts, 1,000, Major Mant, 954.

"I played this gentleman again during the course of this tour. This time the match was 500 up only, and was played at the Town Hall, Calcutta, the Viceroy and Lady Lytton, accompanied by the viceregal party, honouring the match with their presence. I won this match after conceding a start of 350 points, and then played a Mr. Dickinson, a prominent member of the Civil Service—he was a magistrate, I think—and beat him also. I was much shocked to hear some years ago of Major Mant's suicide, which took place in England.

"Another of my opponents during the course of this tour was Colonel, afterwards General, A. W. Drayson, Royal Artillery. I played this gentleman twice—once at Allahabad and again at Calcutta—on both occasions giving him a start of 700 in 1,000. On the first occasion, that is at Allahabad, he beat me; but on the second, when we played at the Town Hall, Calcutta, I beat him by 90 odd. Colonel Drayson was what I should call a scientific player; every stroke he made was well considered, and he seldom played any of a risky nature. He could play an uphill game as well as any amateur I have ever met. I heard some years afterwards that this officer became a professor at the Royal Military Academy at Woolwich, and I know that he is the author of one of the best-known

works on billiards. He was also, I think, a somewhat celebrated whist player. A few days after my second meeting with Colonel Drayson I played a game with a Mr. Morris, a judge of the Bengal High Court. This match took place at the Bengal Club, and was most keenly contested, Mr. Morris eventually winning by about 100 points.

"During this tour in India I played nearly every evening, mostly at different stations. I used to travel after finishing play, so as to be at the next station in time to have a rest before playing the following night. In many cases the places were far apart, and generally the trains ran but seldom, so that I was obliged to work things in this way. I suppose that during my seven weeks' stay in India I played on an average five nights a week, and travelled quite 1,000 miles to do so. It will be agreed, I think, that this was very hard work, and of course could not have been kept up for any length of time. I think that nothing could have exceeded the kindness and courtesy with which I was treated by everyone during this tour, and I took the occasion before leaving India to express my thanks through the columns of the *Calcutta Englishman*.

"One of the funniest incidents of the tour occurred when I was playing a native, a Parsee, at the Franjee Cowasjee Institute at Bombay. My opponent was a very bad loser, and several times in the course of the game made peevish remarks to the effect that it was of little use anyone playing against me, as the balls always ran very kindly for me and unluckily for my opponent. After the conclusion of the game I gave an exhibition of fancy strokes. A well-known fancy stroke of mine is to throw a ball down the table and, by putting twist on it with the fingers, to make it stop near some desired spot, generally in the D. The company was largely composed of Parsees, and when I came to this shot and commanded the ball to stop, and it of course did so, one of the most influential of them got up and said, 'I can understand what he does with the stick and balls together, but when he speaks to the balls and they obey him I have done with him, for he must be in league with the devil!' and, having said this, he got up and solemnly walked out of the hall, about a dozen of his friends accompanying him. The Governor of Bombay, Sir Philip Woodhouse, and party were present on this occasion, but had left before the incident occurred.

"My usual remuneration for these one-day matches in India

would be from 350 to 500 rupees. I daresay the average would come out at quite 450 rupees per night. On the afternoon in Calcutta when I played Major Mant and Mr. Dickinson I took about 2,000 rupees, and this, I think, was the largest amount I took at one 'show' during this tour.

"Another match which I forgot to mention in its place was played in the Chutter Munzil at Lucknow against Dr. Galway, who beat me with a start of 650 in 1,000

"Another incident of the tour was my taking an order from the Nawab of Dacca to fit him up two tables and supply all appurtenances. This order came about in rather a curious way. The Nawab on one occasion having expressed surprise that I played so well, I told him that I could play much better if I had a good table to play on—in fact, with a good table and appurtenances I could easily make breaks of 500. I am pretty sure that the Nawab did not believe me, but he gave me the order above mentioned with a view of testing my assertions when I next came out. The tables were duly fitted up, and I believe are still there."

During this tour Roberts, while playing a Mr. Weston at Dunedin, New Zealand, made the record time of 1,000 in 1 hour, 2 minutes. When news of this feat reached England it was disputed by *The Sportsman*, because that newspaper thought the performance an impossible one.

Prior to returning to England Roberts had challenged Cook for the championship, and this match came off on May 28th, 1877, at the Gaiety Restaurant, Roberts winning by 221 points.

On June 11th, also at the Gaiety Restaurant, Roberts gave Timbrell 300 in 1,000 for £250 a side, and Timbrell won by no less than 439 points.

Roberts had played Shorter the week before this at the opening of the billiard-room at the Chancery Restaurant, and had attempted to give him a start of 150 in 750 up, but was beaten by 319 points. He fared little better on June 18th, when he attempted to give Shorter 250 in 1,000 at the "King's Arms," High Street, Kensington, for he was beaten again, this time by 280 points. Things improved on the next occasion, however, for, playing Shorter at the Mitre



Tavern, Greenwich, on July 2nd, Roberts won a game of the same description as the previous one by 213 points.

On the 5th of the month, playing an exhibition match against Cook at the Suffolk Hotel, Lowestoft, Roberts made a break of 756, of course "spot in."

A tournament for the benefit of George Collins was commenced at the Alexandra Palace on July 14th. The players were W. Cook, J. Bennett, F. Shorter, T. Taylor, F. Bennett, and John Roberts. Cook and Roberts were at scratch, and met in the first heat, the heats being 500 up. Though Roberts scored 109 while Cook was scoring 2, the latter won by 130 points.

On July 16th Roberts played one of the closest games in his experience. It was at the "Delaware Arms," Portman Street, against Tom Taylor in a game of 1,000 up, in which Taylor received 250 start, and won by 11 points only.

After this Roberts went on tour in the provinces, and visited Liverpool, Southport, Manchester, Runcorn, Sheffield, Swansea, and Tenby. At the latter place, at the Royal Gate House on August 23rd and 24th, Roberts beat Cook "all in," "spot-barred," and at pyramids. The "all in" game was 1,000 up, and the final scores were . Roberts 1,000, Cook 856. At the "spot-barred" game of 500 up Cook fared even worse, for he only scored 240, while at pyramids Roberts beat him by six games to one.

After this tour Roberts and Cook played a series of games at Roberts's rooms at Brighton, Cook on the whole coming off best, as he did on September 22nd, when he defeated Roberts twice at his own rooms at 99, Regent Street.

The game was now dragging a bit in London and the South of England, and there was no money in exhibition billiards, so Cook and Roberts decided upon a tour in Ireland. They visited Cork and Dublin and drew good gates, and the tour generally was a financial success.

From Ireland they went to Wakefield and played 1,000 up at the George Hotel, Wakefield, where the billiard-room was then leased by Mr. Claude Norton, brother-in-law to Roberts. Here Roberts won by 250. Back again in London

they played at Notting Hill on November 1st, when Cook won, and almost immediately afterwards Roberts left England on his second trip to India and the Antipodes. Here, as in the former visit, we can let him tell his own experiences:—

“I reached India on my second tour early in September, 1878. To anticipate a trifle, I may mention that it was during this visit that I founded the firm of John Roberts and Co., of Bombay, which is now a limited company paying 12 per cent. My partner was the Mr. Breslauer whom I have before mentioned as being my agent when I first went to India, and who also acted in the same capacity during this tour. He is still the manager of the limited company. When we first started we imported carpenters’ benches and other tools from England, and Breslauer engaged a staff of Parsee workmen. One morning—the first after the arrival of the benches—Breslauer went down to the works, and was considerably astonished to find the men sitting on the top of the benches using their tools as though they had been used to them all their lives.

“I played my first match during this tour on December 17th. My opponent was a Mr. Bridger, who was on the staff of *The Times of India*. I forget exactly what start I conceded, but I know that I won very easily. One of my own tables was erected especially for this match, for of course I was travelling purely with an eye to business. This was in Bombay. The following night I gave no fewer than 650 points start in 1,000 to a Mr. Morrells, and won by over 70. In recording games against amateurs it is desirable to make it quite clear that in India the standard of amateur play is much higher than is the case in this country. Not that we don’t possess as good an amateur player; that is not my meaning. I simply wish to convey that amateurs *as a body* attain greater proficiency than is the case in England. The game just referred to was played at the Temple Bar Restaurant, Bombay. The owner of the place was Antone Bonneville, a Frenchman, who also had a similar establishment in Hyderabad.

“On the 19th—you will see that I was playing every night—I met Antone, a Portuguese, the marker of the Byculla Club, giving him 600 in 1000. Antone had a very good local reputation, but I beat him fairly easily, and won by 123. The following night was rather an important one, for then I set up a record, one, however, which I—and other players as well

—have frequently beaten well since. I played a Parsee, named Morenas, 1,000 up, giving him 650 start, and winning by 248. In the course of the match I made a break of 124, in which were fifty-six consecutive cannons. Such a run of cannons had never previously been made, and the achievement caused a lot of excitement. Morenas, my opponent, afterwards went to Baroda, where he entered the service of the Gaekwar.

“From Bombay I went to Calcutta, and on Thursday, January 4th, played M. Eugene Courjon, of Chandernagore. He was a Frenchman, who had been in India for some years. He was reputed to be the best amateur billiard-player in France before he went to India, and at the time of my visit he was, in my opinion, one of the best, if not the best player of English billiards in that country. He was also a confirmed misogynist. He had promised to play me on one occasion during my first visit, and duly turned up to fulfil his engagement, but noticing a few ladies in the hall, he incontinently bolted without saying anything to anyone, and I had to play a scratch match with a man named Green. When I next saw him I asked why he had run away and left me in such a fix, and he said, ‘Oh, I don’t know, I suppose that I was not very well’ He had a brother whom the Europeans used to call the Wild Man, because he would go out into the jungle for months at a time, and hold no communication with civilisation. He (Eugene) was an excellent musician, one of the best chess players in the world, and a magnificent shot; in fact, he was good at anything but facing ladies, and that he couldn’t stand. He was a most eccentric character, and very passionate. I remember hearing of him that he once went shooting, and because he did not hit anything he actually threw his valuable gun away. His house, like most bungalows, had all the rooms opening on to a veranda, and this veranda he had made wide enough to admit of a team of ponies being driven round it, and when he wanted any exercise he would have the pony-carriage brought on to the veranda, and drive round it until he was tired, and then jump out at the door of whichever room he wished to enter. I tasted my first dish of snails at his house, and though I did not at first much fancy the experiment, I found that they were very toothsome, and I enjoyed them very much.

“The papers spoke of my first game with Courjon as the most difficult I had undertaken so far. I gave him 600 points

start in 1,000, and commenced by scoring 200 whilst he obtained 40. At the interval the scores were 730—501 in his favour, and finally I won by 169. Courjon was not satisfied with his defeat. He had undoubtedly improved since my first visit to India, but then, so had I. The Frenchman had practised the 'spot' a good deal, and thought he might turn the tables on me, so we met for a second match on Saturday, January 5th. The game was a noteworthy one. It was decided at the Dalhousie Institute, Courjon again receiving 600 start in 1,000. The match went all in favour of the Frenchman for a long while, and he eventually reached 940 to 800. I ran to 962 against 973, however, and then went out.

"Subsequently Courjon had the satisfaction of beating me, for, when receiving 650 in 1,000 on one occasion, he played a very fine game, and won by as many as 370.

"At this time I received an invitation from the Nawab of Dacca to his private mansion. An amateur player of fairish ability was pitted against me there on January 14th. We played two games of 500 points up. I conceded 300 start, and was beaten by 266 points the first time, but won the second by 47. The Nawab was a great admirer of the all-round game, and so I confined my attention almost solely to that, making but slight effort to play the 'spot' stroke. I may mention that the name of my opponent at Dacca was Vahid, but the gentleman of the same name who has competed in amateur championships in this country bears no relationship to him.

"I must place it on record that both the Nawab Abdul Ghoni and his son the Nawab Ahsunollah treated me with the greatest kindness. The younger, especially, I found to be a capital fellow, and a good all-round sportsman to boot. I have not mentioned previously that Mrs. Roberts accompanied me on this tour. At Dacca I received many presents from Nawab Abdul Ghoni, who also gave Mrs. Roberts a very valuable cashmere shawl.

"During the same month I visited Bengal. On the 23rd I played some games with amateurs. One man I gave 200 points in 300 up, and won by 9, after which I played a couple of men at the same time, allowing them half-way start in a game of 300 up. I did not catch them until their score was 290, but I then ran out. Up to this time I had only been beaten twice during the tour, but at the same time was not

showing my best form. Some of the newspapers noticed the fact, and commented upon it. There was a simple and an obvious reason for the fact, however. My want of form was due partly to the fact that I was playing on all sorts of tables, some of them very bad, and partly to the constant travelling.

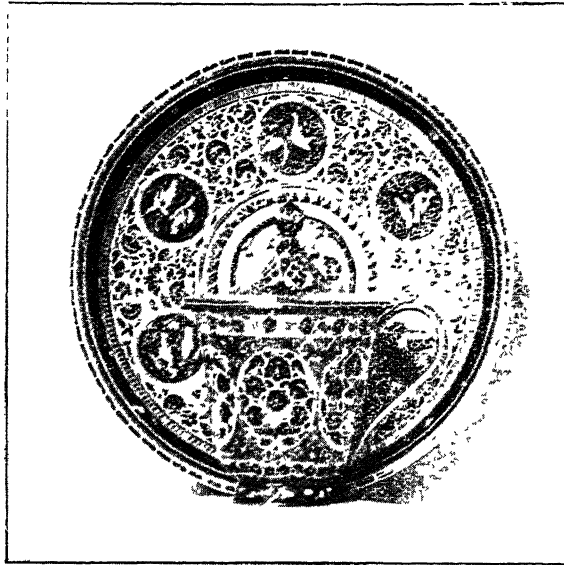
"On January 28th I was at Allahabad, and at the club there gave an entertainment. On this occasion I met two amateurs, conceding 300 points in 500 each game. Mr Porter and Mr. Shirooze were my rivals, and both were easily beaten.

"During my stay in India there was a Frenchman named Carme touring the country. He gave exhibitions of the French game, but they did not pay, and I and a few friends assisted him to go to South Africa. I am pleased to say this effected a great alteration in his fortunes, and at Kimberley he did very well.

"On February 1st I was at the Agra Club, and played a very exciting game with a Mr. Billings, who had 600 start in 1,000. The game was called 974 all, and then 998 to 980 in favour of Billings. He was left with an easy stroke on, but failed to get it, and I ran out amidst very great excitement. The same evening I left for Jeypore, under engagement to the Maharajah. The city of Jeypore lies 140 miles S.W. of Agra, but is approached with great ease. The late Maharajah built a most exquisite palace solely for the purpose of billiards. Ram Singh, although not anything of a billiard-player himself, was wonderfully fond of the game, and I must say he treated me with the greatest distinction. A suite of rooms in the Palace were placed at my disposal, and during my stay I, of course, lived in them. I played mostly with Runjit Singh, the Rajah's head marker, who was supposed to be the best native player in the country.

"His Highness was delighted with my play, although, as previously stated, my average in India was far below that for England, and on leaving he presented me with an enamelled gold cup and saucer, studded with diamonds. I was also appointed his Court billiard-player, and the letter of appointment—a reduced facsimile of which I reproduce—carried with it a salary of £500 per annum, which I enjoyed up to the day of Ram Singh's death.

"I left Jeypore on January 15th or 16th and went to Meerut, where I played on the 18th. From Meerut I journeyed to Umballa, appearing at the Sirhind Club, and thence to Lahore.



AN ENAMELLED GOLD CUP AND SAUCER  
PRESENTED TO JOHN ROBERTS BY THE LATE MAHARAJA OF JYAPUR

I cannot give better expression to the great pleasure I have felt in witnessing Mr John Roberts (junior) the Champion's wonderful feats on the Table than by resuing him to some special distinction at my Court I accordingly appointed him my Court Billiard Player from this day the 11 February 1872, to be in my Palace at Jyपुर.

LETTER OF APPOINTMENT AS COURT BILLIARD PLAYER



At the latter place I had the pleasure of playing Major Broadfoot, the editor of the *Badminton Billiard Book*. I then proceeded down country, playing at Agra, Dinapore, Bombay (two nights), Hyderabad—at Sir Sala Jung's invitation—Secunderabad, and Bangalore. Afterwards entertainments were arranged for me in Madras, Colombo, Kandy, and Galle. The latter was the last of the series, and about the end of April I took ship for Melbourne, where I expected to meet either Shorter, Stanley, Taylor, or Kilkenny, from England. I had booked dates in Australia till the end of September. Ere leaving India I undertook to return in October, and booked a few engagements. I was certain that my play had to some extent suffered through my playing nobody but amateurs. It was my idea that on my return to India I would take with me a good professional. I had Shorter in my mind, for at that time he was, in my opinion, the next best player to Cook and myself.

"I was again defeated at the Sirhind Club at Umballa. I tried to give Major Angelo 600 points start in a thousand, but the table was a dreadful one. 'Spot'-stroke play was absolutely out of the question on it, and I never caught the Major, who won by 90 points. Altogether my second visit to India proved very enjoyable. It was also highly remunerative, and was one that I shall always recollect with pleasurable feelings."

In 1879 and 1880 Roberts made a third visit to India, this time in company with Cook; and it was after the return from this tour—in the autumn of 1880—that he first attempted to give Cook a start. This match was for £500 a side, and took place at the Palais Royal, Oxford Street, W., on January 16th, 17th, and 18th, 1881, Roberts conceding Cook 500 points in 5,000 up (all in). Though Roberts was so ill on the second day that it was thought that he would have to abandon the match, he won in hollow fashion by no less than 1,658 points.

Space will not permit much detail with regard to Roberts's career for the past twenty years. His matches during that period have been mostly of the exhibition order, and are not to be taken too seriously. By far the most interesting part of his career is the ten years when he and Cook were active rivals, and there was little to choose between them



When Cook had sunk into a secondary position and Roberts became the autocrat of the billiard world he became more or less a showman, and his matches, generally speaking, do not possess any value as records. Perhaps the two most interesting matches he played during this period were his match of 6,000 up with Ives in 1893, and his match with Dawson in the early part of the year 1899. The latter has not improperly been called the "match of the century," and was certainly one of the most interesting matches at billiards ever played.

The match with Ives can hardly be called a match at English billiards. It was played at Humphreys Hall, Knightsbridge, between May 29th and June 4th, 1893, and resulted in a victory for Ives by 2,169 points. The English game proper is, as is well known, played with balls  $2\frac{1}{8}$  inches in diameter, the pockets being  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches wide at the fall of the slate. In the game under notice a compromise was made, the balls being  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches in diameter and the pockets were only  $3\frac{1}{4}$  inches wide. This was, of course, all against hazard play, the backbone of the English game, and in favour of cannon play, at which American and Continental players greatly excel those who play the English game. Notwithstanding this, Roberts was ahead on the first three days of the match, the scores at the close of the third day's play being: Roberts 3,000, Ives 2,243.

On the Thursday, however, Ives got the balls in one of the corners. They were not jammed under the English rule, as to fall within that rule part of the balls had to overhang the pocket, and this was an impossible position with balls and pockets of the size used in this match. The position was more what is known in America as the "anchor," and was perfectly allowable under the articles. With the balls in this position Ives made a break of 2,540, and then purposely destroyed the position, feeling no doubt that he had the game perfectly safe. On the Saturday he again got this position, and went out with a break of 892. Roberts' highest break was 249.

It will be seen that there is not the slightest foundation

here for saying that Ives beat Roberts at English billiards, for the game was not English billiards, but a compromise between the English and American games, and yet there are still many people in England who maintain that the American came over here and beat Roberts at his own game. If any American thought that he would stand a chance at that there would surely have been some acceptor before this of Roberts's standing offer to give 5,500 in 21,000 to anyone in the world for £1,000 a side.

Between this match and the recent match with Dawson there comes Roberts's record spot-barred break. This break was made in a purely exhibition match, and would probably have never been made at all in a match for money, for in serious money matches breaks do not rule high. This break was made on Thursday and Friday, May 3rd and 4th, 1894, in the course of an exhibition match with E. Diggle at the Gentlemen's Concert Hall, Manchester, and it entitled Roberts to the prize of £100 which Messrs. Burroughes and Watts had offered to anyone who first made a break of 1000. The break was of an ordinary character until he had reached 400, when he had to face a difficult *massé* stroke; following this he played an all-round game until he reached 700, and then he put on a string of 54 nursery cannons. When he had passed his previous best spot-barred break of 867 a cheer from the Press table announced the fact. When he had made 1,000 the cheering was loud and prolonged, and the champion was kept for some minutes bowing his acknowledgment. At 1,033 play ceased for the day, with the balls in no very good position for continuing the break. He carried the break on to 1,392, however, and then in playing for a red winner in the left hand corner pocket he played a trifle short of strength, and the ball stopped dead in the jaw of the pocket. At the conclusion of the break there was a scene of the wildest enthusiasm, and Roberts in all his experience probably never got such an ovation before. This break still holds the record, and from all appearances is likely to do so for some considerable time to come.

The level match with Dawson which has been referred

to as "the match of the century" was brought about in the first place by some ill-feeling between the men, caused by a dispute over the takings at the Egyptian Hall when Dawson was playing there on sharing terms. This happened the season before, and as the outcome of some remarks made by Dawson as to Roberts insisting upon those professionals who played at the Egyptian Hall "waiting" for one another and playing to the "gate" there was an acrimonious newspaper correspondence, which culminated in Dawson offering to play level for £100 a side.

It is difficult to believe that Dawson actually thought that he had a chance with Roberts at evens. What is more probable is that Dawson and his friends thought that the advertisement to be got out of such a match would be very cheap indeed at the stake money, £100. Be that as it may, the issue of the match was never in doubt, and the general impression is that Roberts could have won by a much greater margin than he did had he so desired.

Since 1898 Roberts has played exclusively with bonzoline balls, the only exception being the match with Dawson above alluded to.

It will be interesting to see the developments when Roberts returns from his present tour to India and the colonies. It is quite on the cards that he will voluntarily retire when he returns, but that will depend upon his own opinion of his capabilities. He will hardly retire so long as he thinks himself unbeatable at evens, but, on the other hand, he is hardly likely to stay before the public until advancing age makes defeat a certainty.

THE  
GAME OF BILLIARDS  
AND  
HOW TO PLAY IT

BY  
**JOHN ROBERTS**

NOTE.—This is the complete work. The part previously published under the same title is the first 45 pages only.



## INTRODUCTION.

THE trite saying that billiards cannot be learned from books simply amounts to an assertion that it is impossible to train the hand and the eye without actual practice. This fact is so self-evident that it is a little curious that such a saying became current at all. I may say at once that this book does not claim to teach billiards in the sense of imparting skill to the hand and eye. What I do claim for the book is that it is eminently practical, and that it places within the reach of anyone who has mastered the art of holding the cue and striking a ball, and who is willing to train his hand and eye by working out the instructions over and over again on a billiard table, the means of acquiring a billiard education which will enable him to play a more than average amateur game.

There is no royal road to proficiency at billiards. The man who spends many pounds in lessons will never make a player unless he takes a great deal of practice, and for private practice this book will be found to be invaluable, inasmuch as it may be said to consist of amplified notes of my oral instructions to pupils.

No attempt has been made to deal with theories. I did not learn to play billiards myself by studying theory, and never met anyone who did, consequently I have come to the conclusion that in the present work, which is intended to be of a popular character, theory may well make room for more useful matter.

In conclusion, I would earnestly advise the would-be good player to "practise and persevere," play with better players, and watch the play of professionals whenever possible.

JOHN ROBERTS.

1. The measurements referred to in the explanations of the diagrams are taken from the edge of the cushion to the centre of the ball.

2 It must be understood that to make properly the strokes described in this book it is absolutely necessary that the balls should be true and of equal size and weight.

3. The cushions and pockets are numbered from the left hand standing at the baulk end Thus the bottom left-hand pocket and the bottom cushion are No. 1.

# THE GAME OF BILLIARDS

## AND HOW TO PLAY IT.

### THE TABLE AND ACCESSORIES.

THE framework of billiard tables is usually constructed of mahogany, but oak, walnut, pine, and even deal, are also used. Five slate slabs of any thickness, 2 inches being the usual thickness of bed in the better-class tables, are laid upon this framework, and when covered with cloth form the playing surface, which, needless to state, should be perfectly level and free from inequalities. The cushions, six in number, are secured to the slate bed by bolts. There are six pockets, one at each corner and one at each side, midway between the corner pockets. In reality there is no standard size of pocket, but the general size may be taken as from  $3\frac{1}{4}$  to  $3\frac{5}{8}$  inches at the fall of the slate. In the matter of pockets, no two tables are exactly alike; there is always some slight difference, and even on the same table all the pockets are seldom exactly similar. The actual size of the playing surface varies slightly in different makes, but generally speaking may be taken as 5 ft. 10 in by 11 ft.  $8\frac{3}{4}$  in. The size of the playing surface does not alter the game in the slightest beyond the fact that the player has to calculate the strength of his strokes according to the size of the table.

The various spots are placed on an imaginary line drawn down the centre of the table, the billiard spot being  $12\frac{3}{4}$  inches from the face of No. 4 cushion, the pyramid spot at the point of intersection of two imaginary lines drawn from the centres of the middle pockets to the centres of the opposite top pockets, and the centre spot in the dead centre of the table. The baulk is the space behind a line drawn across the table 29 inches from the face of the bottom cushion and parallel to it. The "D" is a half-circle drawn on and behind the baulk-line, having a chord of 23 inches, the centre of which coincides with the centre of the baulk-line.



As to balls, the point of most importance is that they should be of equal size and weight. The actual size and the actual weight is of minor importance, but for our English cushions the best size is  $2\frac{1}{8}$  in. to  $2\frac{3}{8}$  in., any larger size is apt to jump. The weight of an ivory ball of this size is from  $4\frac{1}{2}$  to 5 ozs.

The best cues, in my opinion, are those made by hand, of good ebony and thoroughly well-seasoned English ash, and it is imperative that they should be well balanced. Such cues are somewhat expensive, but I think that they will be found to be the cheapest in the end. As to the weight of a cue, I think 15 to 16 ozs. is heavy enough for anyone. The length of a cue should be from 4 ft.  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. to 4 ft. 9 in.

The cloth has a great effect on play. An inferior cloth is no real economy, as the cheap qualities absorb moisture quickly and stretch considerably, making it impossible to keep them tight.

Good chalk, too, is necessary to good play. It is very annoying when one has the balls in position for a good break to come to grief through a miss-cue. Before the introduction of special high-priced chinks, the best chalk to be got was, in my opinion, a lump taken from the English cliffs, cut into small pieces and dried, and I would recommend this now to those who do not care to go to the expense of a manufactured chalk. Such are, I think, few in number; for an ordinary player can keep himself supplied with the best chalk at an expenditure of a couple of shillings a year.

### THE CARE OF TABLE AND CUES.

The care bestowed on the table and cues has a great effect on play. A table which is in constant use should be brushed after every set of players have finished, and ironed once a day. If only used for an occasional game—as, for instance, a table in a private house—it will be sufficient to iron at intervals of three or four days in dry weather, but ironing should be resorted to every day the table is to be used if the weather be wet, as billiard cloth, especially the cheaper qualities, absorbs moisture rapidly, and a damp cloth makes a slow table. The iron should not be taken all round the table under the cushion, as is done by many markers, but should be placed on the table close to the centre of cushion No. 1 (the *length* of the iron being parallel to the cushion), but not allowed to remain stationary. The iron should then be taken up the table, slowly or quickly according to the

heat of the iron, to the same position under No 4 cushion, and then *carried* back to cushion No. 1, and the process repeated until the whole bed has been ironed in swathes the width of the iron's length. On no account should the cloth be ironed the other way—*i.e.* from spot to baulk—as this would be against the nap, if the cloth be properly put on. In brushing, the brush should be used both with and against the nap. After brushing, a cloth should be wrapped round the brush and worked the way of the nap—*ie* from cushion No. 1 to cushion No. 4—to smooth it down. In the winter-time solid rubber cushions require great care, if the table is to be kept decently playable. Even the best of these cushions harden under the influence of cold, and the only sure way of keeping them in first-class order is to maintain a temperature of about sixty degrees in the billiard-room day and night. If this be impracticable, cushion warmers must be resorted to when the table is required for play.

It will, I think, be generally admitted, even by novices, that billiards cannot be played with a crooked cue, and yet how many persons thoughtlessly stand a cue leaning against the wall after using it! The best cue ever made would not keep true under this usage, and the inferior French and German-made cues, so much used in public billiard-rooms, will stand very little of it. It is therefore not surprising that the best players are chary of playing with any cue but their own, of which they take especial care. To keep cues in good playing order it is a good plan to lay them out of the rack on the table every night. This ensures their being in the best position for keeping them straight, and at the same time reminds the person in charge of the table that the cues ought to be dusted every day. In my opinion, none of the forms of cue-rack in present use are satisfactory, inasmuch as none of them allow the cue to lie flat; but it makes the best of existing conditions if the cues are laid on the table every night.

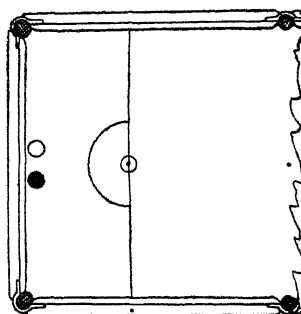
### GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS.

I would first observe that a great deal of practice is necessary if one wishes to become even a tolerable player. I know of no exception to this rule, indeed, the best players, generally speaking, will be found to be those who have practised most. It is even possible, I should say, to attain good amateur proficiency by practice alone without aptitude.

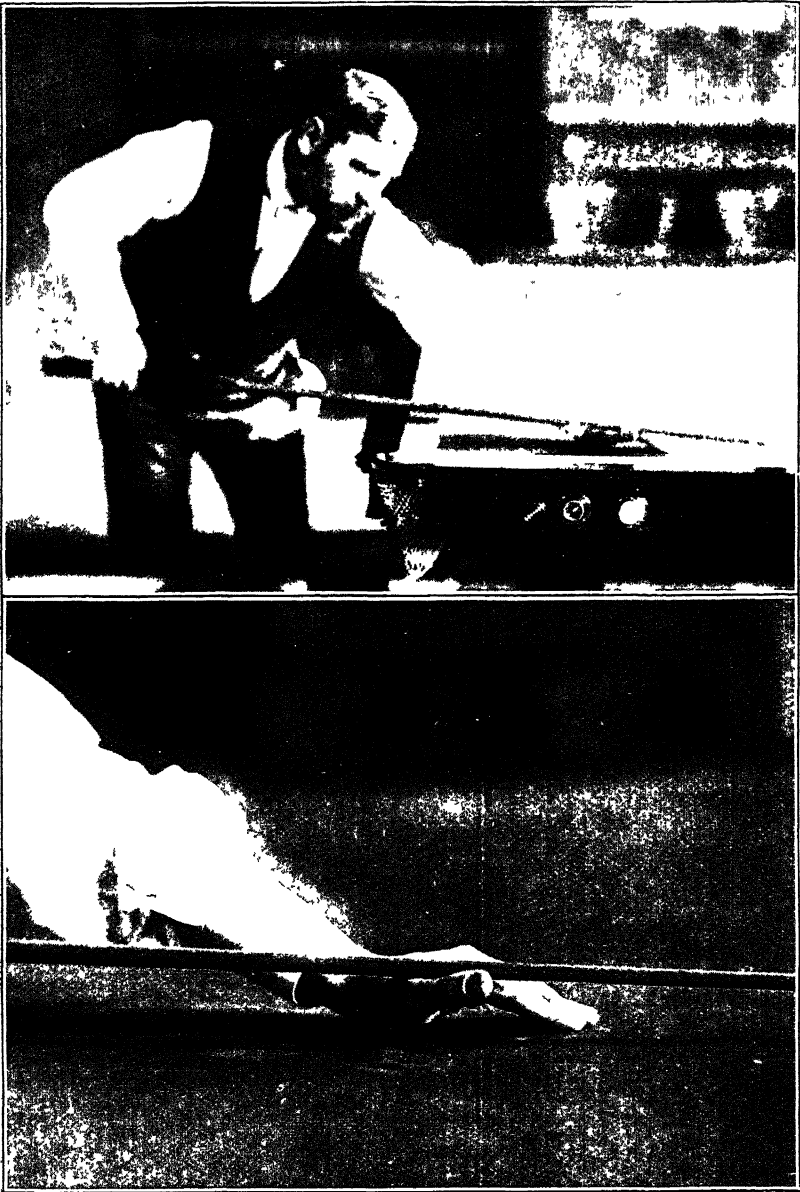
The first thing for the beginner to master is to get right behind his ball, and look straight at it. Making the bridge is the next thing to learn. The method of doing this is sufficiently explained in the illustration.

The cue should be held lightly. When a firm grip is required, as in twisting a ball, it is gripped intuitively. Do not hold the cue too far up, the best hold is about three inches from the butt (see illustration). Never on any account play without the rest when you are over-reached. Many get into a careless style, and are unable to use the rest, through not accustoming themselves to it. The learner should first practise hitting his ball quite true and with strength, that is to say, to strike the ball forcibly and at

DIAGRAM I.



the same time without the least side. This is not so easy as it appears to be, and the learner must not be discouraged by want of success in his first attempts. A good style of striking is best attained by swinging the cue backwards and forwards on the bridge to get an accurate aim. To practise striking the ball true, place the balls as in Diagram I., care being taken that the object balls are not quite close together or hard up against the cushion, as this would make it a difficult shot, and unsuitable for a beginner. Now hold the cue so that it is in a right line with the ivory spot in the centre of the bottom cushion, and the centre of the ball lying on the centre of the baulk-line. If the ball be struck fairly in the centre, without side, it will strike the top cushion and returning will make the cannon. This shot should be practised until it can be done twice out of three times.



*Photo by G. J. J. J. J.*

JOHN ROBERTS' MANNER OF HOLDING THE CUE  
THE BRIDGE

*Regent Street, W.*

To face page 50



## EASY LOSING HAZARDS.

Losing hazards from the position shown in Diagram II. should now be practised. The cue ball is on the spot in the centre of the "D," and the object of the stroke is to send it into pocket No. 5, sending the red ball up the table so that it rebounds from the top cushion and comes back almost to its original position. The player must carefully avoid hitting the object ball too fine or too full, as this will cause him to lose the after position required. This shot is known

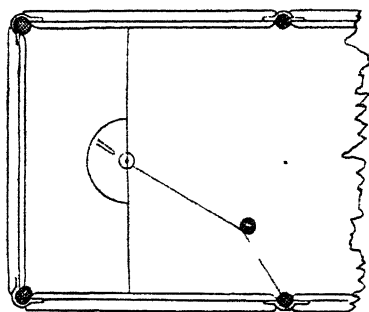


DIAGRAM II.

Half-ball stroke Losing hazard into No 5 pocket. Player's ball is on the centre spot of the "D." The red ball is  $61\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 1 cushion and  $18\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion

as the "half-ball stroke." The half-ball stroke is playable when the pocket or the second object ball is at an angle to the eye of forty-five degrees with the object ball, and the cue ball is either so placed, or when playing from baulk can be so placed, that the centre of the cue ball and the extreme edge of the first object ball are in a straight line.

Although I have in this instance referred to the angle, I would not have it supposed that it is necessary to be a mathematician to be a billiard player. I myself have never pretended to a knowledge of mathematics, and yet think that I can tell better than a Senior Wrangler the line a ball will take after striking another ball or the cushion.

Diagram III. is another illustration of the half-ball stroke. The red ball is on the spot, and an imaginary line is drawn from its centre to the centre of the middle pocket (either side of the table). If the cue ball be placed on any part of this line up to the position shown for the ball nearest the red in the diagram, and struck correctly for the half-ball stroke, with strength to bring the red ball to the pyramid spot in

the centre of the table, the losing hazard into the top pocket is a certainty.

DIAGRAM III.

Half-ball stroke. Losing hazard into No. 3 pocket. Red on billiard spot. Player's ball 65 in from No. 4 cushion and 2 $\frac{3}{4}$  in from No. 5 cushion.

29 in from No. 4 cushion and 25 in from No. 5 cushion, and anywhere on the same line between these two positions.

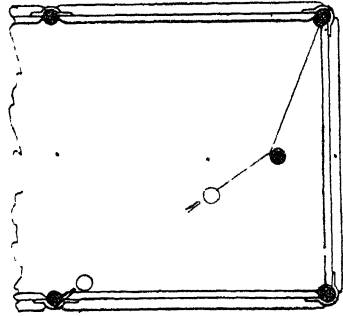


Diagram IV shows yet another exemplification of the half-ball. In the case of this losing hazard the player's

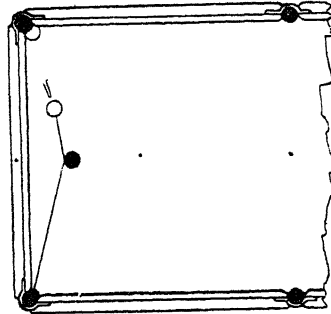


DIAGRAM IV.

Half-ball stroke. Losing hazard into No. 3 pocket. Red on billiard spot. Player's ball 7 $\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 4 cushion and 22 in. from No. 5 cushion.

Also 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and 13 $\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.

And on the edge of No. 4 pocket.

And anywhere on a line between the two extreme positions.

further object should be to bring the red ball into the position shown in Diagram V., in readiness for a half-ball from the "D" into the centre pocket at the next shot.

DIAGRAM V.

Showing position of red ball after playing stroke in Diagram IV. The play here now is a losing hazard into No. 5 pocket from baulk.

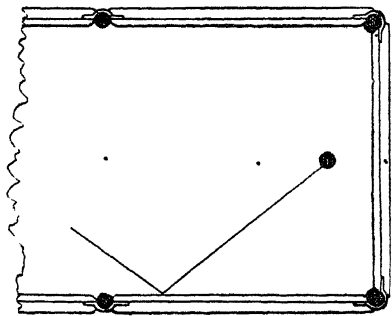
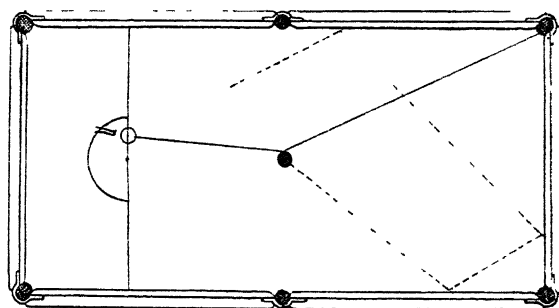


Diagram VI. shows a long losing hazard into either of the top pockets off the centre spot. Those who have watched exhibition games will at once recognise this as the stroke usually played by professionals when the balls are spotted. To make it and leave position, strength should be used sufficient to bring the object ball over the middle pocket after travelling the course indicated in the dotted line. It is very easy to make this loser if the table be true and the half-circle accurately marked, but in this, as in all other strokes, it should be an object to leave position for the next

DIAGRAM VI.



Red ball on centre spot Cue ball on baulk-line, 7 in. to the left-hand side of the centre baulk spot.

stroke, and the shot should be practised until the object ball can be left over the pocket. Of course, if the hazard is made into the opposite pocket, the position of the dotted line and the final position of the ball is reversed. This is also a half-ball stroke, although it may not appear to be so.

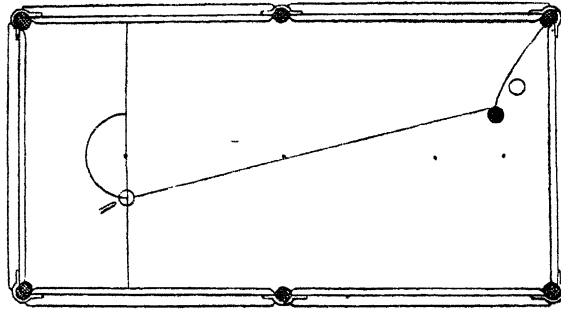
The next stroke to be considered is that shown in Diagram VII. This is a strong half-ball shot, the object being to make the losing hazard into No. 3 pocket and bring the object ball down the table with sufficient strength to bring it out of baulk. It should be played with moderately hard strength, the ball being struck on the top. If it be played softly, a cannon on the white ball would result, but the strength carries the cue ball past the white in the curve shown in the diagram. This is a very necessary shot for a beginner, for it is difficult to strike a ball hard and at the same time true, and comparatively few people can do it. I strongly recommend the stroke for assiduous practice, as such shots promote freedom of cue. If the object ball be



placed a couple of inches further away from the top cushion, the shot becomes an ordinary losing hazard, and should be played like the middle pocket loser dealt with in Diagram II. The nearer the ball is to the top cushion the more strength will be required.

Another half-ball stroke for practice, which requires no diagram, is to place a ball on the pyramid spot and play for the losing hazard into one of the top pockets from the point of intersection of the baulk line with the half-circle.

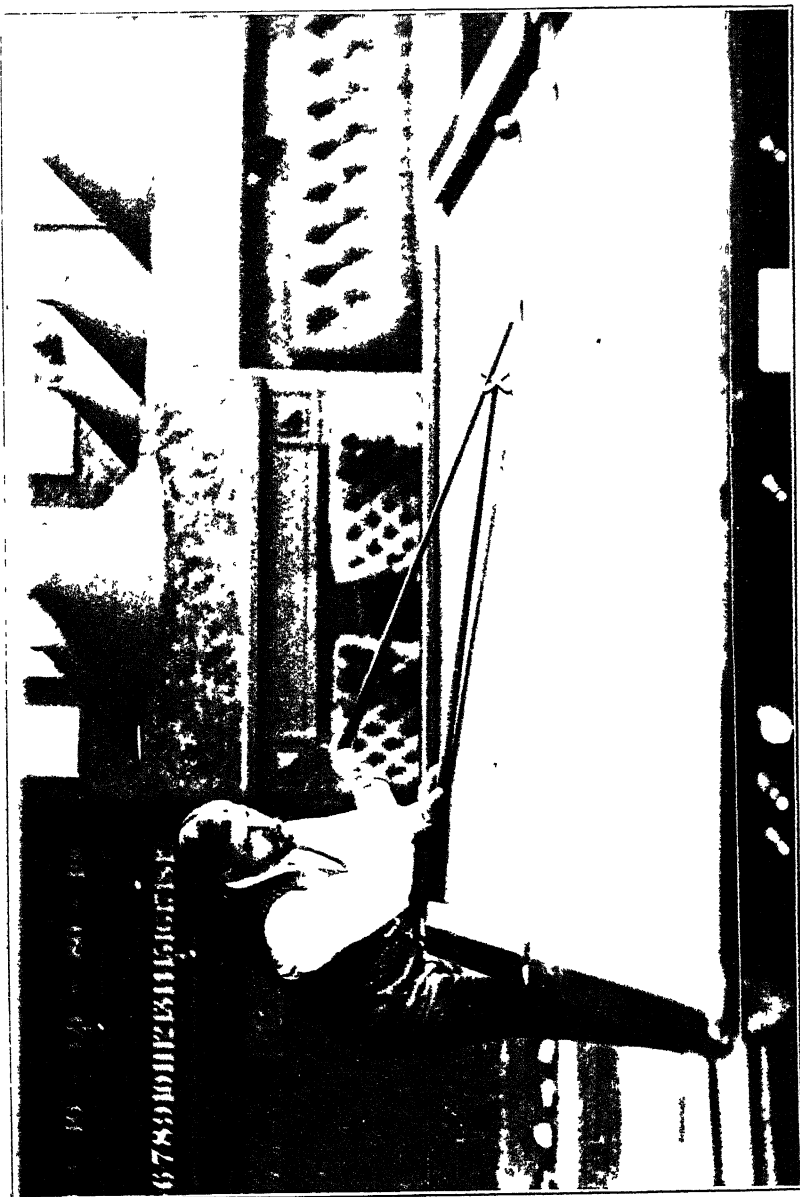
DIAGRAM VII



Red ball 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 14 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white  $17\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion, and  $10\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball on right hand spot of baulk-line.

### MODE OF USING THE REST.

I should like to invite attention to the mode of using the rest. Most players, even among professionals, use the broad and narrow sides of the rest indiscriminately. This is a mistake. In ordinary slow shots, where trueness is required, the cue should be laid on the low side of the rest, as, if the higher part be used, it is difficult, even for an expert, to strike a ball without side. My method of using the rest for all ordinary shots is shown in the illustration. I find that the necessity for using the higher part of the rest but seldom occurs, and my advice to novices is always to rest the cue on the rest at the lower part.



*Photo by G. Jernard*

JOHN ROBERTS MODEL OF USING THE RIS

*Recent Strides, II*  
to face page 51



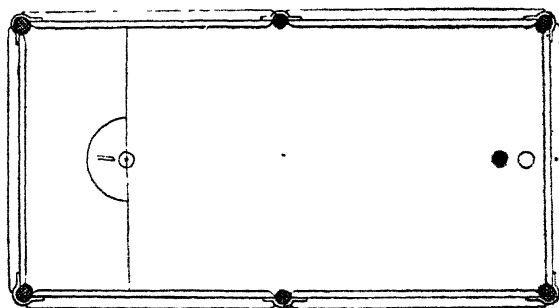
## STRENGTH.

A useful definition of "hard," "moderate," and "soft" strength is very difficult to make, and of questionable utility when made, so I do not propose to treat the subject in this way. The strength required to make a given stroke will vary greatly on different tables, so I think that the way most helpful will be to indicate the strength required by stating where the balls should be left after the stroke. Thus, in giving instructions for the stroke illustrated by Diagram III., I say that the stroke should be made "with strength sufficient to bring the red ball to the pyramid spot." This kind of direction is, in my opinion, the only useful one, and the strength represented by it can only be found by practice, as the force required to bring the ball to the required position depends upon the resiliency of the cushion, which varies greatly on different tables.

## KISS CANNONS.

It is not generally known that kiss cannons are not only not difficult shots, but, as a matter of fact, if properly played, somewhat hard to miss. Take the shot shown in Diagram VIII. as an example. This is a stroke which

DIAGRAM VIII.



Red ball on billiard spot   Spot white 5 in. from No. 4 cushion, in a line with the red ball and No. 4 cushion.  
Cue ball on centre spot of the D.

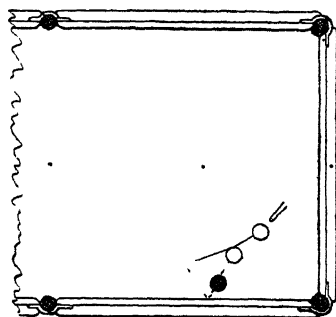
occurs very frequently, and is generally applauded. It does not, however, merit applause; for a person who knows no more of billiards than how to hold a cue and strike a ball

could hardly miss it. The three balls must be in a straight line with each other, and the cue ball should be struck true, playing an easy stroke, that is to say, without side, and striking the first object ball not quite full on either side. The first object ball then strikes the second object ball, which, in rebounding from No. 4 cushion, meets the cue ball and makes the cannon. If the first object ball is struck quite full the balls will kiss twice, and the cannon will not come off.

Diagram IX. shows a somewhat similar cannon; but, as the balls are aslant, the shot can only be made by playing

DIAGRAM IX

Red ball 26 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 22 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $10\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 15 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $15\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.



at the first object ball rather full on the right side. The cannon is made by the player's ball catching the red on the rebound from No. 5 cushion.

Diagram X shows another kiss cannon. To make the cue ball take the course shown it should be struck rather sharply, but not too forcibly, a little below the centre.

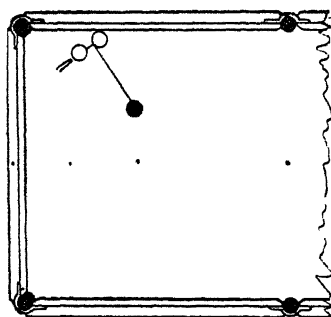


DIAGRAM X.

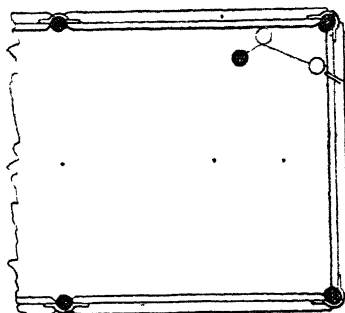
Red ball 29 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $21\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 20 in. from No. 4 cushion and tight against No. 5 cushion. Cue ball  $15\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 4 in. from No. 5 cushion.

When the balls are left as shown in Diagram XI. the player has no option but to play for the kiss cannon. The

player should play slowly at the spot white, as if it were a simple cannon, in the ordinary way. This is a very useful shot, and generally leaves the balls in position for a good

DIAGRAM XI.

Spot white ball touching No 3 cushion and 17 in from No 4 cushion. Red 6 in. from No 3 cushion and 22 in from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 10 in. from No. 3 cushion and touching No. 4 cushion.



break. The cannon can be made if the red ball is anywhere in a slanting line across the table from its present position, but the strength must be increased as the ball is moved out.

The position indicated by Diagram XII often occurs, and the kiss cannon is not by any means difficult. The cue ball

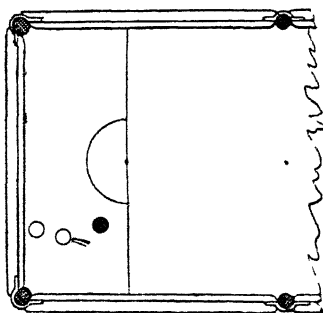


DIAGRAM XII.

Red ball 18 in from No 1 cushion and 21 in from No 6 cushion. Spot white 3 in. from No. 1 cushion and 20 in. from No 6 cushion. Cue ball 7 in. from No 1 cushion and 19 in. from No. 6 cushion.

should be struck low and sharply, aiming a little to the right of the first object ball, which, being forced against No. 1 cushion, rebounds, and, meeting the cue ball forces it back on the red and makes a cannon

In Diagram XIII. the cue ball should be struck low and sharply, as in Diagram XII., playing nearly full, a little to the left of the white object ball, when it will come back to the red and make the cannon.

In dealing with these kiss cannons I have refrained from indicating the after position of the balls, as the main object at this stage is to get the shot, without considering after position.

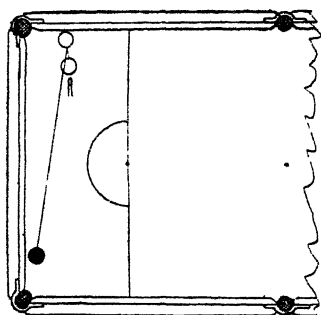


DIAGRAM XIII.

Red ball 1 in. from No 1 cushion and 15 in. from No 6 cushion. Spot white 10 in from No 1 cushion and touching No 2 cushion Cue ball 9 in. from No 1 cushion and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 2 cushion.

### LOSING HAZARDS WITH SIDE.

As I am writing from a practical standpoint, I do not propose to deal with the *theory* of "side," but shall confine myself to giving diagrams of side strokes, with instructions as to how they should be played. By constantly practising these strokes more knowledge will be obtained of the properties of "side," and the amount of it necessary to accomplish a certain object, than could be attained by the perusal of a whole library of books on the subject.

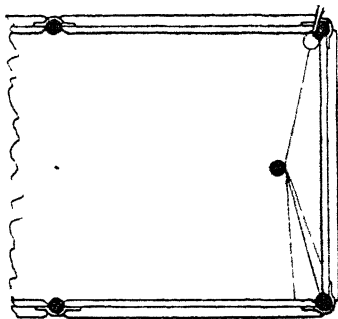
Put as plainly as possible, the side on a ball will cause it, after striking another ball or a cushion, to take a wider angle than the natural angle, the width of the angle increasing with amount of side used. On the other hand, "reverse" or "retarding" side, for which the ball must be struck on the side opposite to that on which it is struck for widening the angle, makes the cue ball come off at an angle narrower than the natural angle. The amount of side is increased by hitting the cue ball more to the outside. A ball with "side" on will be seen to have a spinning motion towards the side on which it is struck, as well as a forward motion towards the object. It therefore follows that the general rule for side, when the cue ball travels in the direction of the nap, is to strike the cue ball on the side on which it is desired that it should travel.

Diagram XIV. is given to show the effect of "side." Without side it is a half-ball losing hazard into No. 4 pocket.

With a lot of left-hand side, that is, by striking the cue ball almost on the outside or on the left hand, the angle is so narrowed that the cue ball strikes No. 4 cushion a few inches

DIAGRAM XIV.

Red ball on billiard spot. Cue ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion, and 4 in. from No. 3 cushion.

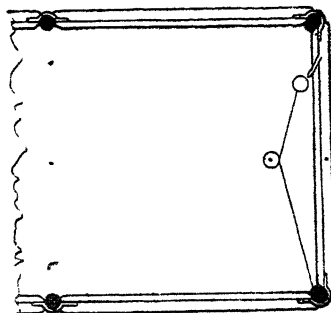


from the pocket. With a deal of right-hand side on, the cue ball strikes No. 5 cushion an inch or two from the pocket. In all these cases the stroke must be played with sufficient strength to bring the red near the middle pocket.

Diagram XV shows the cue ball in a position from which a half-ball stroke without side into the pocket is not on unless such force be used as will send the red ball down the table, and out of baulk again. It is much better for anyone who is at all advanced to play with side, as the stroke is

DIAGRAM XV

Red ball on billiard spot. Cue ball 9 in. from No. 3 cushion, and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion



surer and leaves better position. The way to play it is to aim quite full at the red ball, put a great amount of left-hand side on, and play same as in Diagram XIV.

In this and similar cases where side is put on, although you aim full at the object ball, the cue ball does not strike

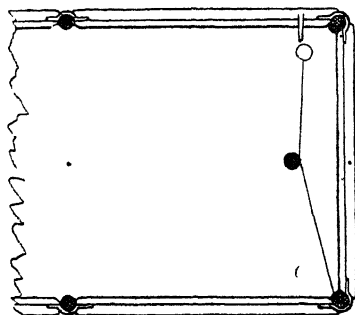


the object ball full, as when side is on a ball it travels in a slight curve.

In a case as shown in Diagram XVI. right-hand side is necessary to make the hazard. The player should aim fine

DIAGRAM XVI.

Red ball on billiard spot. Cue ball 9 in. from No. 3 cushion, and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion.

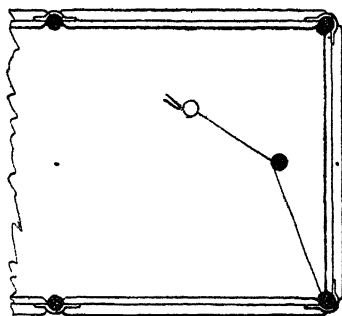


at the red, so as almost to miss it, not that it hits the red ball fine, for as a matter of fact it strikes almost half-ball on account of the curvilinear motion just mentioned

It will be observed that in Diagram XVII. the cue ball is a little out of the line from which the losing hazard can be made by the half-ball stroke, and to make the hazard, side is

DIAGRAM XVII

Red ball on billiard spot. Cue ball 22 in. from No. 3 cushion, and 36 in from No. 4 cushion.

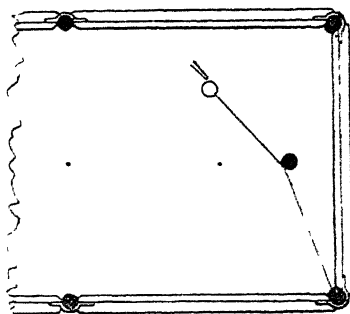


necessary. To play the stroke, *aim* quite full at the red with strong right-hand side on, and strike with strength sufficient to bring the red down to the pyramid spot.

Diagram XVIII. shows the position when left-hand side is necessary. In this case the player must aim very fine at the red with the same strength as in the previous case.

DIAGRAM XVIII

Red ball on billiard spot Cue ball  
18 in from No 3 cushion, and 36 in  
from No. 4 cushion.



The stroke shown in Diagram XIX. can be made without side, but a proficient would always use side in such a case.

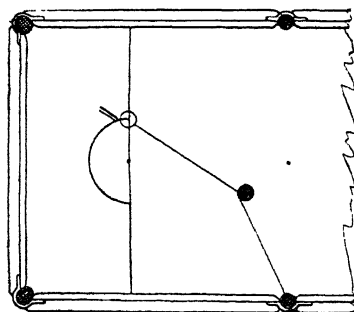


DIAGRAM XIX.

Red ball 61 in from No 1 cushion,  
and 28 in from No 6 cushion. Cue  
ball on extreme left-hand side of  
baulk line.

It should be played with a lot of right-hand side, aiming full at the red with sufficient strength to send the red ball to No. 4 cushion and back near the pyramid spot.

Diagram XX shows a stroke which is played in the same manner as that shown in Diagram XVIII.

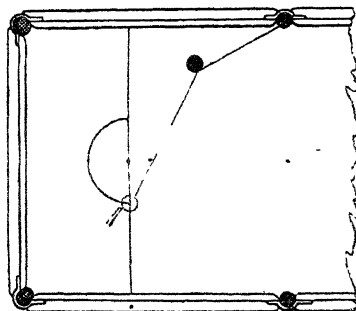
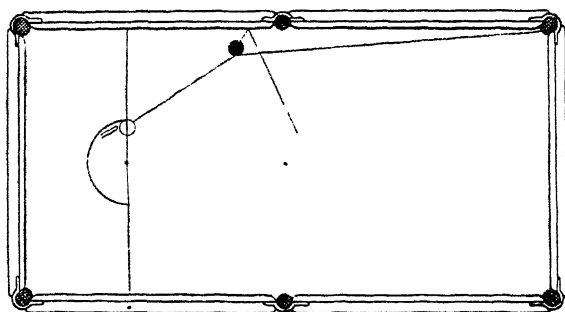


DIAGRAM XX.

Red ball 48 in. from No. 1  
cushion, and 10 in from No 2  
cushion. Cue ball on extreme  
right-hand side of baulk line.

In Diagram XXI. is shown a long jenny into No. 3 pocket. This stroke can be played in two or three ways, and the one to be used by the player must depend on the after position required for the object ball. Diagram XXII. shows the red

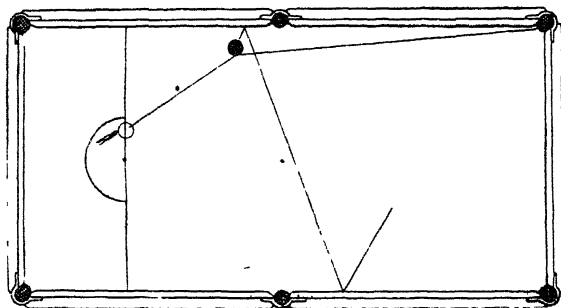
DIAGRAM XXI.



Red ball 60 in. from No. 1 cushion and 4 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball on baulk line, 27 in. from No. 2 cushion.

ball brought to another position by slightly moving the position of the cue ball. Both these strokes require strong left-hand side, and should be played with sufficient strength to bring the red ball into the position shown in the diagram

DIAGRAM XXII.

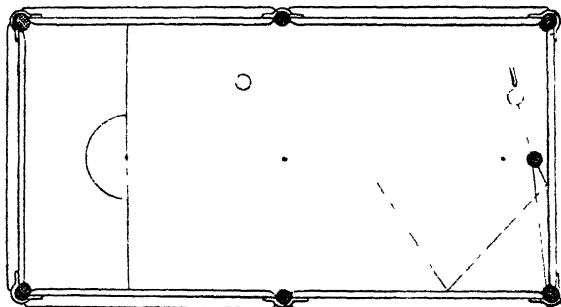


Red ball 60 in. from No. 1 cushion, and 4 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball on baulk line, 28 in. from No. 2 cushion

Diagram XXIII. shows a run-through losing hazard with side. To play the stroke the cue ball should be struck slightly above the centre on the left-hand side, with sufficient

strength to bring the red ball down to the position shown. Aim at the object ball nearly full, but a little to the right

DIAGRAM XXIII.

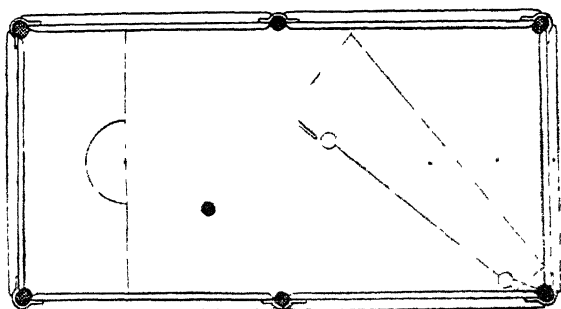


Red ball 2 in. from No. 4 cushion and in the centre of the table. Spot white 60 in. from No. 1 cushion and 15 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball 20 in. from No. 3 cushion and 7 in. from No. 4 cushion

The value of side here is that it has the effect of making the pocket larger and the hazard consequently easier. The same shot should be practised on the other side of the table, with, of course, the opposite side on.

Diagram XXIV. illustrates another following-through losing hazard with side. The cue ball must be struck about the middle with extreme right-hand side on, playing slightly on the left of the object ball, with sufficient strength to run through it and bring it to the position shown in the diagram.

DIAGRAM XXIV.



Red ball 51 in. from No. 1 cushion and 24 in. from No. 6 cushion. Spot white  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and 10 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 31 in. from No. 3 cushion and 60 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Another following-through loser is given in Diagram XXV. Strike the cue ball about the middle with as much right-hand side as can be got on, playing at the object ball nearly full, but a shade to the right.

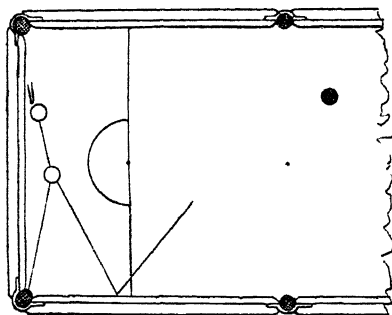


DIAGRAM XXV.

Red ball 18 in. from No. 3 cushion and 61 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 7 in. from No. 1 cushion and 34 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 3 in. from No. 1 cushion and 22 in. from No. 2 cushion.

In these and the following shots the cue ball must not be hit hard, as that would have the effect of stopping the ball.

To effect the stroke shown in Diagram XXVI. the cue ball should be struck on the right side below the middle, aiming at the object ball almost full, but a little to the left, and playing with sufficient strength to bring the object ball to the position shown.

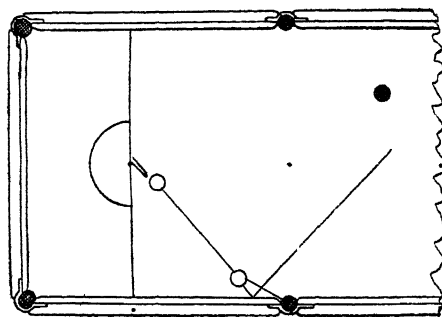


DIAGRAM XXVI.

Red ball 17 in. from No. 3 cushion and 48 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 59 in. from No. 1 cushion and 61 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 31 in. from No. 6 cushion and 34 in. from No. 1 cushion.

In Diagram XXVII. a twist losing hazard is shown. It should be noted in making these shots that the cue ball must be hit harder as its distance from the object ball increases. It is only when the balls are close together that these strokes can be played slowly. In this case strike the cue ball very low on the right-hand, and aim nearly full at the object ball.

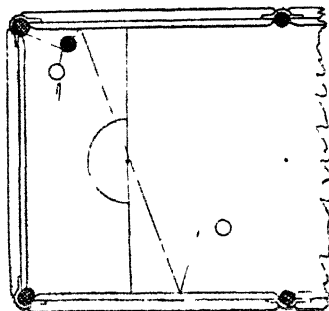
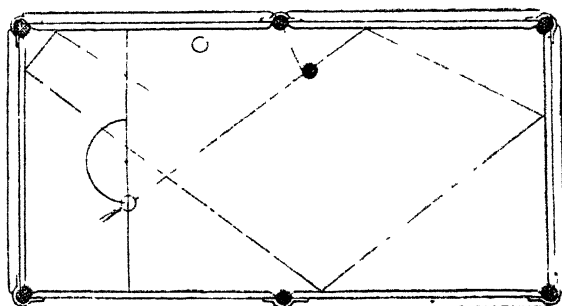


DIAGRAM XXVII.

Red ball  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 2 cushion and  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 1 cushion. Spot white 18 in. from No. 6 cushion and 56 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 2 cushion and 11 in. from No. 1 cushion.

Diagram XXVIII is another twist loser, and as it is a stroke which is constantly occurring it merits special attention. Strike the cue ball very low, a little to the left, and

DIAGRAM XXVIII.

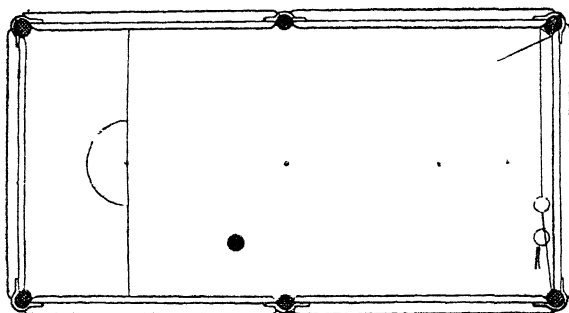


Red ball 12 in. from No. 3 cushion and 66 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 47 in. from No. 1 cushion and 4 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball on extreme right-hand spot of baulk-line.

aim nearly full at the object ball, with strength sufficient to bring the object ball out of the baulk. This shot should also be practised on the other side of the table.

In Diagram XXIX, is shown a case where it is not feasible to follow through the ball into No. 3 pocket, so it is necessary to play a screw back. In this case side also is used to make the pocket larger; so the shot should be played by striking the cue ball very low on the left-hand side, playing sharply to get the screw back.

DIAGRAM XXIX.



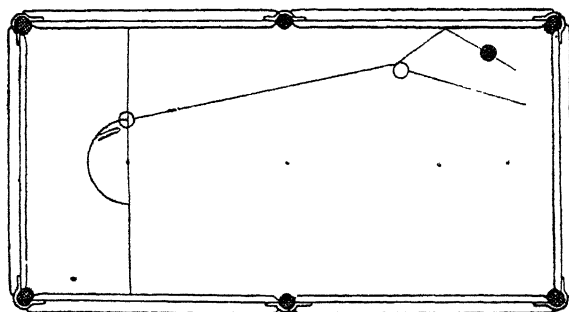
Red ball 14 in. from No. 6 cushion and 60 in. from No. 1 cushion. Spot white  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 24 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 17 in. from No. 5 cushion.

### SOME CUSHION CANNONS.

In Diagram XXX. is shown a shot which is constantly occurring, and which, played as shown, invariably leaves position for a good break.

The cue ball should be struck on the extreme right-hand side, a little below the centre, and the aim should be a little fine on the left side of the object ball. The strength should be just sufficient to allow the cue ball to drop on to the red after striking the cushion, as shown in the diagram.

DIAGRAM XXX.

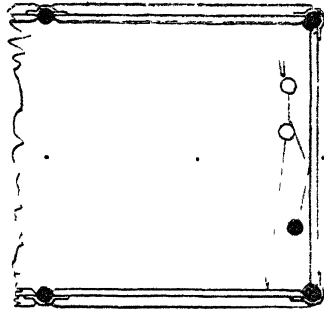


Red ball 6 in. from No. 3 cushion and 18 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 11 in. from No. 3 cushion and 42 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball on extreme left-hand spot of baulk line.

Diagram XXXI. is a similar shot in a different part of the table. It is possible to make these strokes without side, but it is not desirable to do so, as position would be thereby sacrificed. In this shot the player's ball may be placed anywhere along a line drawn from No. 3 cushion, but the nearer the cushion the more difficult the stroke.

DIAGRAM XXXI.

Red ball  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 17 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 6 in. from No. 4 cushion and 42 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 18 in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion.



The cue ball should be struck on the extreme right-hand side, as in the last diagram, but about the centre, and the aim should be nearly full on, but a little to the left of the spot white. The strength should be sufficient to strike the red without driving it too far for position.

Diagram XXXII. shows a stroke to be played in exactly the same way, but with a little more strength.

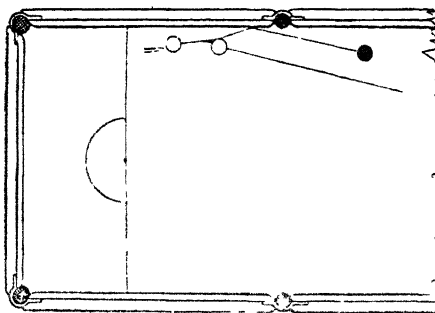


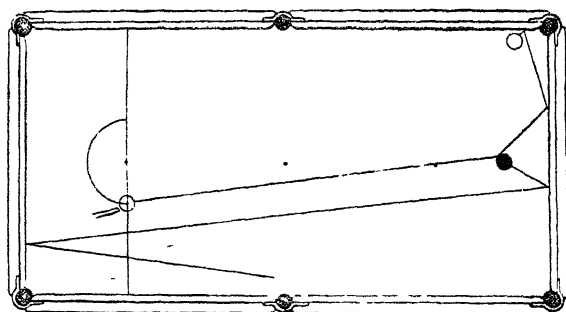
DIAGRAM XXXII.

Red ball 7 in. from No. 3 cushion and 50 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 54 in. from No. 1 cushion and 6 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball 40 in. from No. 1 cushion and 5 in. from No. 2 cushion.



In Diagram XXXIII. strike the cue ball with a lot of left-hand side, aiming nearly full at the red ball just a little to the left, using sufficient strength to bring the red in and out of baulk.

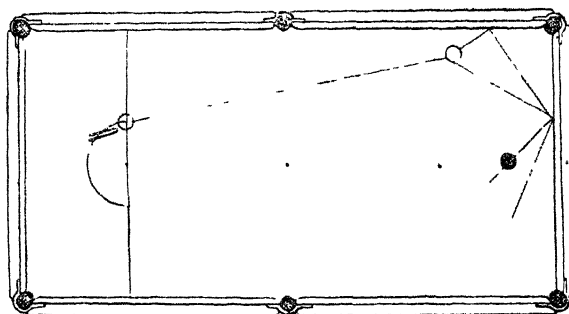
DIAGRAM XXXIII



Red ball on bilhard spot. Spot white  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 11 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball on extreme right-hand spot of baulk line

Diagram XXXIV. Aim nearly full at the object ball, striking the cue ball a little above the centre, with right-hand

DIAGRAM XXXIV.

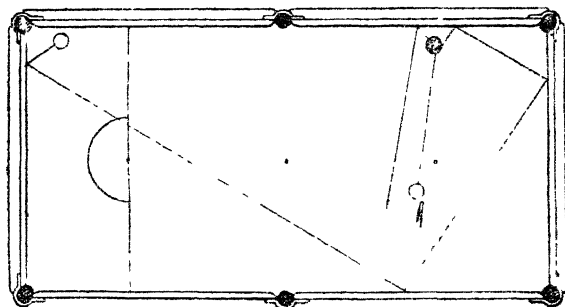


Red ball on bilhard spot. Spot white  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $27\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball on extreme left-hand spot of baulk line.

side, using strength sufficient to bring the balls to the position shown in the diagram.

For the stroke shown in Diagram XXXV. the cue ball should be hit about the middle on the extreme right-hand side. Aim quite half-ball at the red, with sufficient strength to make the four cushions, as shown in the diagram. Be careful not to play too strong.

DIAGRAM XXXV.

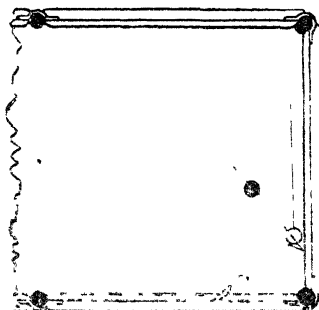


Red ball 3 in. from No. 3 cushion and 31 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 9 in. from No. 1 cushion and 3 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball 36 in. from No. 4 cushion and 30 in. from No. 5 cushion.

The shot illustrated by Diagram XXXVI. requires strong left-hand side, and the aim should be very fine at the spot white on the right-hand side. Play with sufficient strength to reach the red only, and send the spot white over the pocket.

DIAGRAM XXXVI.

Red ball 14 in. from No. 4 cushion and 29 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 2½ in. from No. 4 cushion and 17 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 17 in. from No. 4 cushion and 2 in. from No. 5 cushion.

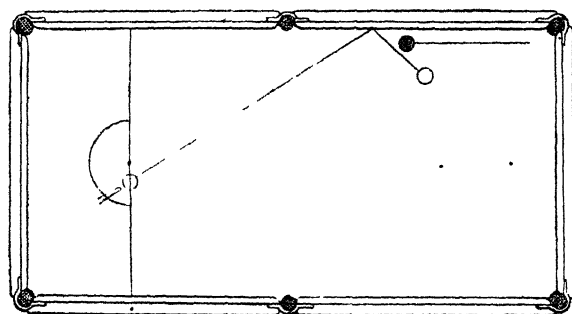


### CANNONS BY FIRST STRIKING A CUSHION.

Very many positions present themselves during a game when cannons to be made by striking a cushion first are "on." Generally speaking, it is always advisable to play for these strokes when they present themselves, as they invariably leave good positions for the continuance of the break. In my opinion, I cannot illustrate too many cases where this valuable stroke should be played for, and I would advise the player who aspires to more than the mediocre form to spend much time in practising the strokes here illustrated.

Given the position as illustrated in Diagram XXXVII., it is much the best way to play the cannon as shown. The cue ball should be struck without side, care being taken to strike

DIAGRAM XXXVII.

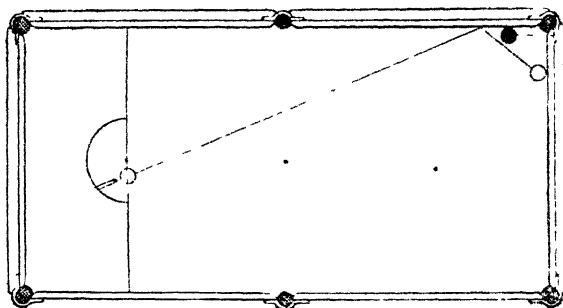


Red ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 40 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white  $13\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 34 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 32 in. from No. 6 cushion and on the baulk line.

the cushion first, and with sufficient strength to leave the red ball over No. 3 pocket. The track of the red ball after the stroke is indicated by a plain line.

In Diagram XXXVIII. we have a similar position to that shown in the previous diagram, with the difference that the red and spot white balls are nearer to No. 3 pocket, the cue ball being in the same position. In this instance the stroke should be played without side, with sufficient strength to leave the red ball close to No. 3 pocket, as illustrated.

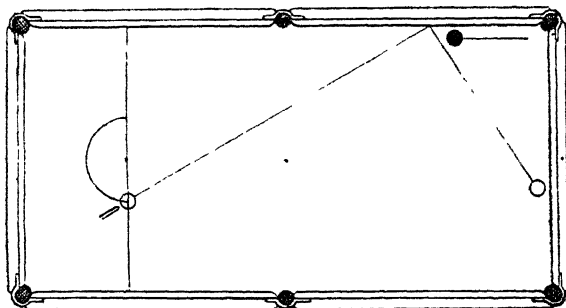
DIAGRAM XXXVIII.



Red ball touching No. 3 cushion and 10 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 13 in. from No. 3 cushion and touching No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 32 in. from No. 6 cushion and on the baulk line

Diagram XXXIX. illustrates a cannon to be played in exactly the same way as those already illustrated in Diagrams XXXVII. and XXXVIII. The red ball is again close to

DIAGRAM XXXIX.



Red ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 3 cushion and 26 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and 31 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball on extreme right side of baulk line.

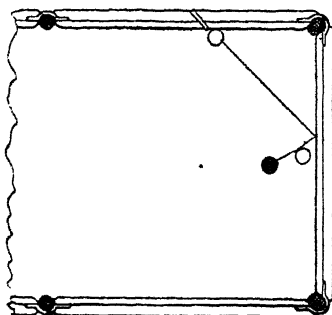
No. 3 cushion, but the spot white is placed some distance off, nearly midway between Nos. 3 and 4 pockets, close to No. 4 cushion.

Place the cue ball on the extreme right side of the baulk line in the "D," aiming at No. 3 cushion, about five inches below the red ball; play without side with sufficient strength to make the cannon, and to leave the red ball over No. 3 pocket.

The position of the balls illustrated in Diagram XL. frequently presents itself during the course of the game. The cannon may be played direct off the red ball on to the spot white ball, also from the spot white ball to No. 4 cushion, and back on to the red ball, or by striking No. 4 cushion first. The latter is by far the best way to play the stroke, as it avoids the possibility of losing the spot white ball, which may be unintentionally driven into No. 4 pocket by playing at the spot white ball first. The cue ball must be struck without side, care being taken to strike No. 4 cushion about 26 inches from No. 3 cushion.

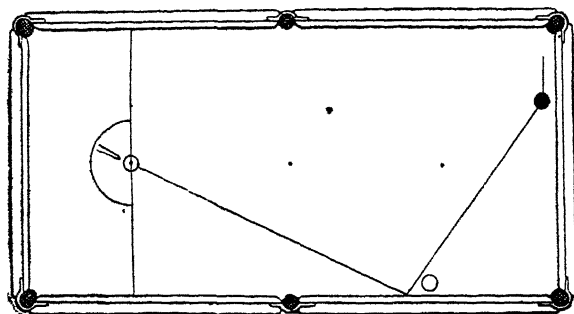
DIAGRAM XL.

Red ball on billiard spot. Spot white 33 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball touching No. 3 cushion and 26 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Another very useful stroke is that illustrated in Diagram XLI., and which is not at all difficult. The cue ball should be struck without side. Play with sufficient strength to make the cannon, sending the red ball towards No. 3 pocket. Aim at No. 5 cushion about 5 inches from the spot white ball.

DIAGRAM XLI

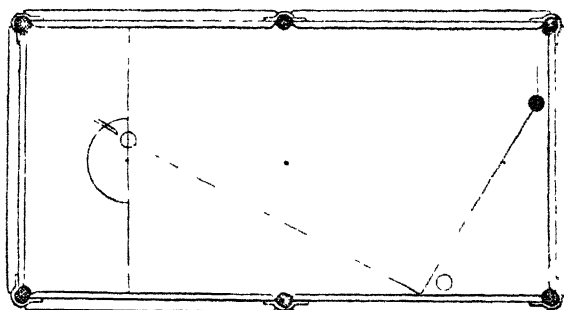


Red ball 20 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 36 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball in centre of the "D" on the baulk line.

In Diagram XLII. the spot white ball is placed 3 inches nearer to No. 4 cushion than that described in Diagram LVI., and the cue ball is placed midway between the centre

and the extreme left of the "D" on the baulk line. The stroke is a similar one to that already illustrated in Diagram XLI., with the exception that the aim must be at No. 5 cushion about 4 inches below the spot white ball.

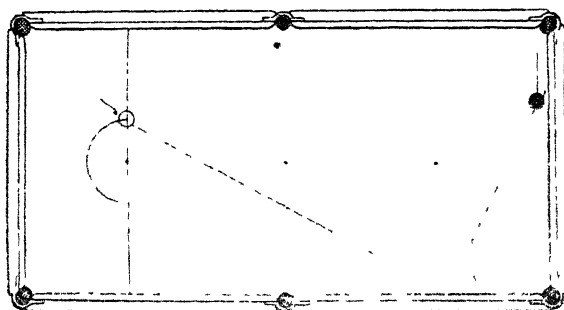
DIAGRAM XLII.



Red ball 20 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 33 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball midway between the centre and the extreme left of the "D" on the baulk line.

Diagram XLIII. is similar to the strokes illustrated in Diagrams XLI. and XLII., with the positions of the spot white ball and the cue ball slightly altered. It will be observed that the spot white ball is placed still nearer to No. 4 cushion than that in Diagram LVII., and the cue ball is placed on the extreme left of the baulk line, in the "D." Care must be taken to aim at No. 5 cushion about 3 inches below the spot white ball, with strength sufficient to leave the red ball adjacent to No. 3 pocket, as illustrated.

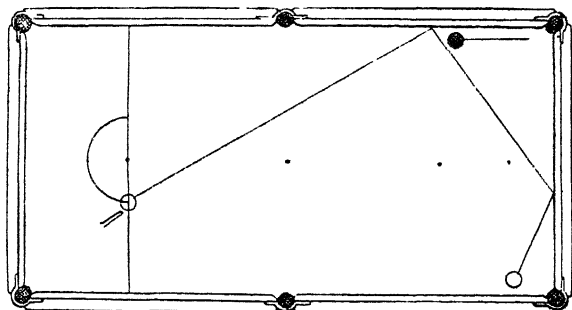
DIAGRAM XLIII.



Red ball 20 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 30 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball on the extreme left side of the baulk line in the "D."

What appears at first sight to be a very difficult position from which to score is that illustrated in Diagram XLIV. It is another illustration of a very useful stroke. The player being in hand, should place the cue ball upon the extreme right of the baulk line, in the "D," and aim at No. 3 cushion about 4 inches below the red ball. Strike the cue ball a little below the middle, with a lot of right side. Play this stroke with sufficient strength to make the cannon as shown in the Diagram, and to leave the red ball over No. 3 pocket.

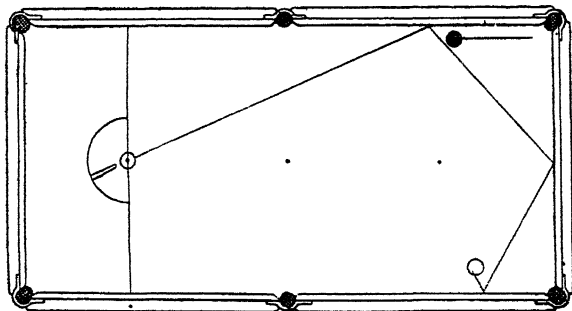
DIAGRAM XLIV.



Red ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $26\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 3 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball on the extreme right side of the baulk line in the "D"

Diagram XLV. The object is to play with sufficient strength to make the cannon as described, and leave the red ball over No. 3 pocket. The player should aim at No. 3 cushion, about 5 inches below the red ball, the cue ball being struck slightly below the middle, with a lot of right side.

DIAGRAM XLV.



Red ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $26\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 21 in. from No. 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball on the baulk line in centre of the "D."

Diagram XLVI. It will be noticed that the cue ball is touching No. 6 cushion. In this case the cannon, as illustrated, is much easier to make than the red winning hazard into No. 1 pocket. The cannon being a difficult one, it is better to direct attention to scoring only, without giving thought to after position. The player should strike the cue ball in the middle, without side, aiming at No. 1 cushion about 21 inches from No. 2 cushion, and play with sufficient strength to make the cannon as described

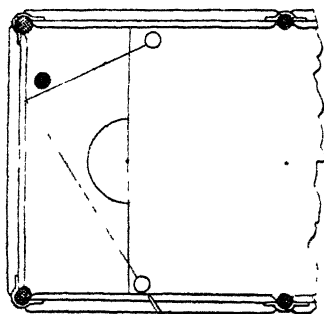
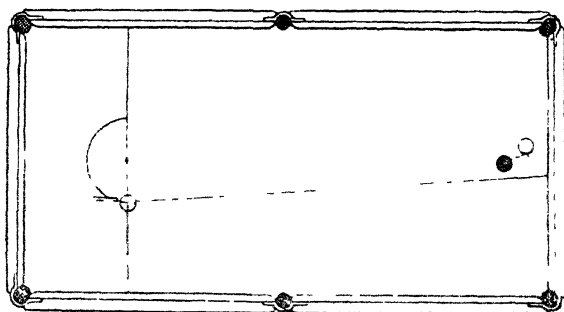


DIAGRAM XLVI.

Red ball  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 1 cushion and 15 in. from No. 2 cushion. Spot white 36 in. from No. 1 cushion and 2 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball  $33\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 1 cushion and touching No. 6 cushion.

Diagram XLVII This position frequently occurs, and is one which many players often fail to score from. By placing the cue ball upon the extreme right side of the baulk line in the "D," aiming at No. 4 cushion first, the cannon is tolerably easy. Strike the cue ball with moderate strength slightly below the middle with left side. The follow-through cannon is possible, but it is better to play as illustrated in the diagram.

DIAGRAM XLVII.

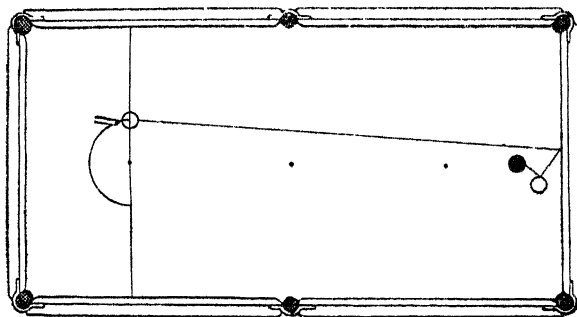


Red ball on the billiard spot. Spot white  $32\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball on the extreme right side of the baulk line in the "D."



Diagram XLVIII. Place the cue ball upon the extreme left of the baulk line in the "D," and aim at No. 4 cushion first. Strike the cue ball with moderate strength, slightly below the middle on the right side.

DIAGRAM XLVIII.



Red ball on the billiard spot. Spot white  $32\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball on the extreme left side of the baulk line in the "D."

Diagram XLIX. No difficulty should be experienced in scoring from this position. The player should aim at No. 5 cushion, and strike the cue ball slightly below the middle on the right side. The cannon should be played so as to leave the red ball adjacent to No. 5 pocket.

DIAGRAM XLIX.

Red ball 48 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white ball 47 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $11\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 33 in. from No. 4 cushion.

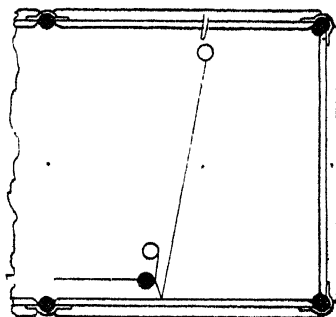


Diagram L. In this case the player should aim at No. 3 cushion, and strike the cue ball slightly below the middle on the left side. The cannon should be played so as to leave the red ball adjacent to No. 2 pocket.

DIAGRAM L.

Red ball 48 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white ball 47 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $11\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and 33 in. from No. 4 cushion.

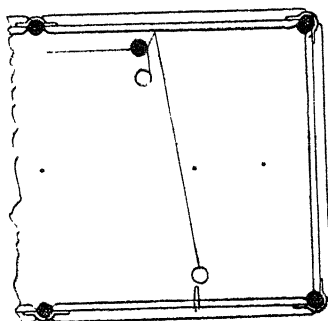
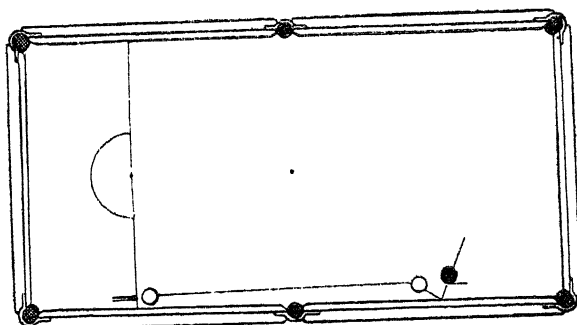


Diagram LI. Here the balls appear to be in a safe position. I have purposely placed them so, in order to show three different ways of playing to score. In this diagram it is necessary to play the stroke slowly. The cue ball should be struck very low on the right side, aiming nearly full at the

DIAGRAM LI.



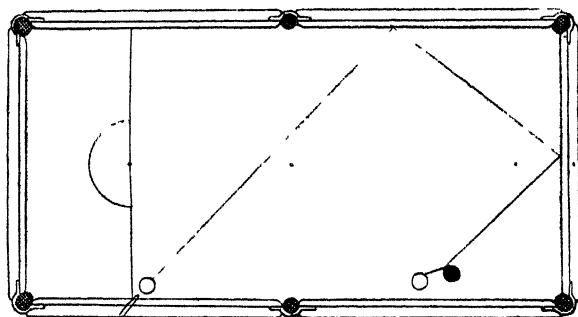
Red ball 30 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 37 in. from No. 4 cushion and 2 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 33 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion.

spot white ball, slightly to the left, so that the latter, after contact with No. 5 cushion, sends the red ball in the direction indicated by the plain line. The cue ball, after striking the spot white ball, follows on in the direction indicated by the dotted line and cannons against the red ball as illustrated.

Diagram LII. This shows the second way of scoring from the position given in Diagram LI. The cue ball must be struck slightly below the middle without side. Aim at

No. 3 cushion about 37 inches from No. 4 cushion, and make the cannon as illustrated.

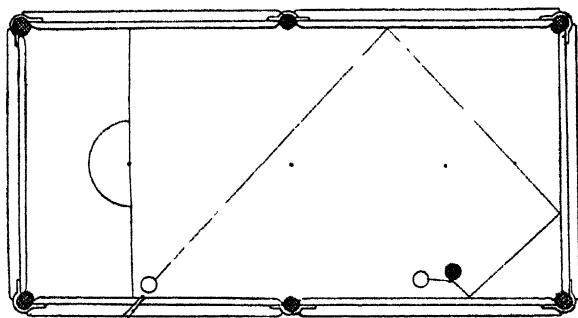
DIAGRAM LII.



Red ball 30 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 37 in. from No. 4 cushion and 2 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 33 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion.

Diagram LIII. Showing the third way of scoring from the position given in Diagram LI. Aim at No. 3 cushion about 41 inches from No. 4 cushion, four inches lower than in the preceding case. The cue ball must be struck slightly below the middle without side.

DIAGRAM LIII.

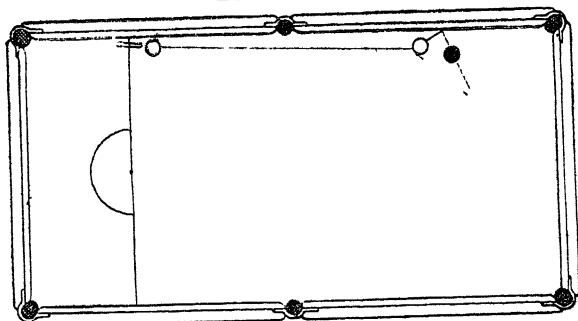


Red ball 30 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 37 in. from No. 4 cushion and 2 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 33 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion.

Diagram LIV This stroke must be played as follows:—Strike the cue ball low on the left side, aiming nearly full at the spot white ball but slightly to the right, so that the latter, after contact with No. 3 cushion, sends the red ball in the

direction indicated by the plain line. The cue ball, after striking the spot white ball, follows on in the direction indicated by the dotted line, and cannons on to the red ball as illustrated. This stroke is similar to that illustrated in Diagram LI., only on the reverse side of the table.

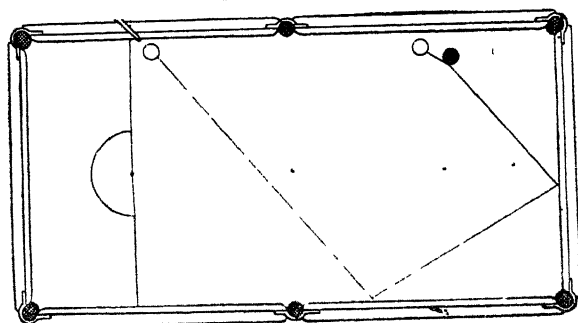
DIAGRAM LIV.



Red ball 30 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white 37 in. from No. 4 cushion and 2 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 33 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 2 cushion.

Diagram LV. This is a two-cushion cannon, the balls being in the same positions as in Diagram LIV. The cue ball must be struck slightly below the middle without side. Aim at No. 5 cushion about 37 inches from No. 4 cushion. This stroke is similar to that illustrated in Diagram LII., only on the reverse side of the table.

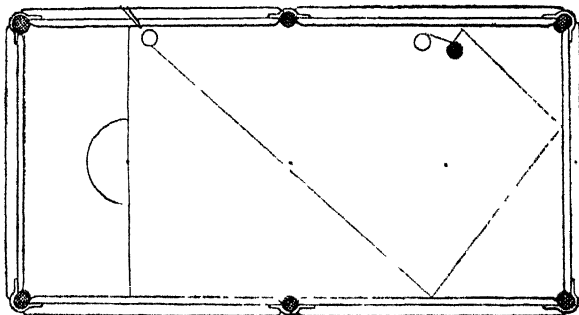
DIAGRAM LV.



Red ball 30 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white 37 in. from No. 4 cushion and 2 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 33 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 2 cushion.

Diagram LVI. This shows a three-cushion cannon, the balls being in the same positions as in Diagrams LIV. and LV. Aim at No. 5 cushion, about 41 inches from No. 4 cushion. The cue ball must be struck slightly below the middle without side. This stroke is similar to that illustrated in Diagram LIII., only on the reverse side of the table.

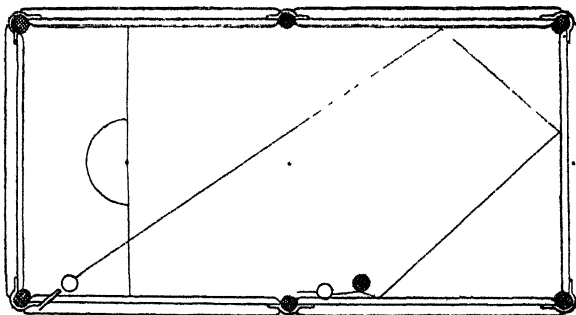
DIAGRAM LVI.



Red ball 30 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white 37 in. from No. 4 cushion and 2 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 33 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 2 cushion.

Diagram LVII. shows a three-cushion cannon played without side, the cue ball being struck below the middle. Aim at No. 3 cushion, about 36 inches from No. 4 cushion. This stroke should be played with just sufficient strength to make the cannon and leave the spot white ball adjacent to

DIAGRAM LVII.

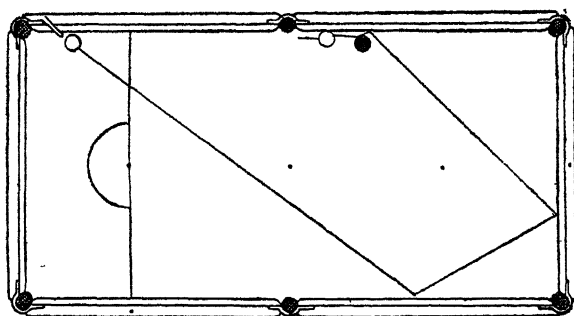


Red ball 52 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 65 in. from No. 4 cushion and touching No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 1 cushion and 2 in. from No. 6 cushion.

No. 5 pocket, as illustrated. There is even a better chance of leaving a break on when the position of the red and spot white balls are reversed.

Diagram LVIII. This is a three-cushion cannon played without side, the cue ball being struck below the middle. Aim at No. 5 cushion about 36 inches from No. 4 cushion. This stroke should be played with just sufficient strength to make the cannon and leave the spot white ball adjacent to No. 2 pocket, as illustrated. There is even a better chance of leaving a break on when the position of the red and spot white balls are reversed. This stroke is similar to that illustrated in Diagram LVII., only on the reverse side of the table.

DIAGRAM LVIII



Red ball 52 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white 65 in. from No. 4 cushion and touching No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 1 cushion and 2 in. from No. 2 cushion.

Diagram LIX. Play this cannon by striking the cue ball in the middle with left side, aiming at No. 1 cushion

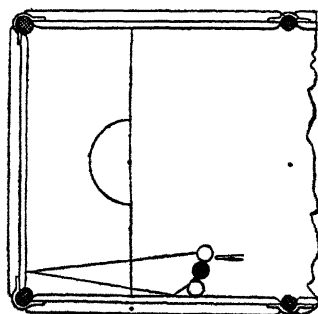


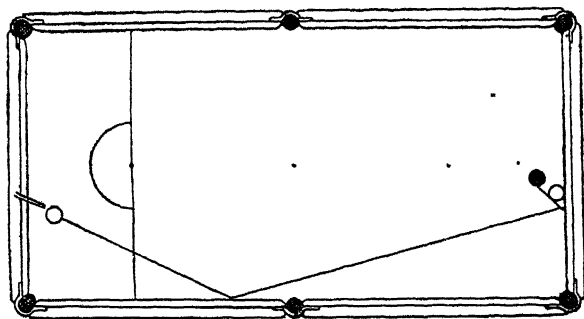
DIAGRAM LIX.

Red ball  $48\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 1 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion. Spot white 48 in. from No. 1 cushion and touching No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 49 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion.

about  $8\frac{1}{2}$  inches from No. 6 cushion. By playing for the cannon off No. 4 cushion there is a possibility of the cue ball, on its return, catching the angle of No. 5 pocket and spoiling the stroke. The balls are also too close together and too near the cushion for the kiss cannon to be played with any chance of success, and a massé stroke is very difficult.

Diagram LX. To cannon by the follow through or by a kiss in this case is very difficult. The best way to play the cannon is to strike the cue ball in the middle with left side, aiming at No. 6 cushion about 57 inches from No. 1 cushion. This is not a very difficult stroke. Care should be taken to play with sufficient strength to leave the balls near the billiard spot.

DIAGRAM LX.



Red ball 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $33\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white touching No. 4 cushion and  $32\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 7 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $22\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 6 cushion.

## SOME CUSHION WINNING HAZARDS.

Diagram LXI. This stroke illustrates a red winning hazard into No. 3 pocket by playing at the cushion first. Strike the cue ball in the middle without side, aiming at No. 4 cushion about  $14\frac{1}{2}$  inches from No. 3 cushion. As this position often occurs, the stroke is one that should frequently be practised.

DIAGRAM LXI.

Red ball 2 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $33\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 3 in. from No. 5 cushion and  $15\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

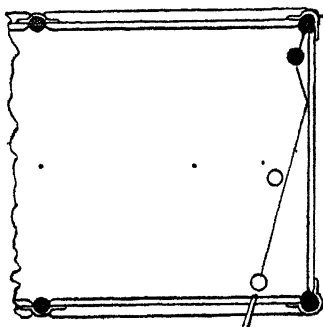
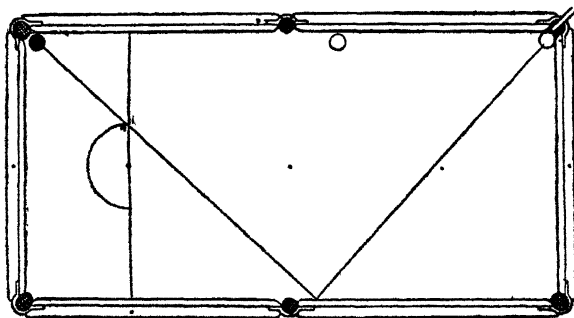


Diagram LXII. This stroke illustrates a red winning hazard into No. 1 pocket by playing at the cushion first. Strike the cue ball in the middle without side, aiming at No. 5 cushion about 8 inches above the centre of No. 5 pocket.

DIAGRAM LXII

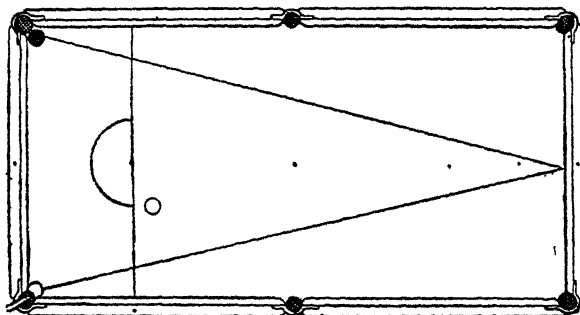


Red ball in the jaw of No. 1 pocket. Spot white 3 in. from No. 3 cushion and 62 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in the jaw of No. 3 pocket, angled.



Diagram LXIII. This stroke illustrates a red winning hazard into No. 1 pocket by playing at the cushion first. Strike the cue ball in the middle without side, aiming at the centre of No. 4 cushion.

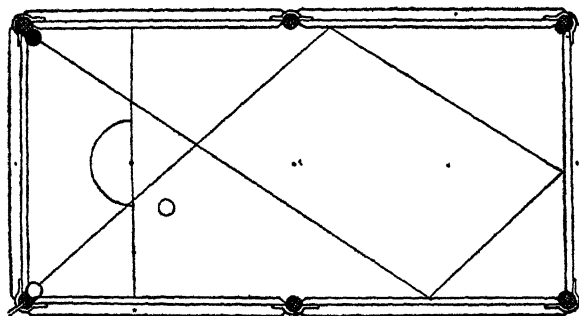
DIAGRAM LXIII.



Red ball in the jaw of No. 1 pocket. Spot white 39 in. from No. 1 cushion and 24 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball in the jaw of No. 6 pocket, angled.

Diagram LXIV. This stroke illustrates a red winning hazard into No. 1 pocket by playing at Nos. 3, 4, and 5 cushions first. Strike the cue ball in the middle without side, aiming at No. 3 cushion about 8 inches from No. 2 pocket.

DIAGRAM LXIV.



Red ball in the jaw of No. 1 pocket. Spot white 39 in. from No. 1 cushion and 24 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball in the jaw of No. 6 pocket, angled.

Diagram LXV. This stroke illustrates a red winning hazard into No. 5 pocket by playing at No. 2 cushion first. Strike the cue ball in the middle without side, aiming at No. 2 cushion midway between Nos. 1 and 2 pockets.

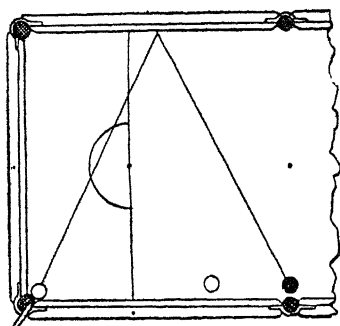
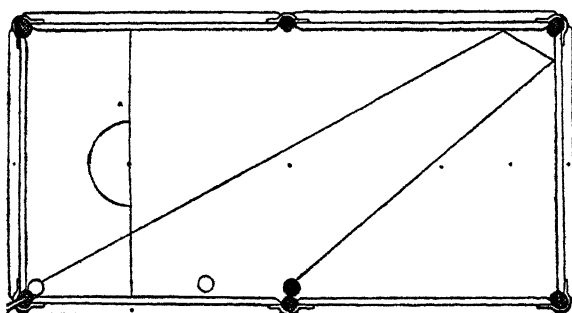


DIAGRAM LXV.

Red ball in the jaw of No. 5 pocket. Spot white 51 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball in the jaw of No. 6 pocket, angled.

Diagram LXVI. This stroke illustrates a red winning hazard into No. 5 pocket, by playing at Nos. 3 and 4 cushions first. Strike the cue ball in the middle, without side, aiming at No. 3 cushion, about 17 inches from No. 4 cushion.

DIAGRAM LXVI.

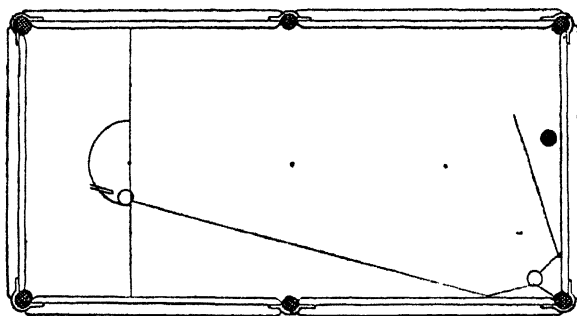


Red ball in the jaw of No. 5 pocket. Spot white 51 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball in the jaw of No. 6 pocket, angled.

## SOME CUSHION LOSING HAZARDS.

To make the losing hazard shown in Diagram LXVII. the cue ball should be struck in the centre with no side whatever, and the strength used should be sufficient to bring the balls to the position shown in the diagram. The cue ball should strike No. 5 cushion 24 inches from the face of No. 4 cushion.

DIAGRAM LXVII.

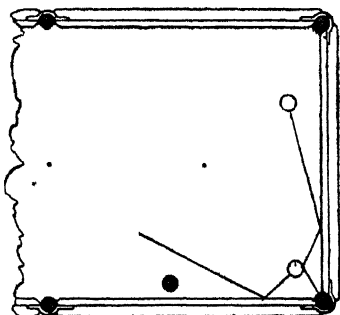


Red ball  $31\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 7 in. from No. 4 cushion and 5 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 28 in. from No. 1 cushion and 27 in. from No. 6 cushion.

Diagram LXVIII. shows a similar stroke from another part of the table.

DIAGRAM LXVIII.

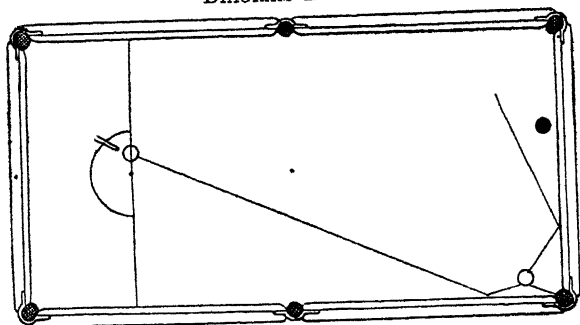
Red ball 40 in. from No. 4 cushion and 3 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and 7 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 9 in. from No. 4 cushion and 54 in. from No. 5 cushion.



In Diagram LXIX. the object ball is not so near the pocket, which necessitates the placing of the cue ball further away from No. 6 cushion than in Diagram LXVII. The

point of contact of the cue ball with No. 5 cushion is, in this case, 21 inches from the face of No. 4 cushion. The stroke is played in exactly the same manner as that shown in Diagram LXVII.

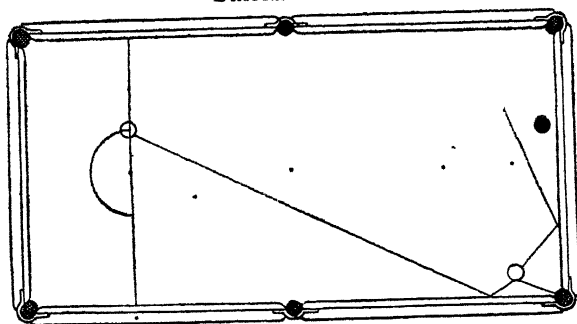
DIAGRAM LXIX.



Red ball  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 5 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball on baulk line, 31 in. from No. 2 cushion.

In Diagram LXX., the object ball is still farther away from the pocket, and the cue ball has consequently to be placed on the extreme left of the "D," the cue ball this time striking No. 5 cushion twenty inches from the face of No. 4.

DIAGRAM LXX.



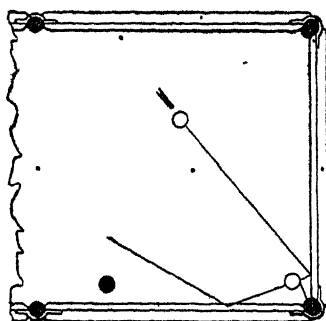
Red ball  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white  $10\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 5 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball on extreme left-hand spot of baulk line.

Diagram LXXI. shows a position where there is no follow-through losing hazard on, so the hazard must be made by striking the cushion first. In this case either side may be used, but right-hand side is preferable, as it brings the object

ball into better position. Put on plenty of side, and strike the cue ball in the middle, playing with strength sufficient to bring the object ball to the position shown in the diagram. If the object ball is half an inch nearer the cushion left side should be used, and the cushion struck a little nearer the ball.

DIAGRAM LXXI.

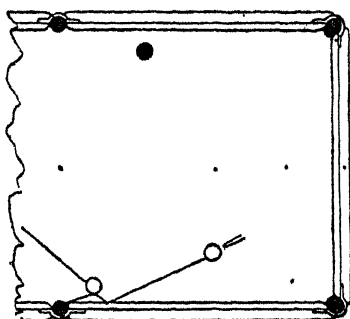
Red ball 54 in. from No. 4 cushion and 7 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 4 cushion and 7 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 36 in. from No. 4 cushion.



In the stroke shown in Diagram LXXII. the angle is not suitable for a following loser, so the play is again a loser off the cushion. Strike the cue ball with left-hand side, and cause it to hit No. 5 cushion 57 inches from the face of No. 4. If the cue ball is 4 inches nearer No. 5 cushion the stroke may be played without side, but the cushion must be struck a little higher up.

DIAGRAM LXXII.

Red ball 7 in. from No. 3 cushion and 50 in. from No 4 cushion. Spot white 64 in. from No 4 cushion and 4 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball  $32\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 4 cushion and 14 in. from No. 5 cushion.



Constant practice of these examples of cushion losers is recommended, so that the eye may be familiarised with the positions when they occur in other parts of the table, when they would be played in the same manner, reversing, of course, the instructions for the opposite side of the table.

## CLOSE CANNONS.

The great importance of the correct employment of side is nowhere so manifest as in the case of close cannons. The great end to be looked to when attempting a series of these cannons is to prevent the cue ball from getting between the other two; for so surely as this happens the break is spoiled. To illustrate more fully my meaning, I give twelve diagrams, showing three strokes with the balls in four different positions, *i.e.* (a) before the stroke, (b) after the stroke has been played correctly (*i.e.* with the left-hand side), (c) after playing with right-hand side, and (d) after playing without side.

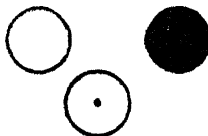
This question of the proper employment of side is simple and familiar enough to French and American players, or to anyone who plays the French and American cannon game with any degree of success; but the importance of side in close cannon play is not generally recognised, even by experts, in this country, and few amateurs know anything about it.

These strokes should be played gently. If played with any degree of strength different positions will result, and in the majority of instances the cannon played for may not be made.

Position of the balls before playing the stroke:—

DIAGRAM LXXIII. (a)

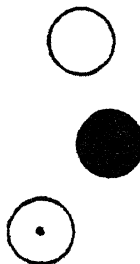
Cue ball 10 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 10 in. from No. 3 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Position of the balls after the stroke has been played correctly (*i.e.* with left-hand side):—

DIAGRAM LXXIII. (b)

Cue ball about 7 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball about 11 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 2 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white about 14 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 5 in. from No. 4 cushion.



If this stroke be played with a lot of left-hand side, playing gently, it will be found that the double kiss off the red ball will leave a good position for the continuance of the break; whereas the positions left after playing with right-hand side or with no side at all are, if not fatal to the long continuance of the break, at any rate, not nearly so good as when left-hand side is used.

Position of the balls after the stroke has been played with right-hand side (wrong):—

DIAGRAM LXXIII. (c)

Red ball about  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and about 2 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball about 11 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white about 17 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 3 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Position of the balls after the stroke has been played without any side at all (wrong):—

DIAGRAM LXXIII. (d)

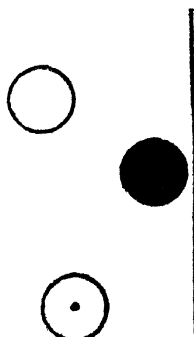
Cue ball about 8 in. from No. 3 cushion and about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball about 10 in. from No. 3 cushion and about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white about 17 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 3 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Position of the balls before the stroke:—

DIAGRAM LXXIV. (a)

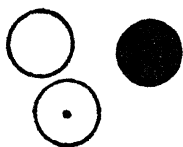
Cue ball 20 in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 23 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white  $28\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Position of the balls after the stroke has been played correctly (*i.e.* with left-hand side).—

DIAGRAM LXXIV. (*b*)

Cue ball about 26½ in. from No. 3 cushion and about 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball almost touching No. 4 cushion and about 27 in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white about 29 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 5 in. from No. 4 cushion.

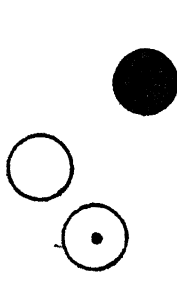


The stroke here illustrated should be played with a lot of left-hand side, aiming almost full on the red and playing very gently, when it will be seen that the effect of the side is to make the cue ball and the red ball travel slowly in the same direction.

Position of the balls after the stroke has been played with right-hand side (wrong):—

DIAGRAM LXXIV. (*c*)

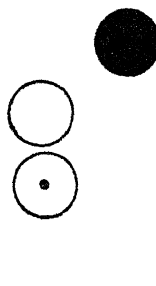
Cue ball about 27 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball about 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 1½ in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white about 30 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 4 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Position of the balls after playing the stroke without side:—

DIAGRAM LXXIV (*d*)

Cue ball about 27 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 5 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball close to No. 4 cushion and about 24 in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white about 30 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 5 in. from No. 4 cushion.

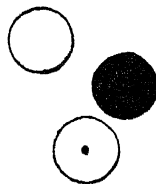




Position of the balls before the stroke :—

DIAGRAM LXXV. (a)

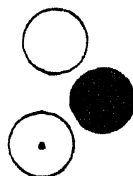
Cue ball 20 in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 22 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $1\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Position of the balls after playing the stroke properly (*i.e.* with left-hand side) :—

DIAGRAM LXXV. (b)

Red ball about 23 in. from No. 3 cushion and close to No. 4 cushion. Other balls 2 in. or 3 in. away in the positions shown.

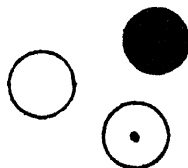


This stroke is a very valuable one. In this case also the shot should be played very gently, with a lot of left-hand side, aiming not quite full, but a little to the right of the red ball. It will be seen that this way of playing it will give the second kiss, and so keep all three balls together, almost touching, which is by far the best position obtainable for the continuance of the break.

Position of the balls after the stroke has been played with right-hand side (wrong) :—

DIAGRAM LXXV (c)

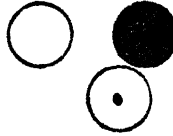
Cue ball 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 22 in. from No. 3 cushion and almost touching No. 4 cushion. Spot white 26 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.



Position of the balls after the stroke has been played without side at all (wrong):—

DIAGRAM LXXV. (*d*)

Cue ball 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 1½ in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 25½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 2½ in. from No. 4 cushion.

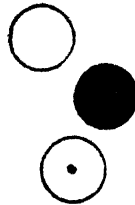


In the following rail cannons right-hand side should be used.

Position of the balls before the stroke:—

DIAGRAM LXXVI. (*a*)

Red ball 2½ in. from No. 4 cushion and 14 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 11½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 17 in. from No. 3 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion.

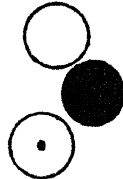


This stroke must be played with right-hand side. Aim should be taken rather full at the red ball, and the stroke played with gentle strength, as before. If properly played, it will be seen that the red comes up to the spot white and leaves the cue ball a little in front of the other two. The red is the ball played at.

Position of the balls after the stroke:—

DIAGRAM LXXVI. (*b*)

Red ball about 16½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 2½ in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball about 14 in. from No. 3 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white about 18½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion.

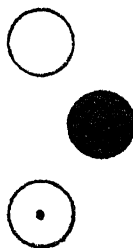


The stroke illustrated by Diagram LXXVI. (*b*) should be played in much the same way, but the red ball must be struck so that it will kiss the player's ball as it comes off the cushion. The red is the ball played at.

Position before the stroke :—

DIAGRAM LXXVII. (*a*)

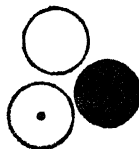
Cue ball 15 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 18 $\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 22 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.



Position after the stroke :—

DIAGRAM LXXVII. (*b*)

Cue ball about 19 in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 21 in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 22 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.



Position before the stroke :—

DIAGRAM LXXVIII. (*a*)

Cue ball 23 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 27 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 32 $\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

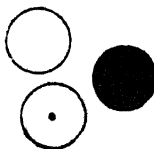


In playing this stroke care should be taken to rather pull at the red ball with a lot of right-hand side.

Position after the stroke :—

DIAGRAM LXXVIII. (b)

Cue ball 31 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 33 in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 35 in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion.



## SIX TYPICAL CLOSE CANNON POSITIONS.

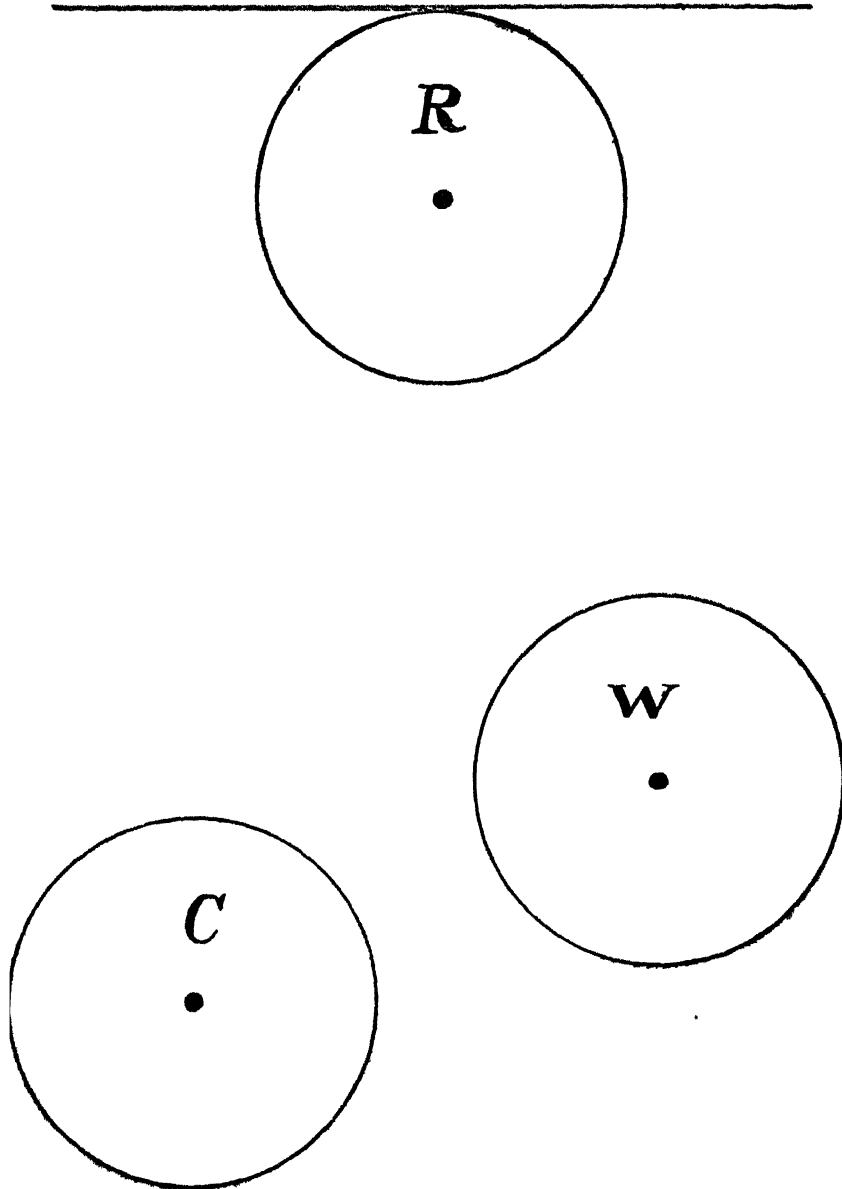
There are not so many different positions in close cannon play as most persons imagine, and anyone who will take the trouble to master the six positions given will have made considerable progress towards ability to make a close cannon break, which is so very rarely found among amateurs. Above all things, however, he must exercise great patience, for a nicety of touch and accuracy of aim are required that cannot (except in very rare cases, perhaps) be acquired without considerable perseverance.

It should be noted that in playing these cannons the player's aim should be to keep the balls at the same angle to each other, or as near to it as possible.

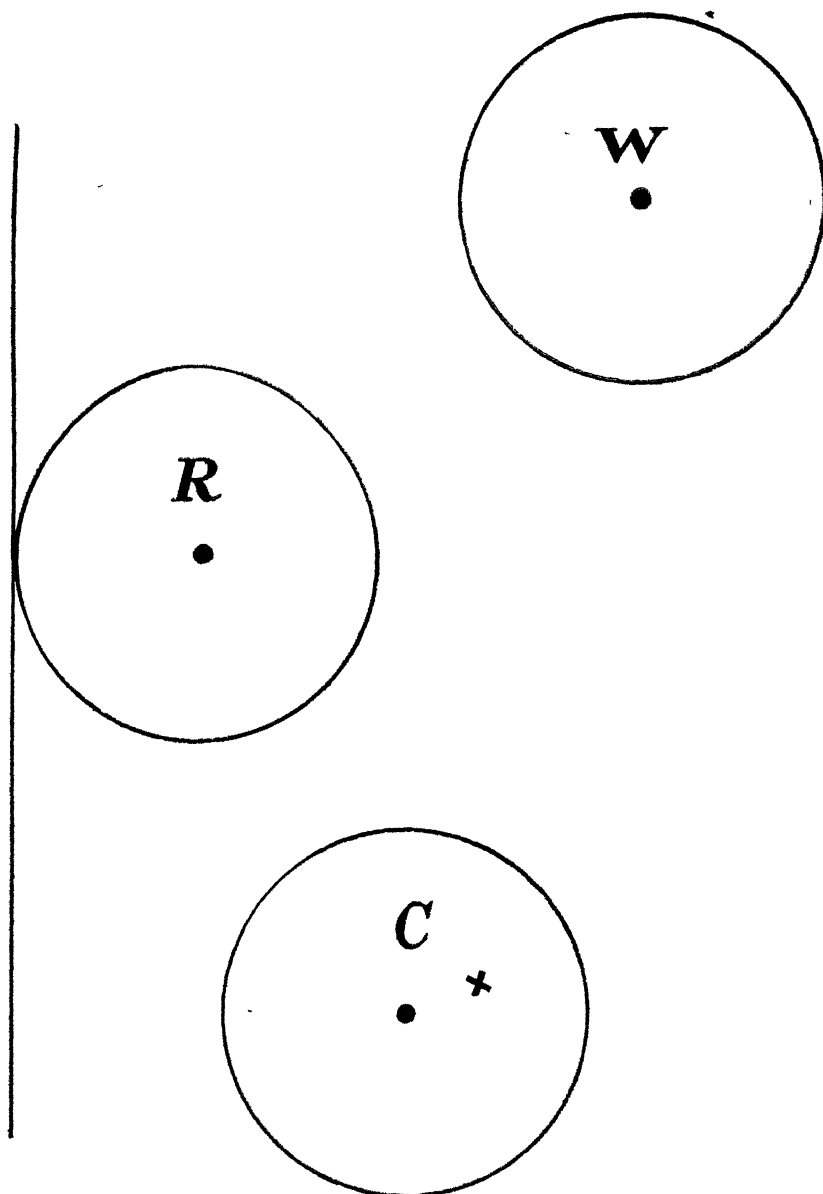
In the diagrams the black lines define the edge of the cushions. The diagrams should be used as follows :—

1. Get a piece of tracing linen (tracing paper will do, but will not, of course, be so durable), and take a tracing of the diagram, cushion line included.
2. Cut small holes in the tracing in the centre of the circles.
3. Now place the tracing on the billiard table, with the cushion line directly under the edge of the cushion.
4. Take a piece of chalk or tailor's pipeclay (do not use lead pencil, as it permanently marks the cloth) and mark on the cloth, through the holes in the tracing, the position of the centres of the circles.
5. Now place the balls on these marks and proceed to practise the strokes according to the instructions.
6. It will be seen when the balls are placed that the red ball in positions 1, 2, and 6 is touching the cushion.

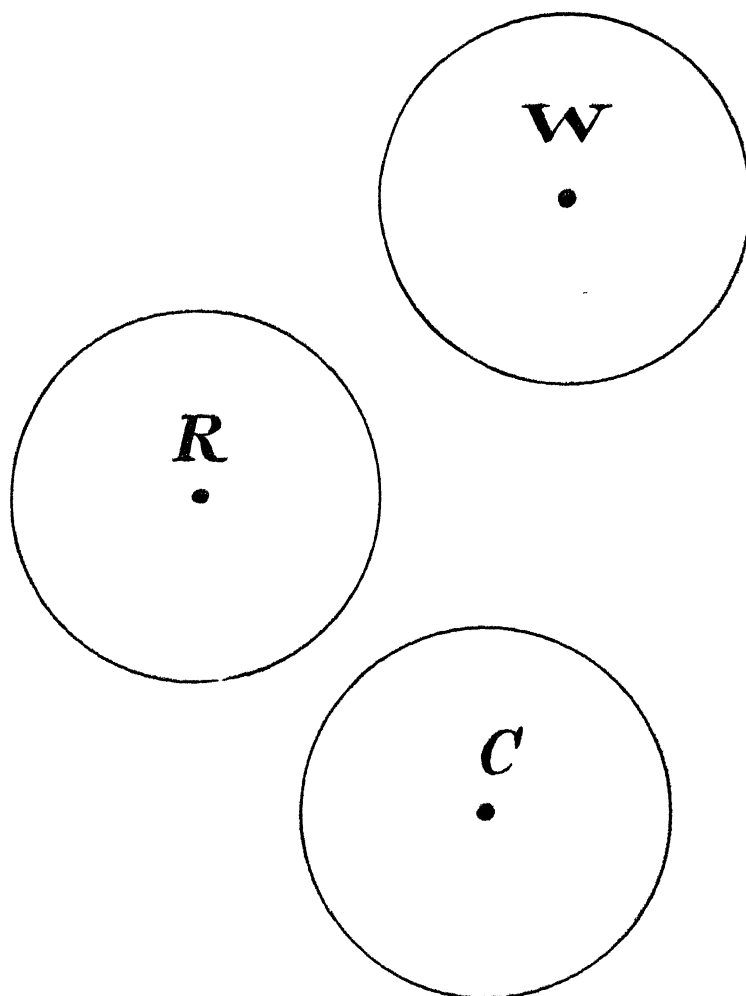
An easy delivery of the cue is of great importance in this class of cannon. Some of the best of the French and American players (the late Frank Ives being a prominent instance) cultivate a sort of wrist delivery, which, no doubt, makes long runs of cannons less fatiguing than if arm delivery is used.



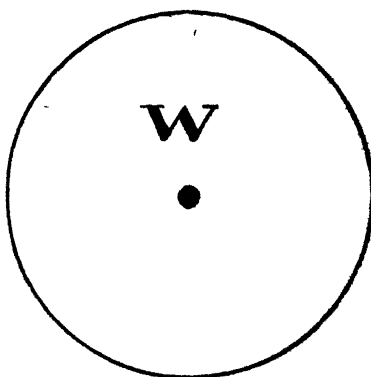
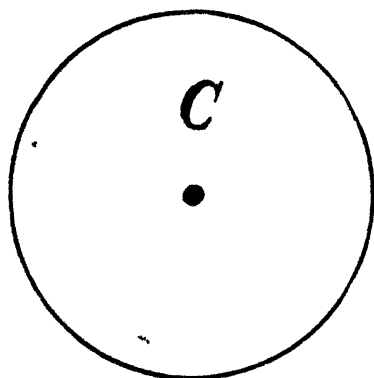
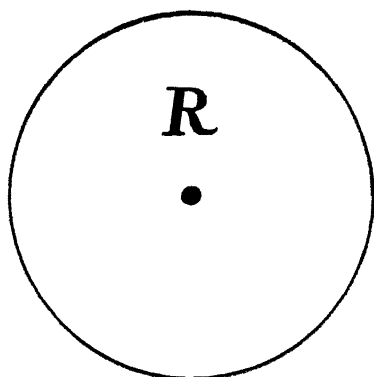
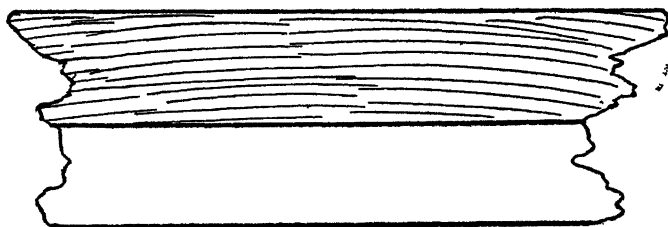
In position 1 (Diagram LXXIX.) the cue ball should be struck in the centre, and aim must be taken at the edge of the red ball, though the white is the ball played at. If the cue ball be struck truly, the white will be hit a little finer than quarter-ball. The stroke must be played gently and practised repeatedly until something like position 2 is left.



The stroke in position 2 (Diagram LXXX.) is played by striking the cue ball on the right-hand side, about half-way between the centre and the edge. This, and indeed all these close cannons, should be played gently, with the object of leaving the cue ball about an inch from the first object ball. It must not be forgotten that the closer the balls are together the more delicate will be the touch required.



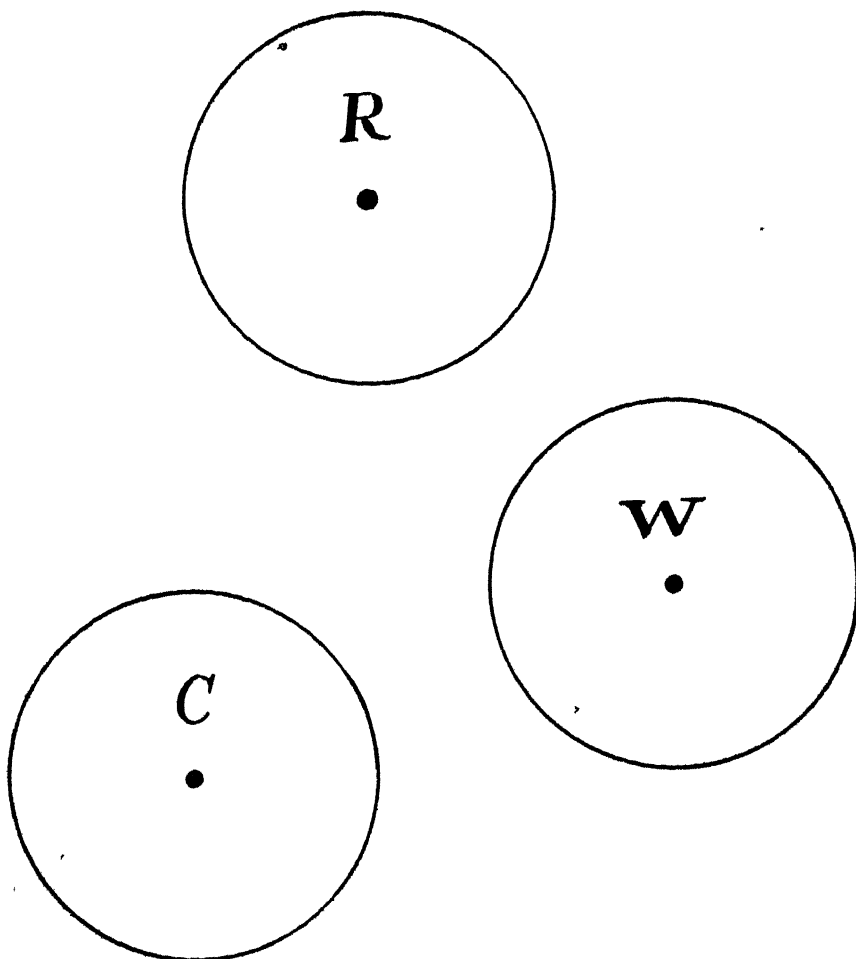
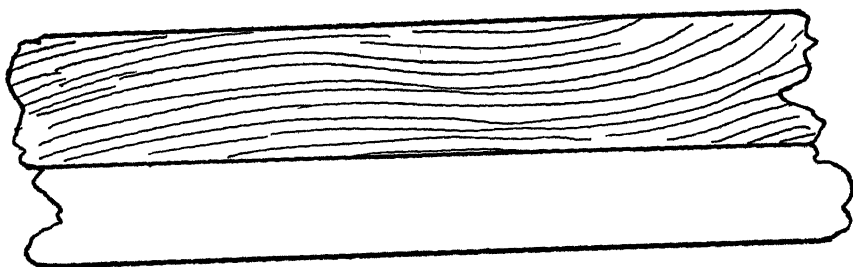
Position 3 (Diagram LXXXI.) should result from this stroke. No side is required for this cannon, and the red ball should be struck as fine as possible. Care must be taken in this case to prevent the balls being left touching



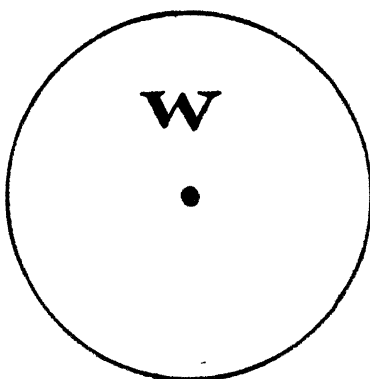
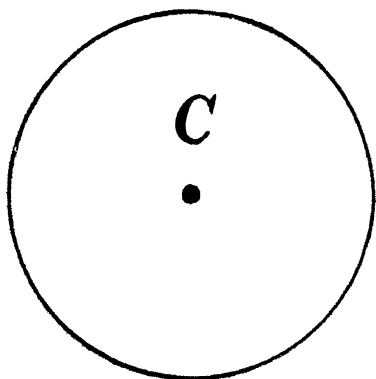
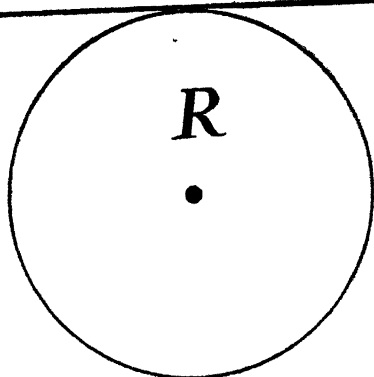
In position 4 (Diagram LXXXII.) it is necessary to strike the cue ball with a little left-hand side, slightly below the centre. This is a kiss "nurse," and striking the ball below the centre makes it come back more quickly.

Aim about three-quarter ball on the red, and the position left will be either No. 1 or No. 5. It is not imperative that the balls will be exactly as they are drawn, but the *best* positions are illustrated. If the instructions for playing the stroke are followed, it will be found that, at any rate, a good position will be left.





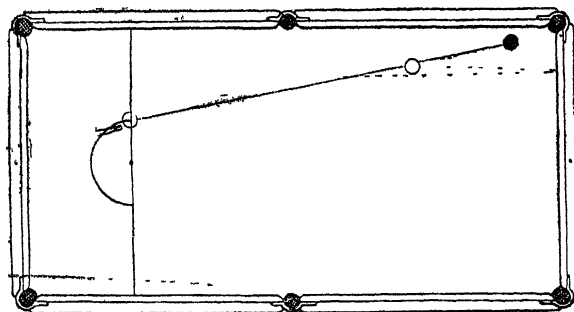
The ensuing shot (Diagram LXXXIII.) is also a kiss. The cue ball should be struck dead in the centre, the white being struck very fine on the side nearest to the red. Sufficient strength should be employed to get the double kiss off the red.



Position 6 (Diagram LXXXIV ) illustrates a stroke that is practically the same as No. 4. Use exactly the same side and strength as for the stroke previously mentioned, catching the red three-quarter ball. The probabilities are that one or the other of the positions already illustrated will occur again.

## SOME FOLLOWING CANNONS.

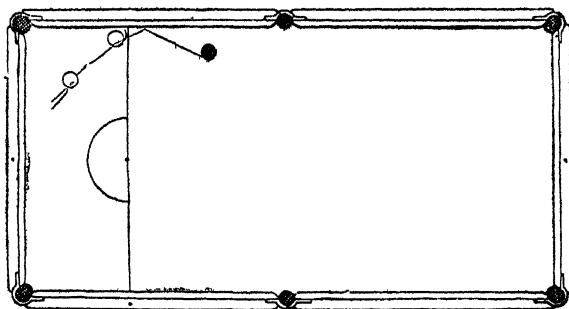
DIAGRAM LXXXV.



Red ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 12 in from No. 4 cushion. White ball 11 in. from No. 3 cushion and 39 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in hand.

Play from the left hand of the half-circle. Strike the cue ball low with strong right-hand side, striking the object ball a little to the left. Side is used here to avoid the kiss.

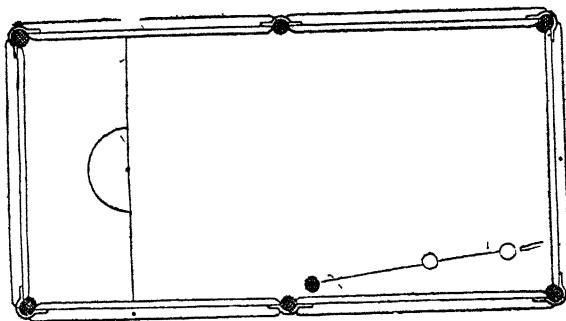
DIAGRAM LXXXVI.



Red ball 49 in from No. 1 cushion and 8 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball 27 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 1 cushion and 14 in. from No. 2 cushion.

Play dead full on the white with right-hand side. The object is to leave a red winner or loser next stroke.

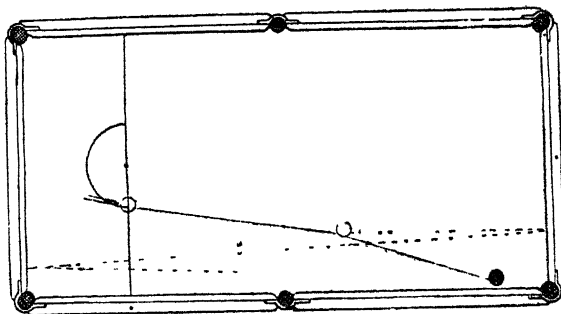
DIAGRAM LXXXVII.



Red ball 2 in. from No 5 cushion and about 7 in from the middle pocket. White ball 32 in from No 4 cushion and 9 in from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 11 in from No 5 cushion

Strike the cue ball just above the centre, and play strong enough to leave the red ball over the pocket.

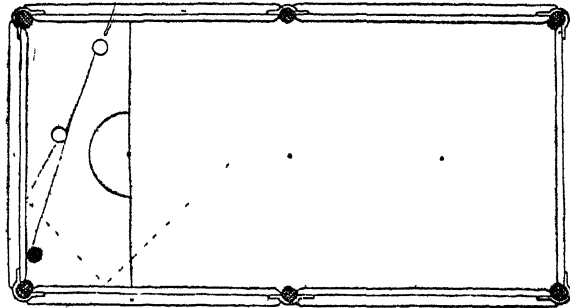
DIAGRAM LXXXVIII



Red ball 13 in. from No 4 cushion and 2 in from No 5 cushion White ball 57 in. from No. 4 cushion and 18 in from No. 5 cushion Cue ball in hand

Strike the cue ball just above the centre, and aim almost full on the object ball. Sufficient strength should be used to bring the white ball in and out of baulk.

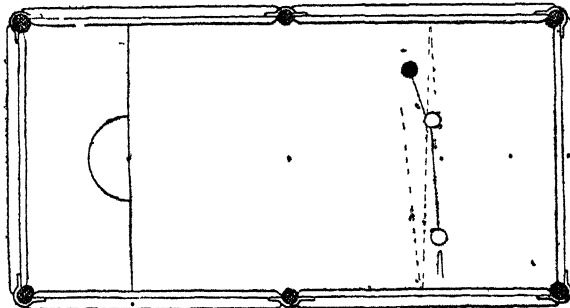
DIAGRAM LXXXIX.



Red ball touching No. 1 cushion and 8 in. from No. 6 cushion. White ball 8 in. from No. 1 cushion and 30 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball 20 in. from No. 1 cushion and 7 in. from No. 2 cushion.

Strike the cue ball above the centre and the object ball slightly to the left. The red ball should be left over the pocket.

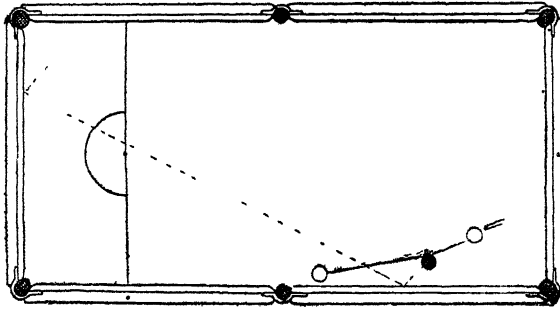
DIAGRAM XC.



Red ball 12 in. from No. 3 cushion and 40 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 26 in. from No. 3 cushion and 34 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 32 in. from No. 4 cushion and 14 in. from No. 5 cushion.

This is the game here. The white loser is on, but it would send the ball into baulk. Strike the cue ball above centre and the object ball nearly full but slightly to the left.

DIAGRAM XCI.

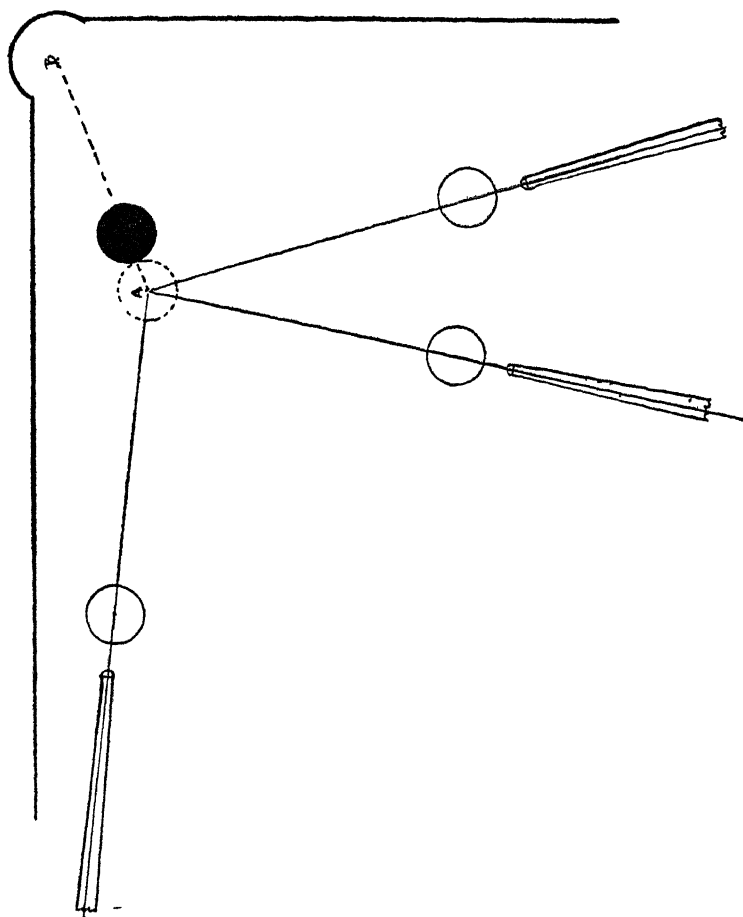


Red ball 31 in. from No. 4 cushion and 9 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 3 in. from No. 5 cushion and 7 in. from the middle pocket. Cue ball 19 in. from No. 4 cushion and 16 in from No. 5 cushion.

The object here is to have the red ball over No. 1 pocket and the white over the middle. Strike the cue ball above the centre and hit the red ball a little to the right.

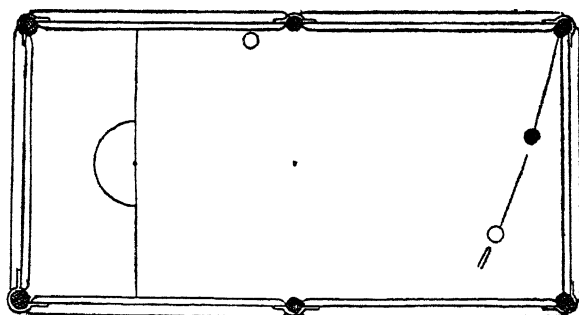
### SOME OFTEN-OCCURRING WINNING HAZARDS.

In practising the winning hazards which follow a mark should be made on the cloth half a ball distant from the object ball on the side opposite the pocket, and in a direct line with the centre of the ball and the pocket; that is, the spot represented by the point A on the subjoined diagram. The cue should then be pointed so that a line passing through its centre would pass through this point. If the cue ball can now be struck without moving the cue out of this position the making of the hazard is a certainty. It follows from this that in making a winning hazard it is necessary to



hit the object ball on a spot in a direct line with the pocket, and that aim should be taken not at the point it is desired to hit, but at a point half a ball distant from it in the straight line drawn through the object ball to the pocket. In other words, to so hit the object ball as to make it travel along the line A B, it is necessary to aim at the point A.

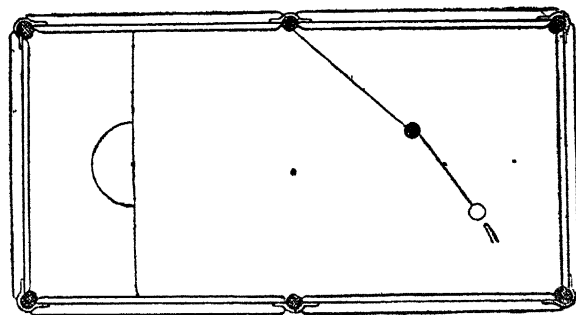
DIAGRAM XCII.



Red ball 30 in. from No. 3 cushion and 9 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball nearly touching No. 2 cushion, so that the loser cannot be made off it. Cue ball 18 in. from No. 4 cushion and 18 in. from No. 5 cushion.

This stroke should be played to bring the cue ball off No. 4 cushion, into position for the loser into No. 4 pocket.

DIAGRAM XCIII.

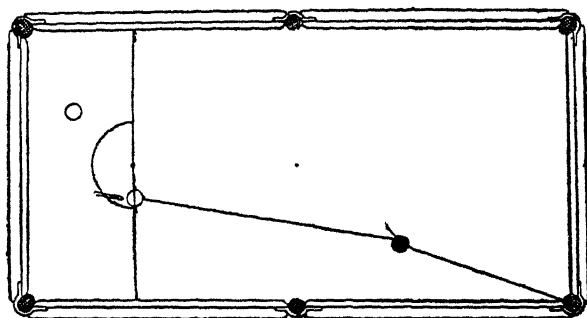


Red ball 28 in. from No. 3 cushion and 40 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 22 in. from No. 4 cushion and 22 in. from No. 5 cushion.

To be played with sufficient strength to bring the cue ball off No. 3 cushion into position for the loser into No. 4 pocket next time.



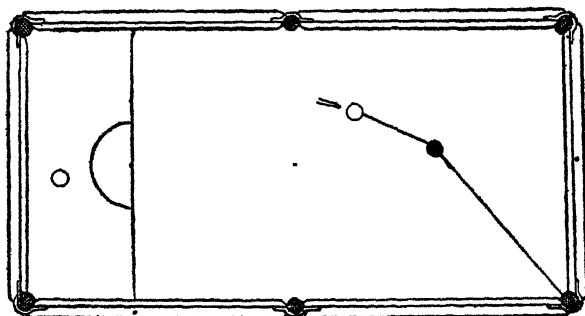
DIAGRAM XCIV.



Red ball 46 in. from No. 4 cushion and 12 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 12 in. from No. 1 cushion and 21 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball about an inch from the right corner of the "D."

The red should here be stabbed in, so as to leave the cue ball almost on the spot where the red was, in position for a loser off the white into No. 1 pocket.

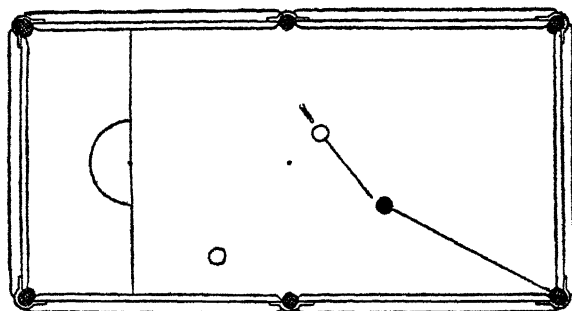
DIAGRAM XCV.



Red ball 32 in. from No. 3 cushion and 35 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 9 in. from No. 1 cushion and 32 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 22 in. from No. 3 cushion and 57 in. from No. 4 cushion.

The cue ball should be brought down to just below No. 2 pocket, to leave a loser off the white into No. 6 pocket.

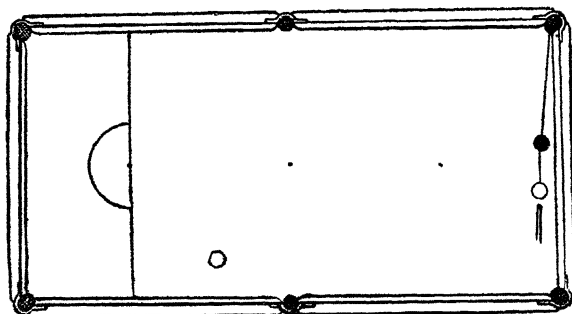
DIAGRAM XCVI.



Red ball 46 in. from No. 4 cushion and 24 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 52 in. from No. 1 cushion and 10 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 30 in. from No. 3 cushion and 66 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Played with sufficient strength to bring the cue ball into position for the loser off the red into No. 3 pocket.

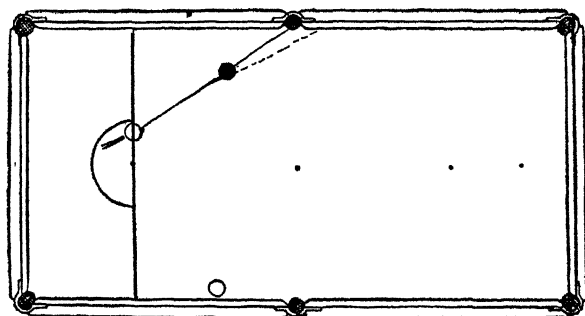
DIAGRAM XCVII.



Red ball 32 in. from No. 3 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 52 in. from No. 1 cushion and 10 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and 29 in. from No. 5 cushion.

The object here is to leave the cue ball so that the loser into No. 4 pocket shall be on next stroke.

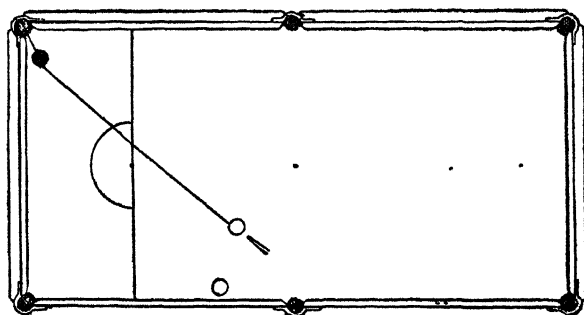
DIAGRAM XCVIII.



Red ball 12 in. from No. 2 cushion and 54 in. from No. 1 cushion. White ball 50 in. from No. 1 cushion and 1 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball in line with the red.

Here the cue ball should be left just above the middle pocket for the loser off the red into No. 4 pocket next stroke.

DIAGRAM XCIX.

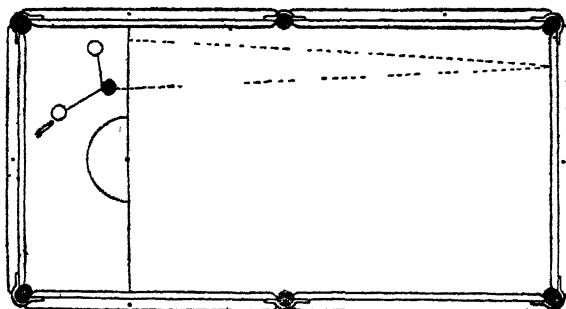


Red ball 3 in. from No. 1 cushion and 7 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball 50 in. from No. 1 cushion and 1 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 56 in. from No. 1 cushion and 20 in. from No. 6 cushion.

The object here should be to bring the cue ball close to No. 2 pocket, to leave the loser into No. 4 pocket.

## SOME GATHERING STROKES.

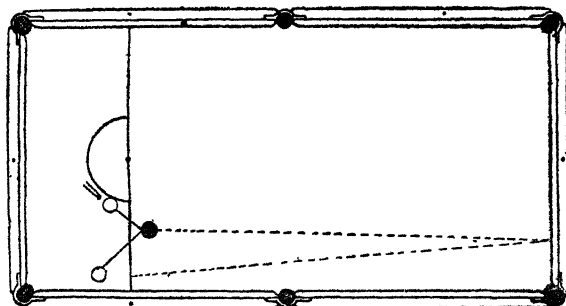
DIAGRAM C.



Red ball 25 in. from No. 1 cushion and 19 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball 20 in. from No. 1 cushion and 7 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball 8 in. from No. 1 cushion and 24 in. from No. 2 cushion.

Play the cannon with screw and a little right-hand side, striking the red so as to make it take the course shown.

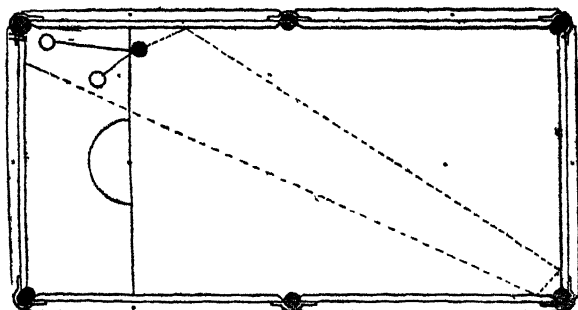
DIAGRAM CI.



Red ball 35 in. from No. 1 cushion and 21 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball 22 in. from No. 1 cushion and 5 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball 25 in. from No. 1 cushion and 25 in. from No. 2 cushion.

Play with screw, without side.

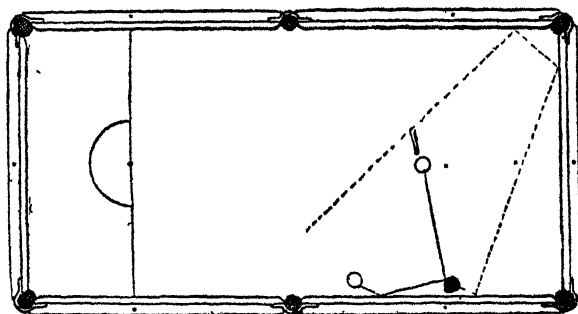
DIAGRAM CII.



Red ball 31 in. from No. 1 cushion and 5 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball 6 in. from No. 1 cushion and 3 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball 20 in. from No. 1 cushion and 13 in. from No. 2 cushion.

Play low with left-hand side rather full on the red.

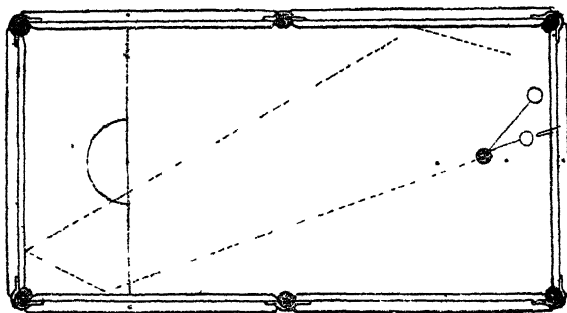
DIAGRAM CIII



Red ball 30 in. from No. 4 cushion and 3 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 58 in. from No. 4 cushion and 4 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball on the centre line 38 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Strike the cue ball very low.

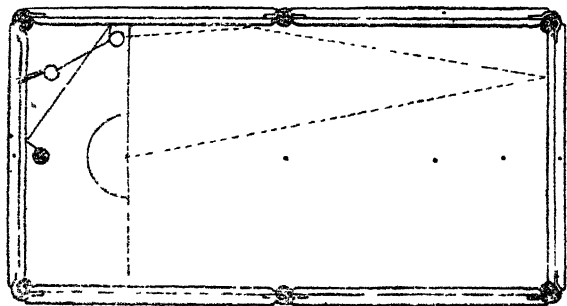
DIAGRAM CIV.



Red ball 17 in. from No. 4 cushion and 33 in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 19 in. from No. 3 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 7 in. from No. 4 cushion and 30 in. from No. 3 cushion.

Strike the cue ball low, without side, nearly full on the object ball, but a little to the right.

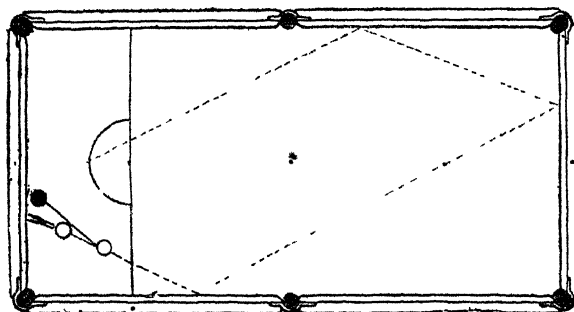
DIAGRAM CV.



Red ball 3 in. from No. 1 cushion, in the centre line of the table. White ball 26 in. from No. 1 cushion and 3 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball 7 in. from No. 1 cushion and 13 in. from No. 2 cushion.

Low, with a little left-hand side, almost half-ball on the object ball.

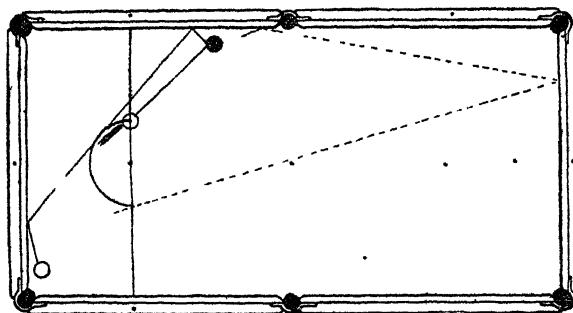
DIAGRAM CVI.



Red ball 3 in. from No. 1 cushion and 27 in. from No. 6 cushion. White ball 21 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $13\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 9 in. from No. 1 cushion and 18 in. from No. 6 cushion.

Screw back, no side.

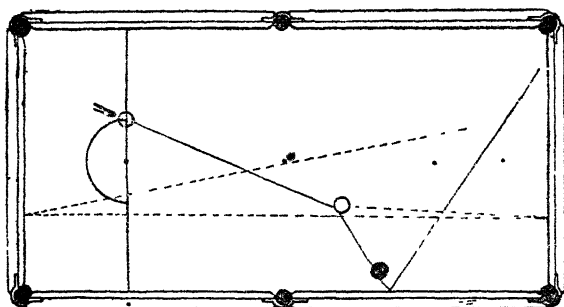
DIAGRAM CVII.



Red ball 52 in. from No. 1 cushion and 3 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball 7 in. from No. 6 cushion and 3 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball left edge of "D."

Low and a little to the left, half-ball on the red.

DIAGRAM CVIII.



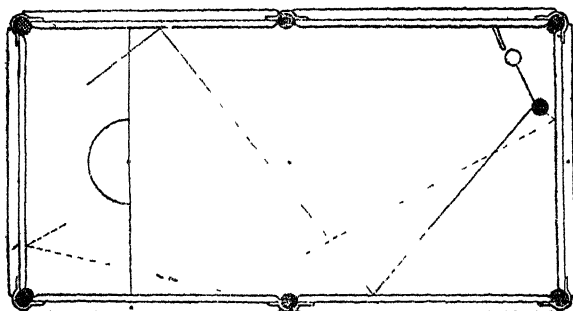
Red ball 6 in. from No. 5 cushion and 46 in. from No 4 cushion. White ball 51 in. from No. 4 cushion and 24 in from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball left edge of "D."

This is a stroke which occurs very often, and it is difficult to decide what to do. The game here is to get the balls together on the other side of the table. There is no losing hazard on off either ball. Play strong and strike the cue ball in the centre, the object being to bring the white in and out of baulk, and leave the red over No. 3 pocket.



## SOME USEFUL BAULKS.

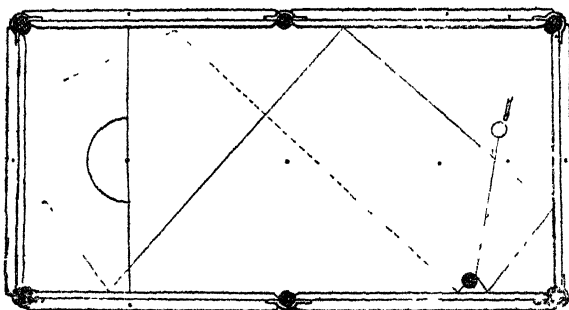
DIAGRAM CIX.



Cue ball 7 in. from No. 3 cushion and 12 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 21 in. from No. 3 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Play with right-hand side with a little twist. Half-ball on the red.

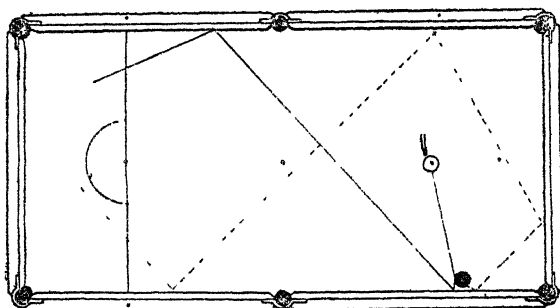
DIAGRAM CX.



Red ball 2 in. from No. 5 cushion and 24 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 27 in. from No. 3 cushion and 14 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Strike the cue ball low with left-hand side. The red ball must be hit on the left-hand side, to bring it off at the proper angle.

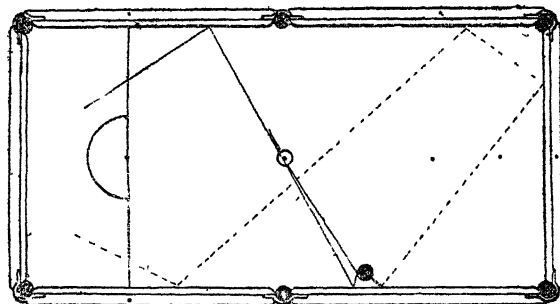
DIAGRAM CXI.



Red ball same position as before. Cue ball on pyramid spot.

Strike the cue ball a little below the centre with the least bit of right-hand side. Hit the red about half-ball on the right. Play strong.

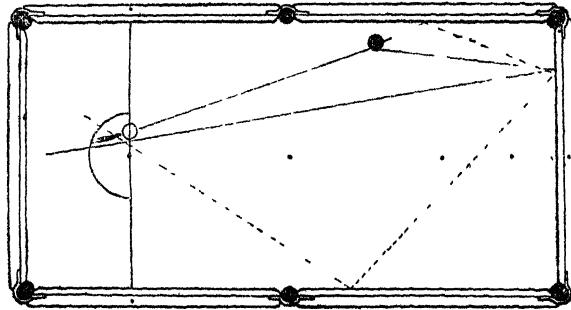
DIAGRAM CXII.



Red ball 2 in. from No. 5 cushion and 50 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball on middle spot.

Play same as last stroke.

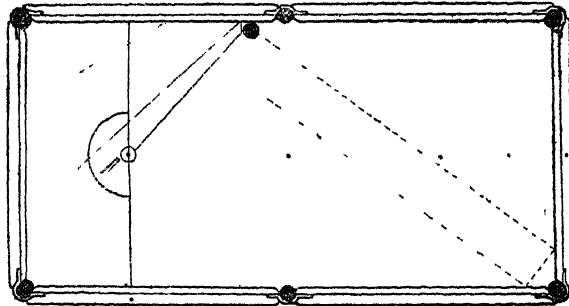
DIAGRAM CXIII.



Red ball 6 in. from No. 3 cushion and 50 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in hand.

Played about 5 inches from the left of the "D."

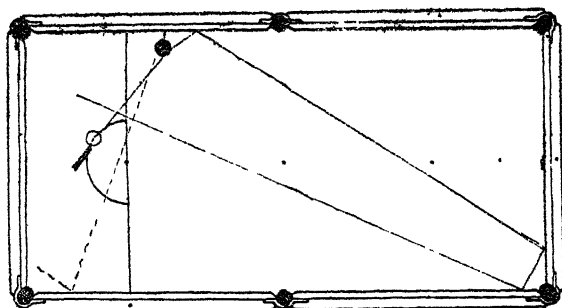
DIAGRAM CXIV.



Red ball touching No. 2 cushion and about 9 in. from the centre of No. 2 pocket. Cue ball in hand.

Played from centre of baulk line. Strike the cue ball low, with left-hand side, with good strength. About half-ball on the red.

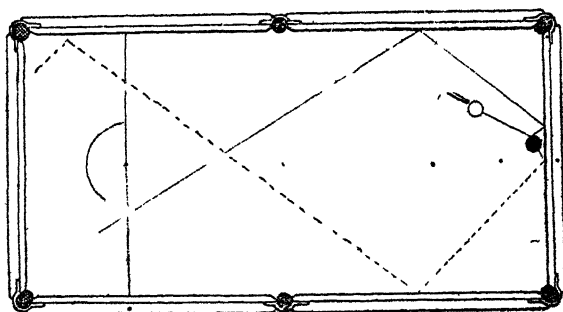
DIAGRAM CXV.



Red ball 3 or 4 in. from No. 2 cushion and 7 or 8 in. outside the baulk line. Cue ball in hand.

Played from the half-circle line. Strike the cue ball a little above the centre with right-hand side.

DIAGRAM CXVI.



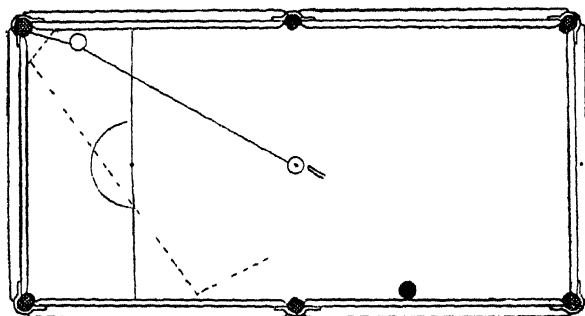
Red ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 32 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 22 in from No. 3 cushion and 18 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Strike the cue ball a little below the centre and slightly to the left. Half-ball on the red.

## SOME RUN-THROUGH LOSERS.

This stroke (Diagram CXVII.) is not a particularly easy one, but it is the game to play for it when the balls are in this position. It should be played with a lot of right-hand side with sufficient strength to bring the object ball into position for the loser into either middle, or for a cannon. In either of these cases a good break will be left. The cue ball may be moved two or three inches either way in the neighbourhood of the centre spot, and the object ball can be any distance up to 5 inches from No 2 cushion and it would still be the game to play the stroke.

DIAGRAM CXVII.

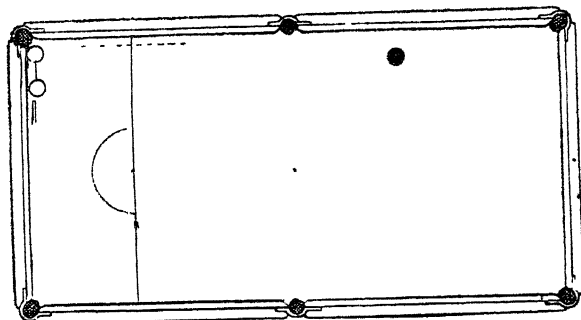


Red ball touching No. 5 cushion and 45 in. from No 4 cushion. White ball 16 in. from No. 1 cushion and 3 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball on centre spot.

This (Diagram CXVIII.) is a follow-through which does not occur to the ordinary amateur, because he cannot see how the white is to get out of the way, and the kiss avoided. Of course, the object is to get the white out of baulk. This is done by driving it on to the outer angle of the pocket, when it will take the course shown in the diagram. It is necessary to strike the white true, and the stroke is therefore rendered more difficult as the distance between the balls is increased. The cue ball should be struck above the centre with as much left-hand side as it is possible to get on and the white should be struck full. To make a following stroke, whether a loser or a cannon, when the balls are close together, it is always necessary to strike the cue ball above its centre. A great

many amateurs have the impression that a ball should always be struck above the centre for a following stroke, but this belief is erroneous, as in some cases, even if the stroke could be made that way, it would make it more difficult.

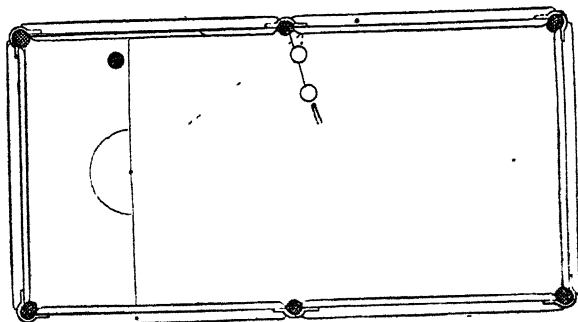
DIAGRAM CXVIII.



Red ball 8 in. from No. 3 cushion and 44 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 1 cushion and from 4 to 20 in. from the cue ball.

It would not be the game to play this loser (Diagram CXIX.) if the positions of the red and white balls were reversed. In that case the game would be to put the red in and thus obtain position. The cue ball should be struck above the centre without side, it should strike the object ball slightly to the left so as to cause it to strike the corner and get out of the way. It is a very useful stroke, as the position often occurs.

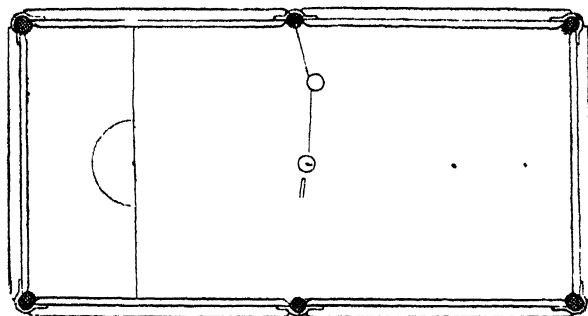
DIAGRAM CXIX.



Red ball 25 in. from No. 1 cushion and 7 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball 6 in. from No. 3 cushion and 67 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 18 in. from No. 3 cushion and 66 in. from No. 4 cushion.

If the white (Diagram CXX.) were another inch down the table, the loser would be made with side. As it is, no side is necessary, but the cue ball should be struck above the centre. The object should be to bring the white ball into the middle of the table, to leave the loser from baulk.

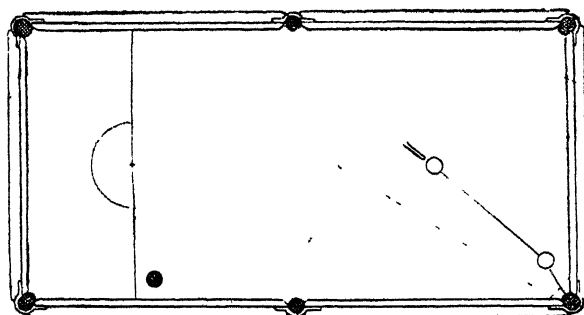
DIAGRAM CXX.



White ball anywhere from 8 to 18 in. from No. 3 cushion and 67 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball on the centre spot

No side is required here either (Diagram CXXI.), but the cue ball should be struck above the centre as before, and the object ball slightly to the right. With the balls in this position it would not be the game to play the loser if the player were, say, 97. In that case he should put the white in and make a double baulk.

DIAGRAM CXXI.



Red ball 10 in. from No. 6 cushion and a few inches out of baulk. White ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 16 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 26 in. from No. 4 cushion on the centre line.

The object here (Diagram CXXII.) is to bring the red out of baulk, but the exact after-position of the red must depend upon the position of the white. The red can be brought anywhere between the dotted lines, the lowest line towards baulk showing the path of the red ball when struck quite full. The more the red is struck towards its right side the nearer to the ball will it strike the cushion, and so come out on the table nearer to the second dotted line. It must be borne in mind, however, that the danger of the balls kissing increases the more the red is struck to the right. It is advisable to practise the stroke first by striking the red ball full. To my mind the

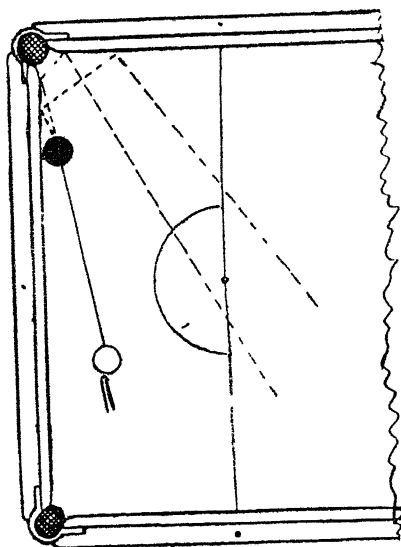


DIAGRAM CXXII.

Red ball 23 in. from No. 2 cushion and 2 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball 22 in from No. 6 cushion and 9 in from No. 1 cushion.

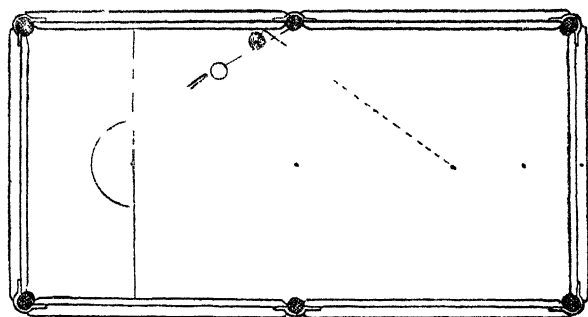
follow-through loser should be played up to the angle formed when the cue ball is 19 inches from the bottom cushion. After this there is great danger of the kiss if the follow-through is played, and as the fine loser is then on the score should be made by its aid. As much left-hand side as possible should be put on to make this loser. Here it may be remarked that the object of putting side on in run-through losing hazards is to make the cue ball take a bias towards the pocket. Side is not required for following cannons.

This (Diagram CXXIII.) is pretty nearly the same stroke as the last, but is a little more difficult by reason of its being the centre pocket. Play with strong left-hand side nearly full



on the red, but with only about half the strength required for the last stroke. The stroke could hardly be made with greater strength than will suffice to bring the red up to the pyramid spot.

DIAGRAM CXXIII.



Red ball 3 in. from No. 2 cushion and 61 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 2 cushion and 51 in. from No. 1 cushion

This stroke (Diagram CXXIV.) also is played with strong left-hand side. The further the balls are apart the more danger there is of kissing. In the position shown on the diagram (3 inches between the balls) there is no danger of the kiss.

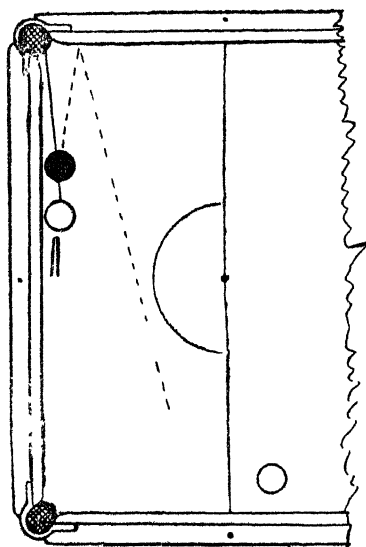


DIAGRAM CXXIV.

Red ball same position as in Diagram CXXII. Cue ball touching No. 1 cushion and 30 in. from No. 2 cushion.

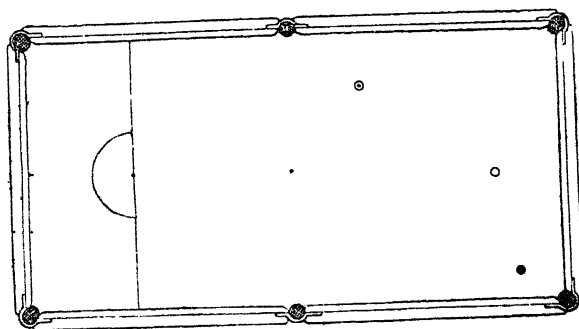
## IMPORTANCE OF POSITION.

AMATEUR players do not, as a general rule, pay sufficient attention to the importance of not only calculating strength for the attainment of the stroke immediately played for, but also with an eye to the after-situation of the balls, so that they may be placed in the most favourable position for the continuance of the break.

It is quite possible, by neglecting this simple precaution, for a good break to be spoiled by the player getting into difficulties after one stroke, as will readily be seen if the following diagrams are studied.

Diagram CXXV. gives the positions of the balls before the commencement of the break, the plain white being the cue ball.

DIAGRAM CXXV.

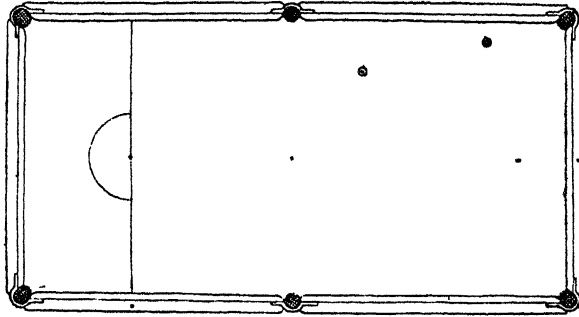


Cue ball  $33\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and 18 in. from No. 4 cushion. Red ball 11 in. from No. 4 cushion and 7 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 14 in. from No. 3 cushion and 53 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Diagram CXXVI. shows the balls after the red losing hazard into No. 4 pocket has been played. It is, of course, possible to score from this position; but as the player's

object should be to make the game as simple as possible, such a position is a bad one, and is therefore to be avoided.

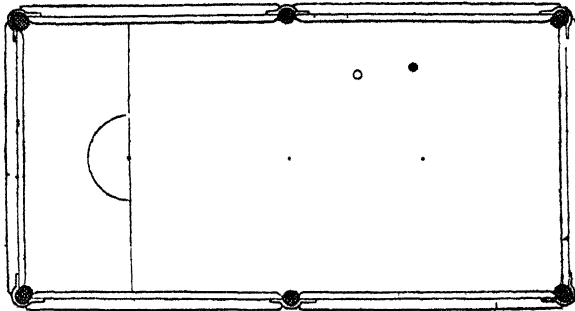
DIAGRAM CXXVI.



Red ball 5 in. from No. 3 cushion and 20 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in No. 4 pocket. Spot white as in Diagram CXXV.

Diagram CXXVII. shows another bad position obtained from the same situation of the balls.

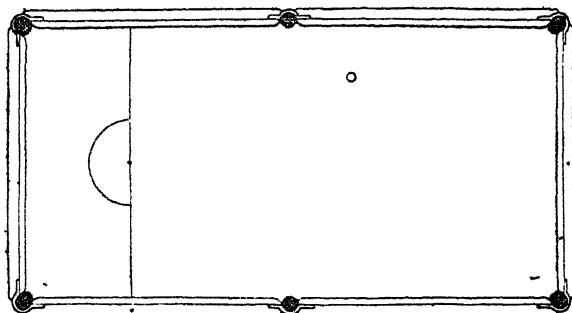
DIAGRAM CXXVII.



Red ball 12 in. from No. 3 cushion and 39 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in No. 4 pocket. Spot white as in Diagram CXXV.

Diagram CXXVIII. is yet another example of a position unfavourable for the continuance of the break.

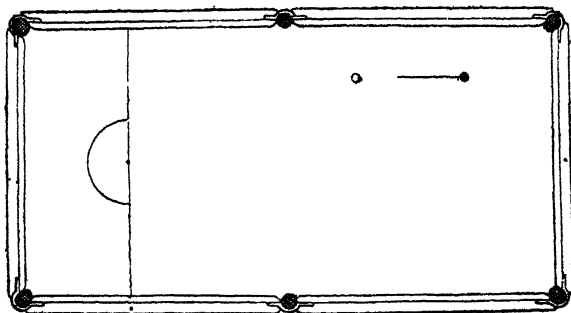
DIAGRAM CXXVIII.



Red ball 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 26 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball in No. 4 pocket. Spot white as in Diagram CXXV.

Diagram CXXIX. is another position to be avoided.

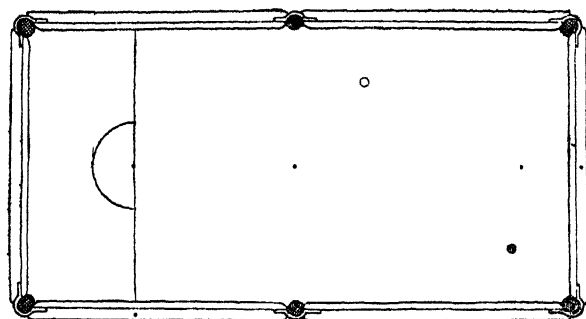
DIAGRAM CXXIX.



Red ball 14 in. from No. 3 cushion and anywhere along a line from 23 to 41 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball and spot white as before.

In Diagram CXXX. is shown the balls in a good position for the continuance of the break. This position is obtained by playing with gentle strength. It will be seen that an easy loser from baulk is thus left on; but by far the greater number of even good amateur players would miss this position, as they would not attach sufficient importance to strength.

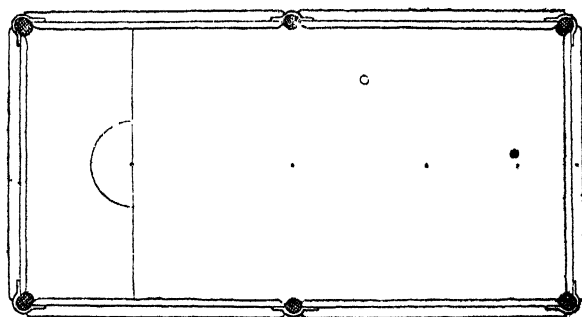
DIAGRAM CXXX.



Red ball 14 in. from No. 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball and spot white as before.

In Diagram CXXXI. is shown another good position obtained by playing the stroke with sufficient strength to bring the red to within a few inches to the other side of the spot. This leaves on a cannon from baulk, which should bring the balls to the top of the table.

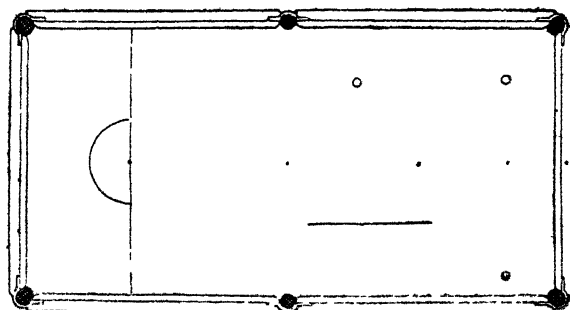
DIAGRAM CXXXI.



Red ball 13 in. from No. 4 cushion and 33 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball and spot white as before.

Diagram CXXXII. shows another example of the ease with which a player may get into difficulties. The stroke played is a losing hazard into No. 4 pocket, as before. If it be so played as to bring the red ball anywhere in the space between a line drawn from 34 in. to 65 in. from No. 4 cushion and 22 in. from No. 5 cushion, the position is a bad one. The object should be to bring the red in play outside the line.

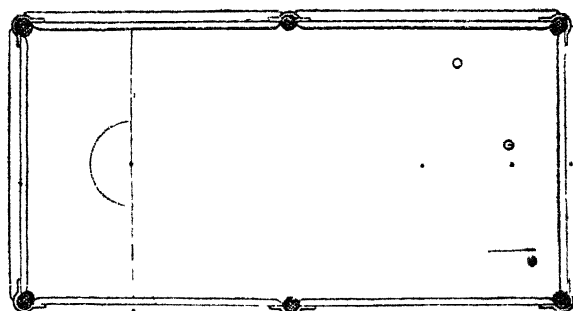
DIAGRAM CXXXII.



Red ball 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 5 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 13 in. from No. 3 cushion and 12 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white as in Diagram CXXV.

The game here (Diagram CXXXIII.) is to pot the red ball in No. 4 pocket. If this is done, however, without due regard for after-position, it will be found that the balls will be left so that the continuance of the break is a matter of difficulty; as, for instance, if the cue ball is left so that it is in a line, or nearly in a line, with the red ball when spotted and the spot white. The player should aim at bringing the cue ball outside, and above or below the ends of a line drawn 13 in. from No. 5 cushion, and commencing 6 in. from No. 4 cushion and terminating 18 in. from it.

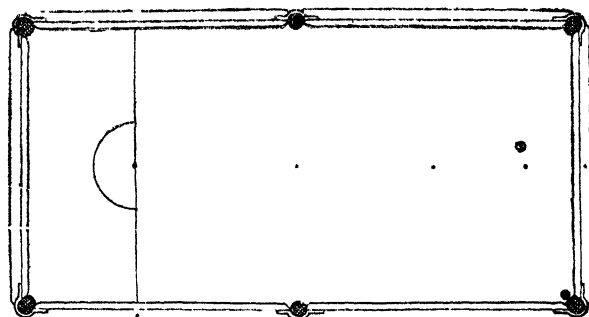
DIAGRAM CXXXIII.



Red ball 7 in. from No. 4 cushion and 10 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 13 in. from No. 4 cushion and 30 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 9 in. from No. 3 cushion and 27 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Diagram CXXXIV. is practically the same thing as is illustrated in the last diagram, and, like that stroke, it is apt to be the concluding stroke of the break, unless attention be given to the after-position of the cue ball. It is a simple matter of strength to bring the cue ball into good position for the continuance of the break.

DIAGRAM CXXXIV

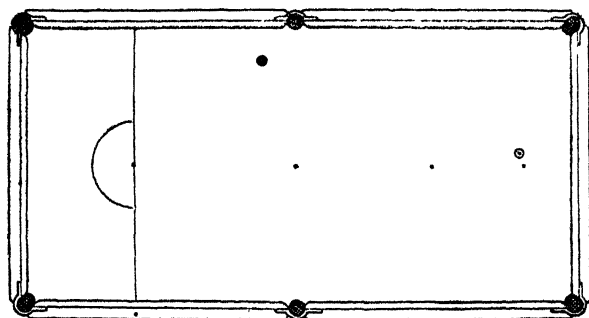


Red ball in the jaws of No. 4 pocket Spot white same position as in Diagram CXXXIII. Cue ball in hand.

Diagram CXXXV. is practically the same as the last, only the winning hazard is into the middle pocket.

Even a novice knows that it is a very bad thing to get the three balls into, or nearly into, line. My object has not been to demonstrate this, but to show that in certain strokes the balls have a tendency to get into line if care is not taken.

DIAGRAM CXXXV.

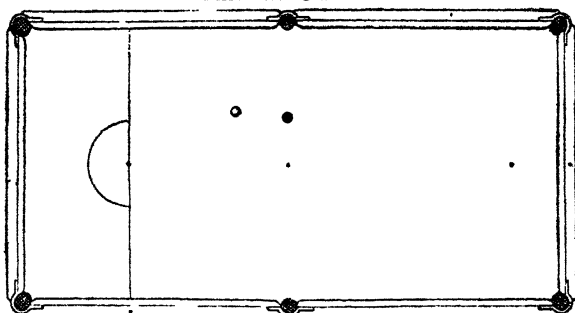


Red ball 8 in. from No. 2 cushion and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 1 cushion. Spot white same as before. Cue ball in hand

Many players would here (Diagram CXXXVI.) go for the cannon, but that is not the game. The game is to play the

losing hazard, making the spot white pass the red and leave position for a cannon from baulk at the next stroke. Bad position would here be left by allowing the spot white to kiss the red, so care must be taken to avoid this, which is effected by playing with left-hand side, and striking the ball somewhat low. The stroke appears to be more difficult than it really is.

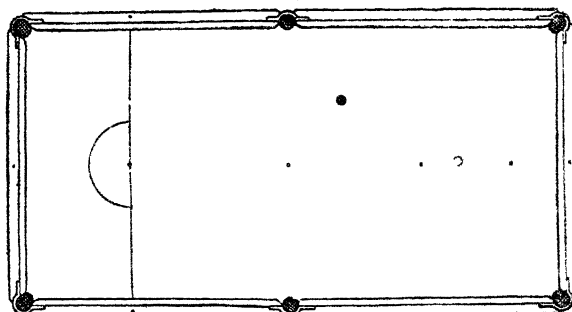
DIAGRAM CXXXVI.



Red ball between the middle pockets and 23 in. from No. 2 pocket. Spot white 56 in. from No. 1 cushion and 22 in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball in hand.

Diagram CXXXVII. shows the position of the balls before the stroke, which is a cannon from the red; in fact, there is nothing else on. According as the stroke is played will the balls be left in good position, or tucked up under the cushion, as shown in the next diagram. I have left them so myself many times when playing matches for money, and my break has come to an end in consequence. As the position always occurs in the course of a big break, the stroke is well worth assiduous practice.

DIAGRAM CXXXVII.

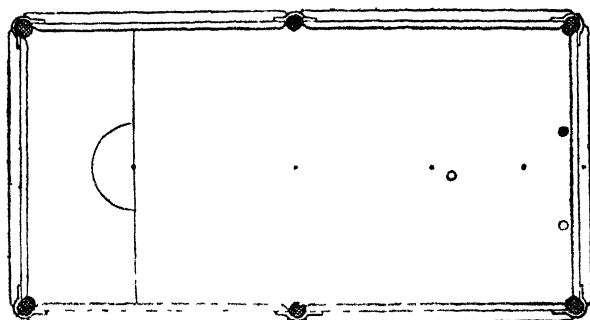


Red ball 20 in. from No. 3 cushion and 58 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 35 in. from No. 3 cushion and 26 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in hand.



This undesirable position (Diagram CXXXVIII.) is obtained by (1) placing the cue ball in the wrong position, as, for instance, about an inch from the centre spot in baulk, where it would be placed by the majority of players, and (2) by want of precision and misjudgment of strength.

DIAGRAM CXXXVIII

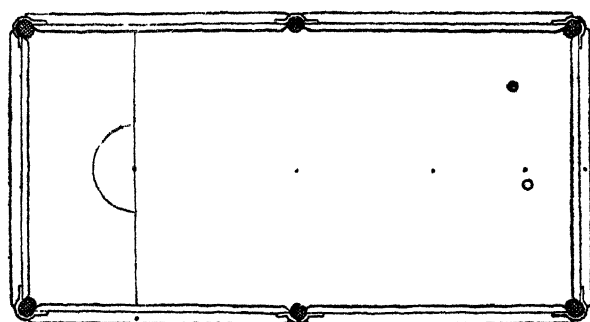


Red ball about 27 in. from No. 3 cushion and near the top cushion. Spot white about 22 in. from No. 5 cushion and near the top cushion. Cue ball a few inches from the pyramid spot and between the other two balls.

Diagram CXXXIX. shows the position to be aimed at, which is an excellent one for the continuance of the break.

To attain this position the cue ball should be played from 2 in. to the left of the centre spot of the "D," and just sufficient strength used to bring the balls to the positions indicated. The exact amount of strength required will

DIAGRAM CXXXIX.

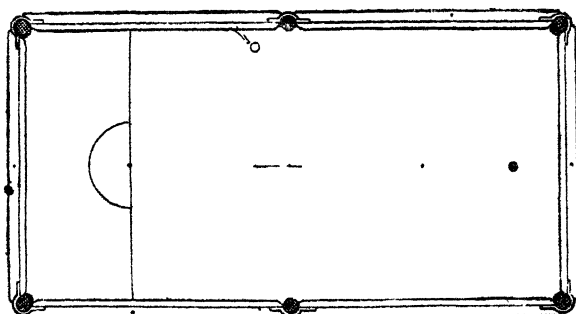


Red ball about 12 in. from No. 3 cushion and 14 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white about 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 39 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball between the billiard and the pyramid spot, and lying on or close to the centre line of the table.

easily be found by practising the stroke a few times; and it is easy enough to make the necessary compensation for extra fastness or slowness when playing on a table other than the one practised upon.

The stroke here (Diagram CXL.) is a losing hazard off the red. It is necessary to avoid the red kissing the white in coming down the table, as if this happens both balls will probably be left in baulk. Good position is got by playing either a little finer or a little fuller than the half-ball, when the red ball will pass the white on the left or right, as the case may be.

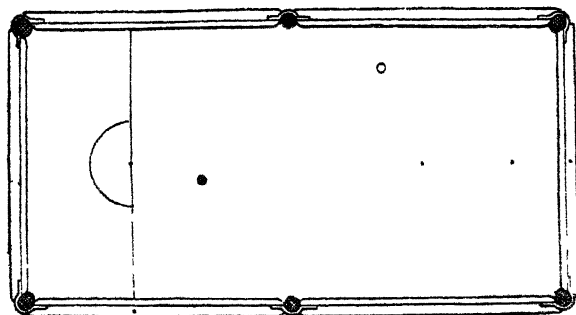
DIAGRAM CXL.



Red ball on spot Spot white anywhere on a line drawn through the centre spot, 3 in towards the spot end, and 9 in. towards the baulk end. Cue ball 62 in. from No. 1 cushion and 4 in. from No. 2 cushion

Diagram CXLI. shows the position of the balls before the stroke, which is a losing hazard off the red into No. 5

DIAGRAM CXLI.



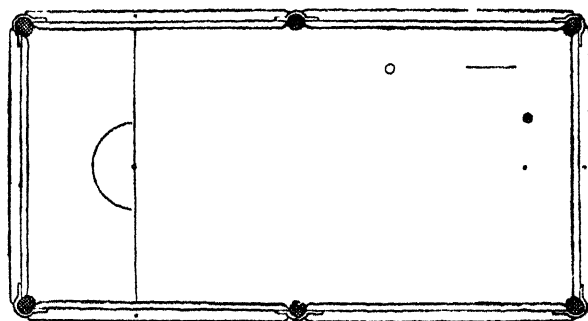
Red ball 47 in from No. 1 cushion and 40 in. from No. 2 cushion. Spot white 10 in. from No. 3 cushion and 48 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in hand.

pocket. In playing the stroke care must be taken not to leave the red anywhere within a line extending from 14 in. to 26 in. from No. 4 cushion and 10 in. from No. 3 cushion.

The position shown in Diagram CXLII., which is the best for continuing the break, is obtained by playing a little full on the red. If the stroke be played the least bit carelessly, or fine on the red, the red will go within the line, and, although it is possible to score, the position is a very bad one.

Diagram CXLII. shows the position to be aimed at when playing Diagram CXLI.

DIAGRAM CXLII.



Red ball about 22 in. from No. 3 cushion and about 12 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white as before. Cue ball in hand, after being taken from No. 5 pocket.

## AN ACTUAL BREAK.

THE following is a break made by myself in actual match play. Each stroke as it was played was noted down—not, of course, by myself—on forms specially prepared, and I afterwards replayed the break assisted by these rough diagrams. I have endeavoured to give my reasons for playing each stroke where there was a choice of more than one, and I have in all cases given directions as to how the stroke should be played, in order that the chapter may be useful alike to the advanced billiard player and to the comparative novice. The latter will not, of course, be greatly interested in the conception of the break, but he will undoubtedly find it very useful to practise the individual strokes, while the former will no doubt find himself studying the break to learn how to avoid as much as possible the leaving of difficult strokes. The best billiard player is not the man who is continually bringing off brilliant strokes, but he who can so manage the balls as to leave himself strokes which would be well within the compass of an ordinary player. Of course the player has not yet been seen, nor is likely to be seen, who never gets into difficulties, but, in my opinion, a man's ability is to be measured by the simplicity of the strokes he leaves himself.

I should not like to hold out the hope that anyone who cares to follow the instructions and to practise assiduously will be able to make the break in the way I did, but I do maintain that anyone who will follow the instructions and practise will in a very short time be able to make much larger breaks than before.

The break was made at the Egyptian Hall in the course of a match with Mr. H. W. Stevenson. The table was a Billiard Association "Standard" table, and Bonzoline balls were used. My reasons for selecting a break made with Bonzoline balls were twofold. In the first place, a break taken from my actual play would of necessity be one played with these balls, for I have played with them exclusively for some years past; the second reason is that these balls are so rapidly displacing

ivory that the majority of the readers of this book are more likely to be users of bonzoline than of ivory balls.

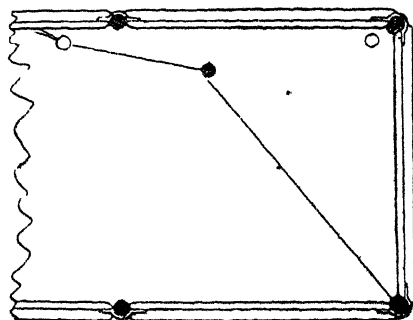
Stevenson, following a failure to score on my part, had the balls left thus —

Cue ball 19 in. from No. 3 cushion and 26 in. from No. 4 cushion.  
Red ball 2 in. from No. 3 cushion and 23 in. from No. 4 cushion Spot white 3 in. from No. 2 cushion and 14 in. below the left middle pocket.

He played for the loser off the red into No. 3 pocket, and failing, left the balls for me as shown in Stroke 1.

#### STROKE 1.

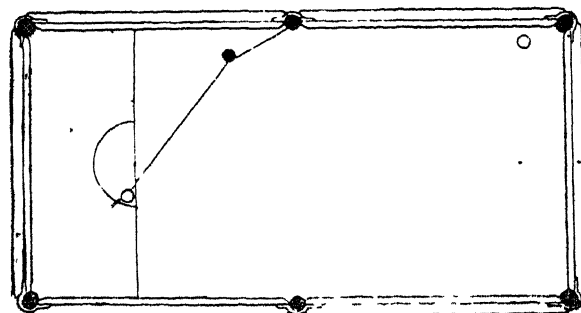
Red ball 11 in. from No. 3 cushion and 48 in. from No. 4 cushion Spot white 2 in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion Cue ball 3 in. from No. 2 cushion and 14 in. below the centre of the left middle pocket.



I played a little full on the red here, so as to avoid losing the white through the red kissing it in. The strength used was just sufficient to bring the red below the middle pocket, somewhere about midway between the baulk line and the middle. It would have been a bad leave if the ball had stopped from about 12 to 18 inches below the middle.

The red just skimmed the opponent's ball in going up the table, but left it practically in the same position, and the kiss did not affect the stroke.

#### STROKE 2.

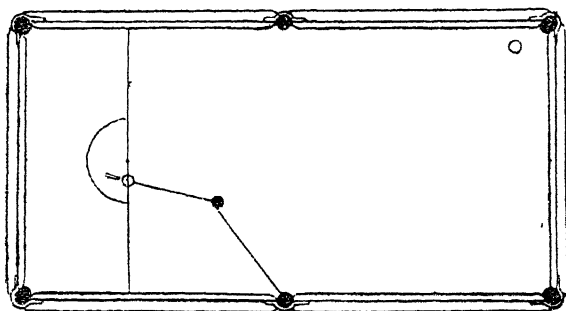


Spot white nearly in the same position; about an inch further out. Red ball 6 in. from No. 3 cushion and 20 in. below the centre of No. 2 pocket. Cue ball in hand.

This is an ordinary jenny, played with left-hand side, striking the red half-ball

I played the jenny here in preference to the cannon, because I intended at the next stroke to make the red winner into No 5 pocket, and then get my ball up the table in position for a loser off the white. Instead, however, of leaving a winner I left the loser.

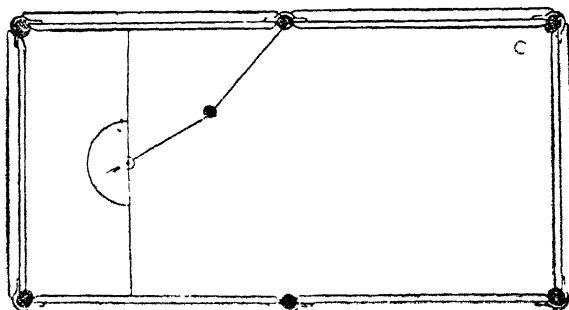
STROKE 3.



Red ball about 24 in. from No. 6 cushion and 53 in. from No. 1 cushion. Spot white in same position. Cue ball in hand. Played about  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from the corner of the "D."

This stroke requires no side. The red should be struck a little full, and with strength to bring it down into position for the winning hazard, the idea being to attain the position for the white loser which I tried for in playing stroke 2.

STROKE 4.



Red ball 22 in. from No. 2 cushion and 50 in. from No. 1 cushion. Spot white same position. Cue ball in hand. Played from the centre of the baulk line.

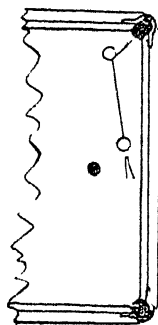
I could have gone in off the red slowly here and left good

position, but I thought that the winning hazard was the best game, and by playing it I carried out my intention at stroke 2, and left the white loser at the next stroke.

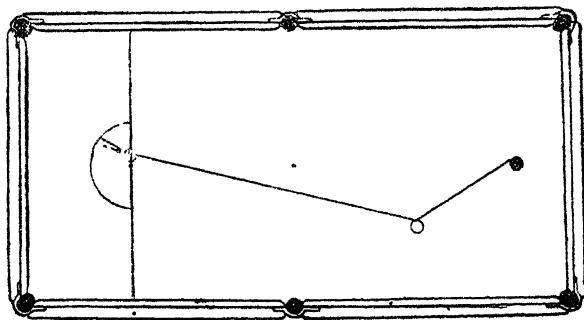
## STROKE 5.

Red ball on spot Spot white same position. Cue ball about 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and 30 in. from No. 3 cushion.

In playing this stroke my idea was to bring the white to the other side of the red into position for the cannon from baulk.



## STROKE 6



Red ball on spot. Spot white 20 in. from No. 5 cushion and 40 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in hand.

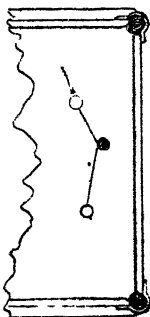
I wanted here to bring the white off No. 5 cushion rather square and to strike the red on the right side. This would have brought the three balls nearly in line about 8 or 9 inches from the top cushion with the cue ball in the centre, an excellent position for the top of the table game. Instead, however, of getting on the right side of the red I got on the left side, which was due to my slightly misplacing my ball.

## STROKE 7.

Red ball about 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and 31 in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 23 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 16 in. from No. 4 cushion and 20 in. from No. 3 cushion.

I got this position instead of the one I aimed at. My aim, now, was to make the cannon and leave a losing hazard off the white with the red in position for a cannon from baulk at the succeeding stroke.

The stroke should be played with a little side, half-ball on the red.



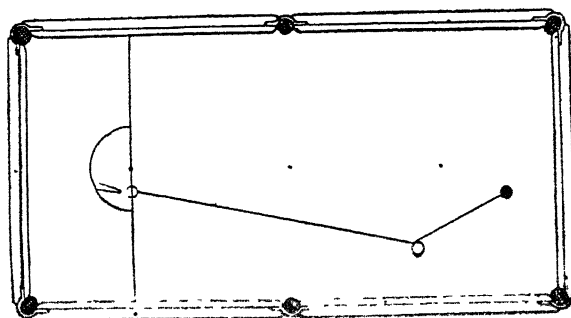
## STROKE 8.

Red ball 13 in. from No. 4 cushion and 29 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 23 in. from No. 5 cushion.

This loser should be played with a little left-hand side, bringing the white off the cushion into position for the cannon from baulk, as shown in the next diagram.



## STROKE 9.



Red ball same position as before. White ball 38 in. from No. 4 cushion and 13 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball in hand. Played 4 in. from the right edge of the "D"

The idea here was to get on the left side of the red, and bring it over the pocket for the winner next stroke, leaving

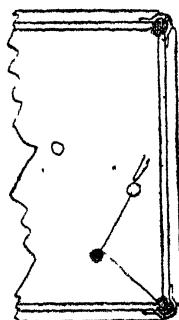


the white in the vicinity of the spot; but I played the stroke too strong, and got too full on the red, leaving the bad position shown in the next illustration.

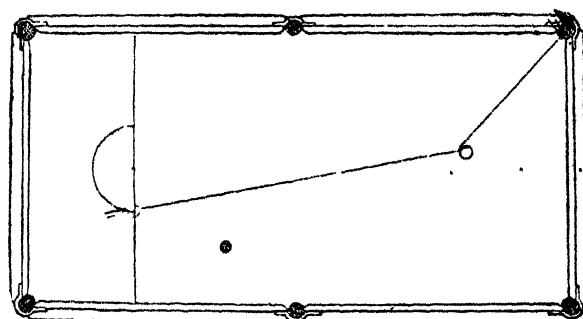
## STROKE 10.

Red ball 18 in. from No. 4 cushion and 12 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 32 in. from No. 3 cushion and 27 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 7 in. from No. 4 cushion and 30 in. from No. 5 cushion.

I had to screw this loser slowly to keep the red out of baulk



## STROKE 11.



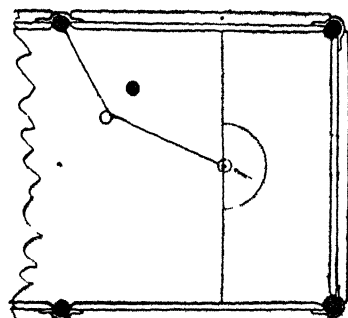
Red ball 16 in. from No. 6 cushion and 52 in. from No. 1 cushion. White ball same position as before. Cue ball in hand. Played from right spot of "D."

I played this loser with a little left-hand side, rather full on the object ball, the idea being to bring the white down near the red.

## STROKE 12.

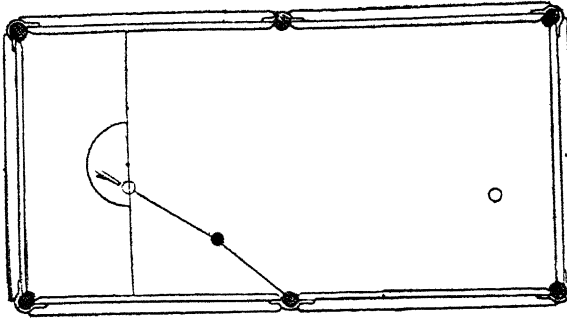
Red ball same position as before. White ball 23 in. from No. 6 cushion and 58 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball in hand. Played from centre spot of "D."

There is here a red winner and a white loser on. I played the loser, because by playing it gently I could leave the white near the spot, and then by playing the red winner at



the next stroke I should have all the balls together at the top of the table.

STROKE 13.



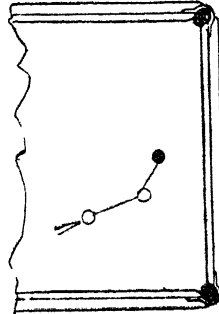
Red ball same position as before. White ball 16 in. from No. 4 cushion and 32 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball in hand. Played from about 6 in. from the right of the "D."

This winner should be played slowly, so that the cue ball takes up its position without coming off the top cushion. No side.

STROKE 14.

Red ball on spot. White ball same position as before. Cue ball 31 in. from No. 4 cushion and 20 in. from No. 5 cushion.

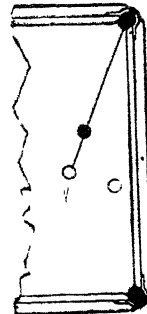
This cannon was played very gently, with the object of leaving position for the red winner next stroke, with the white still near the spot, in position for a cannon after putting the red in.



STROKE 15.

Red ball 11 in. from No. 4 cushion and 29 in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and 29 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 14 in. from No. 4 cushion and 33 in. from No. 5 cushion.

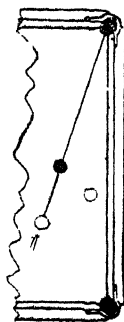
I did not get quite the position I desired here, so the red and my ball being nearly in line with the pocket, I played to twist back for position for either another winner or a cannon.



## STROKE 16.

Red ball on spot White ball same position as before. Cue ball 17 in. from No. 4 cushion and 21 in. from No. 5 cushion.

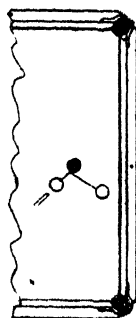
This was another screw-back winner, so played to leave position for the cannon next stroke.



## STROKE 17.

Red ball on spot. White ball same position. Cue ball 17 in. from No. 4 cushion and 32 in. from No. 5 cushion.

This cannon is played slowly, without side, in order to leave a red winner at the next stroke with the white still near the spot.



## STROKE 18.

Red ball 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 2 in. from No. 4 cushion and 24 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 6 in. from No. 4 cushion in the centre line of the table.

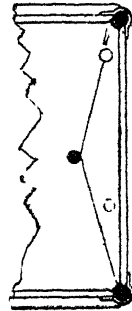
Play to drop the red in, and leave the cue ball in position for a loser off the spot into No. 4 pocket.



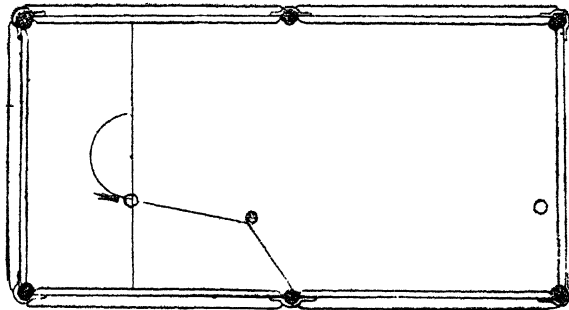
## STROKE 19.

Red ball on spot. White ball same position. Cue ball 10 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 4 cushion

Played this stroke with the idea of sending the red over the middle pocket so that I could at the next stroke put the red in and send my own ball near the spot, thus getting the balls to the top of the table again. I, however, played a little too full on the red, and left a loser instead of a winner.



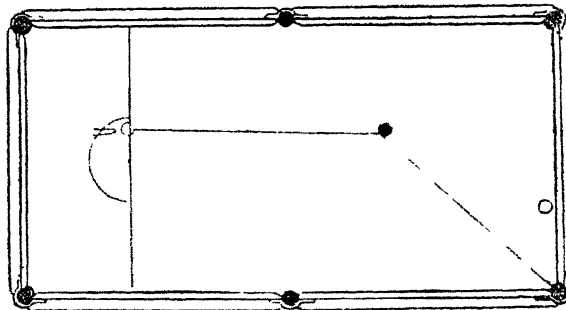
## STROKE 20.



Red ball 20 in. from No 6 cushion and 60 in. from No. 1 cushion. White ball same position. Cue ball in hand

This was the ordinary loser, and was played to bring the red down into the middle of the table, care being taken that the red should not kiss the white.

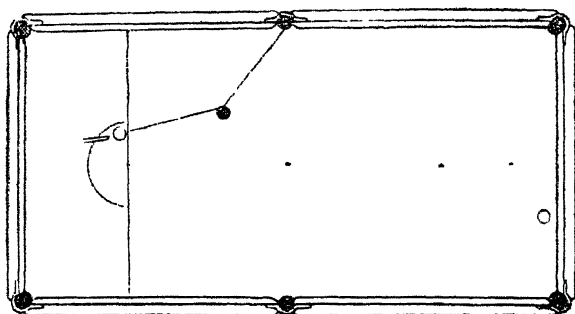
## STROKE 21.



Red ball 28 in from No 3 cushion and 47 in from No. 4 cushion. White ball same position. Cue ball in hand.

I played a little full on the red here to avoid making the red winner, the idea being to bring the red over the middle pocket.

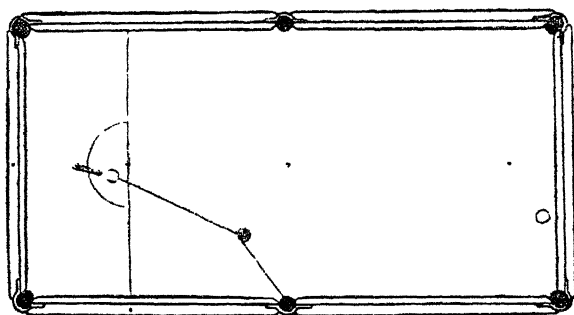
STROKE 22.



Red ball 55 in. from No. 1 cushion and 23 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball same position. Cue ball in hand.

This was the ordinary loser, played to bring the red down for a winner or a loser into the opposite pocket.

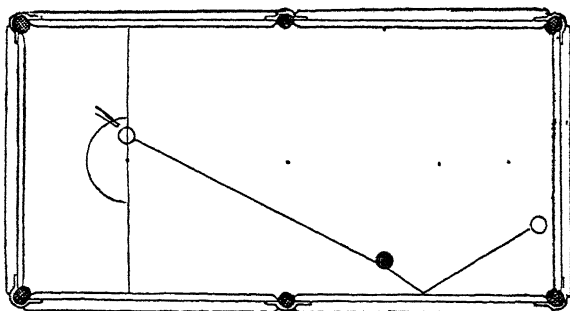
STROKE 23



Red ball 17 in. from No. 6 cushion and 60 in. from No. 1 cushion. White ball same position. Cue ball in hand.

I played this loser a little full on the red, slowly, to leave a cannon from baulk the next stroke. If the red be struck half-ball it will be driven on to the white or on to the wrong side of the white.

## STROKE 24.



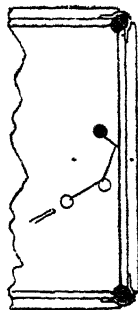
Red ball 47 in. from No. 4 cushion and 14 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white same position Cue ball on baulk line, half-way between left-hand and centre spots of baulk.

I played for a cannon off the cushion, a little fine and very slowly, with strong left side on, with the idea of getting the two object balls together and mine quite near.

## STROKE 25.

Red ball 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and 44 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 30 in. from No. 5 cushion Cue ball 14 in. from No. 4 cushion and 25 in. from No. 5 cushion.

Played the cannon very slowly, fine on the white, in order to leave the red winner with the white still near the spot. If this cannon were played direct the white would be brought down the table away from the spot.



## STROKE 26.

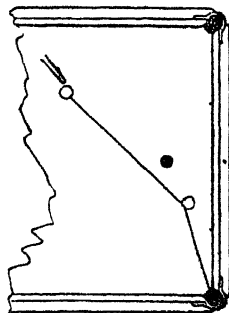
Red ball 15 in. from No. 3 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 7 in. from No. 4 cushion and 26 in. from No. 5 cushion Cue ball 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 12 in. from No. 4 cushion.

I played this stroke with my left hand, the idea being to bring my ball about two feet from No. 4 cushion, so that I could cannon at the next stroke and get the balls together, but I played the stroke a little too strong and left myself the loser off the white instead.



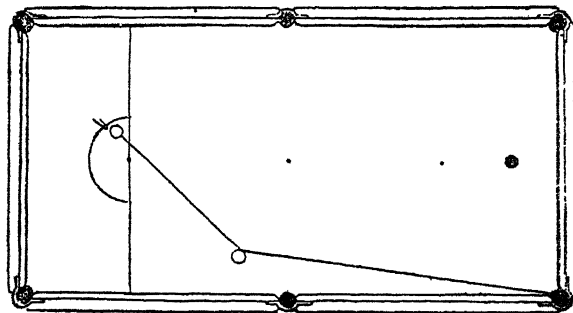
## STROKE 27.

Red ball on spot. Spot white same position.  
Cue ball 18 in. from No. 3 cushion and 39 in. from  
No. 4 cushion.



Played for the loser off the white with left-hand side, to leave the white for the cannon from baulk next stroke, but I got a little too full on the white and left a difficult long jenny.

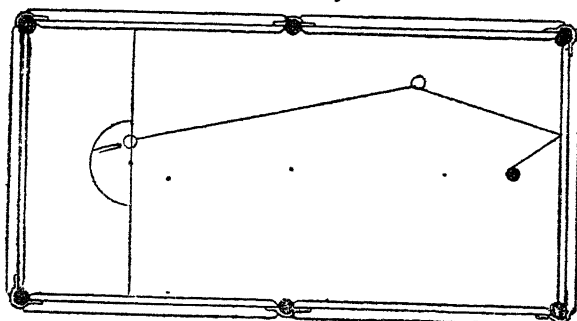
## STROKE 28.



Red ball on spot Spot white 10 in. from No. 6 cushion  
and 55 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball in hand. Played  
from about 6 in. from the left-hand spot of the "D."

This was an ordinary long jenny (plenty of right-hand side); my idea was to play so that I should have the direct cannon from baulk at the next stroke, but I hit the white slightly too hard and brought it too far up.

## STROKE 29.



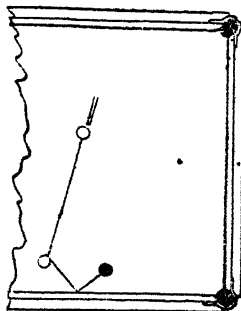
Red ball on spot. Spot white 11 in. from No. 3 cushion and 40 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in hand. Played from about 6 in. from the left-hand spot of baulk.

Played a slow drop cannon with no side, with the idea of leaving all three balls near the spot, but I played with too much strength.

## STROKE 30.

Red ball 31 in. from No. 4 cushion and 7 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 48 in. from No. 4 cushion and 9 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 29 in. from No. 3 cushion and 39 in. from No. 4 cushion.

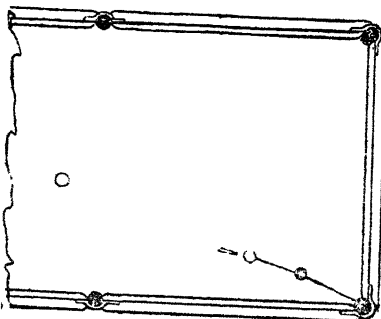
Played gently, with strong left-hand side, with the object of leaving a red winner into No. 4 pocket and the white in the middle of the table.



## STROKE 31

Red ball 18 in. from No. 4 cushion and 8 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 31 in. from No. 6 cushion and 60 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball 32 in. from No. 4 cushion and 11 in. from No. 5 cushion.

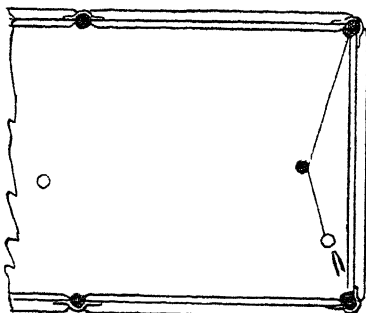
Played this stroke with my left hand, the object being to leave my ball for the loser into No. 3 pocket off the spot. The best way to play this stroke is to put top on, as the balls are not quite straight there is no danger of following into the pocket.



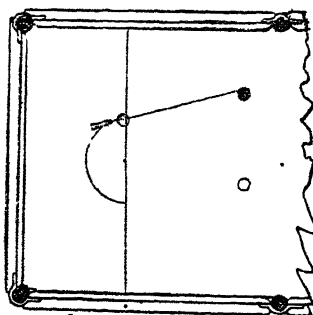


## STROKE 32.

Red ball on spot. Spot white as before. Cue ball 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and 16 in. from No. 5 cushion.



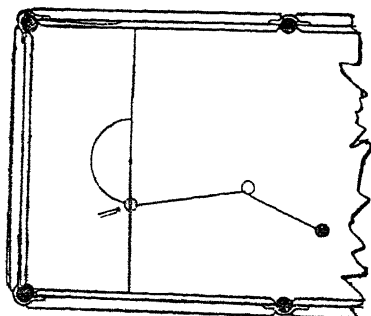
This was an ordinary half-ball loser off the red into No. 3 pocket. Played with strength to bring the red over the middle pocket for the loser.



## STROKE 33.

Red ball 17 in. from No. 2 cushion and 60 in. from No. 1 cushion. Spot white same position. Cue ball in hand. About an inch from the left spot of "D."

This is an ordinary half-ball loser, played so as to bring the red on the other side of the table to leave cannon from the white, so that in about three strokes I could get the two object balls near the spot.



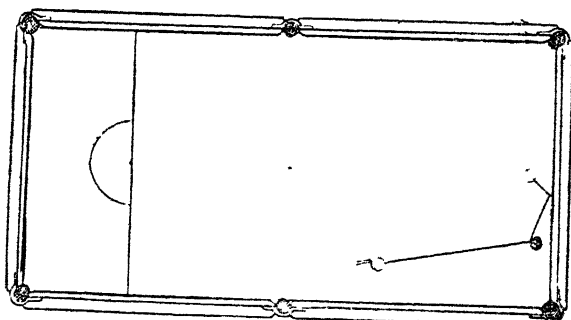
## STROKE 34.

Red ball 63 in. from No. 4 cushion and 18 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white same position. Cue ball played from the right-hand spot of the "D."

Played to cannon (no side) and send the white near the

spot and the red over No. 4 pocket. I, however, struck the red badly, and instead of leaving the red winner I had to make the cannon as shown in the next stroke.

## STROKE 35.

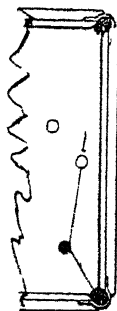


Red ball 4 in. from No. 4 cushion and 18 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 6 in. from No. 4 cushion and 36 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 47 in. from No. 4 cushion and 10 in. from No. 5 cushion.

Played with the left hand slowly, with the object of leaving the red winner and the white still near the spot. Played a little too strong and got too full on the red, with the consequence that a loser instead of a winner was left.

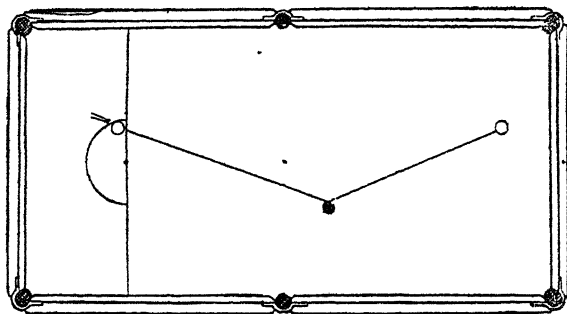
## STROKE 36

Red ball 9 in. from No. 4 cushion and 12 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 13 in. from No. 4 cushion and 27 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 6 in. from No. 4 cushion in the centre line of the table.



Played this loser a little finer than half-ball, with strength sufficient to bring the red into the middle of the table, leaving a cannon from baulk.

## STROKE 37.



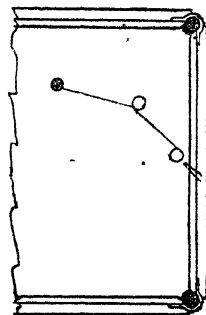
Red ball 59 in. from No. 4 cushion and 24 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white same position. Cue ball in hand. Played from about 2 inches from the centre spot of the "D"

No side. I played to cannon on the right side of the white and to bring the red across the table, with the object of bringing the balls together in the neighbourhood of No. 3 pocket, but I got too full on the red, also on the white.

## STROKE 38

Red ball 15 in. from No 3 cushion and 35 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 20 in. from No 3 cushion and 14 in. from No 4 cushion. Cue ball 2 in. from No. 4 cushion and 34 in. from No 3 cushion.

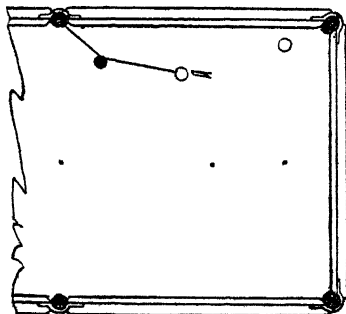
Played the fine cannon with the object of leaving the red over the middle pocket. Played slowly.



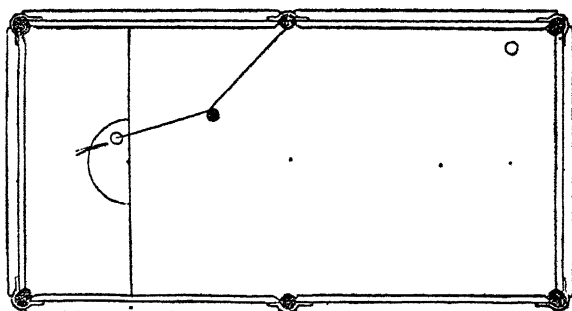
## STROKE 39.

Red ball  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 61 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 5 in. from No. 3 cushion and 12 in. from No 4 cushion. Cue ball 11 in. from No. 3 cushion and 40 in. from No. 4 cushion.

I played this loser very slowly, with right-hand side, to leave a loser from baulk.



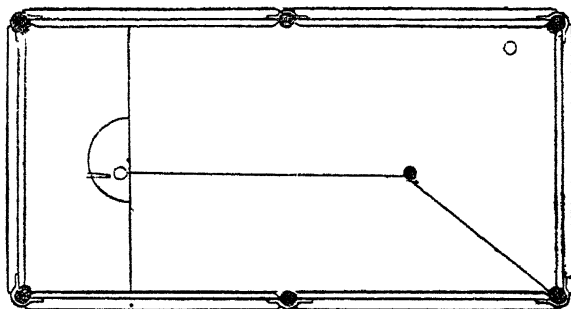
## STROKE 40.



Red ball 23 in. from No. 2 cushion and 51 in. from No. 1 cushion. Spot white same position. Cue ball in hand.

This loser should be played very slowly, so that the red may be left in position for either a loser or a cannon at the next stroke.

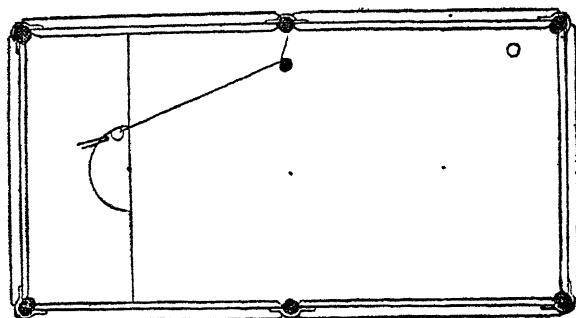
## STROKE 41.



Red ball 40 in. from No. 4 cushion and 32 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white same position. Cue ball in hand.

This is an ordinary loser, but it should be played rather full on the red in order to avoid the kiss on to the white, and to bring the red into position for the loser into the middle pocket. It would be bad position to bring the red up above the middle.

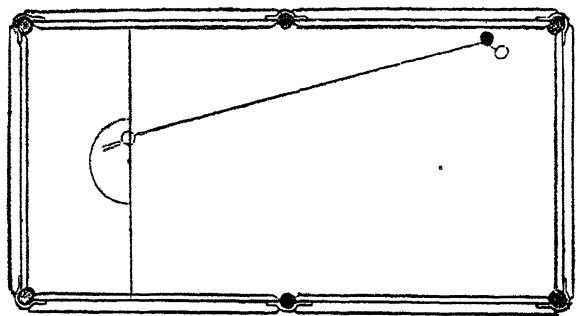
## STROKE 42.



Red ball 8 in. from the centre of No. 2 pocket. Spot white same position. Cue ball in hand.

Play this loser very gently with the object of leaving the red in the neighbourhood of the white. The aim should be to play on the red so that it will come between the cushion and the white in order that good position will still remain if the balls kiss.

## STROKE 43



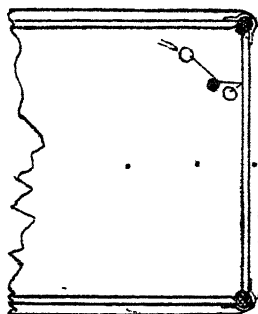
Red ball 2 in. from No. 3 cushion and 15 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white same as before. Cue ball in hand. Played from about 6 in. from the left spot of baulk.

Strike the cue ball low. The only thing to aim at here is to play so as to have the balls together. In the actual break the balls kissed, leaving the position shown in the next diagram.

## STROKE 44.

Red ball 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and 14½ in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white 4 in. from No. 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 6 in. from No. 3 cushion and 15 in. from No. 4 cushion.

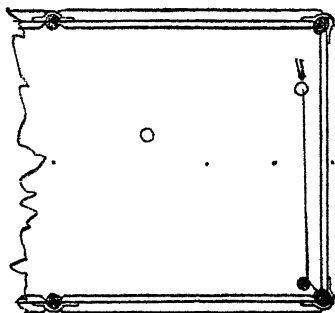
This cannon was played very fine on the red, the object being to cut the red over the pocket and bring the white into the middle of the table.



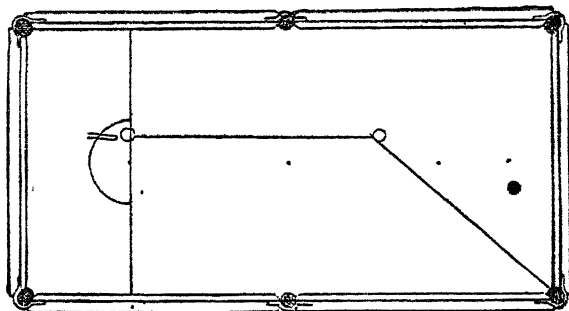
## STROKE 45.

Red ball 4 in. from No. 4 cushion and 3 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 28 in. from No. 3 cushion and 47 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 17 in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion.

I played here to bring the red out from the cushion into position for the cannon from baulk. I used a little too much strength, however, and brought the red into a bad position.



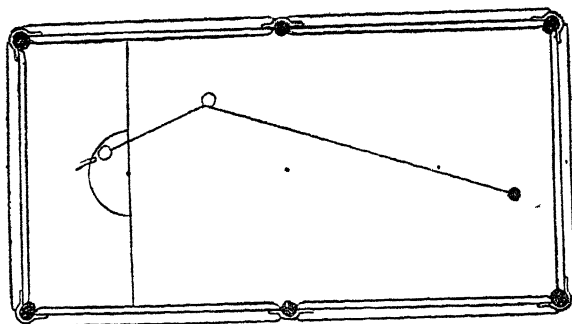
## STROKE 46



Red ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 29 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball same position as before. Cue ball in hand. Played from about 3 inches from the left-hand corner of baulk.

Here is seen the advantage of playing to leave the white in the middle of the table at stroke 44, for being in this position it minimises the effect of the bad play last stroke.

STROKE 47.

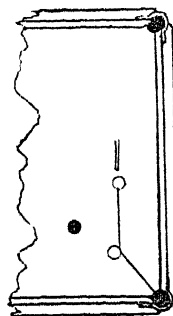


Red ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 29 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 17 in. from No. 2 cushion and 50 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball in hand.

No exact after-position can be made sure of in playing this stroke. The attention of the player should be directed to preventing the white from going into No. 4 pocket, which frequently happens with the best players.

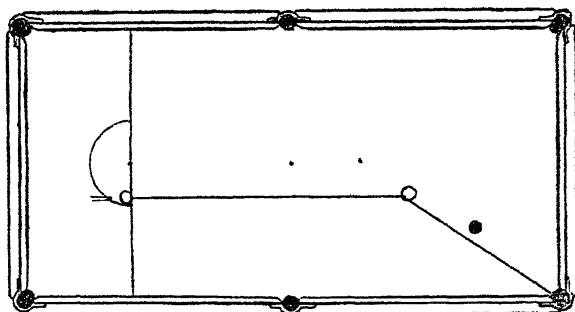
STROKE 48.

Red ball 22 in. from No. 4 cushion and 19 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 12 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 11 in. from No. 4 cushion and 31 in. from No. 5 cushion.



This is an ordinary loser. My idea was to bring the white into such a position that I could make either the loser or a cannon from baulk with the next stroke, whichever might appear to be the best game.

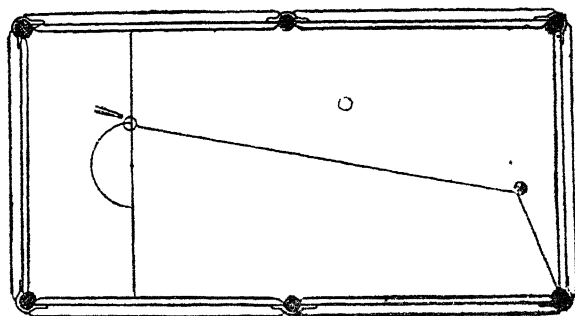
## STROKE 49.



Red ball same position as before Spot white 41 in from No. 4 cushion and 28 in from No. 5 cushion Cue ball in hand

I played this ordinary loser with the object of bringing the white over the middle pocket, but I played it too slowly, and in consequence had only the losing hazard off the red to go at the next stroke

## STROKE 50

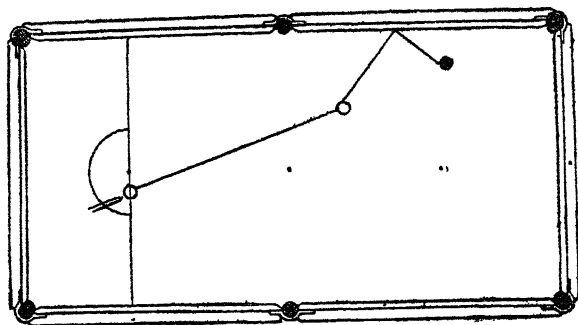


Red ball same position as before. Spot white 20 in from No. 3 cushion and 56 in. from No. 4 cushion Cue ball in hand.

I played this a little fine on the red with left-hand side.



## STROKE 51.



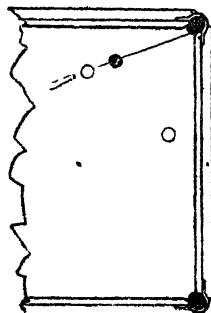
Red ball 9 in. from No. 3 cushion and 27 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball in hand. Played from about 6 in. from the right side of the "D."

I played this very slowly with a lot of right-hand side, the object being to bring the white near the spot, and the red into position for the winner.

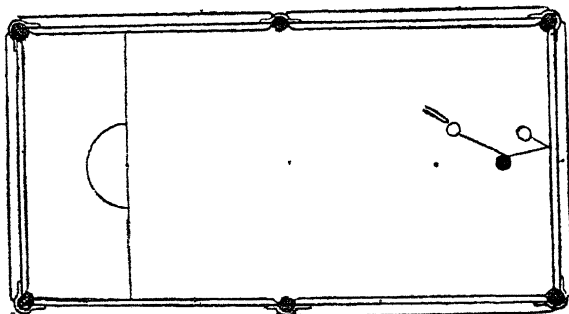
## STROKE 52

Red ball 8 in. from No. 3 cushion and 19 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 6 in. from No. 4 cushion and 28 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 10 in. from No. 3 cushion and 28 in. from No. 4 cushion.

I played the winner, and tried to leave my ball in position for the cannon off the spot next stroke.



## STROKE 53.

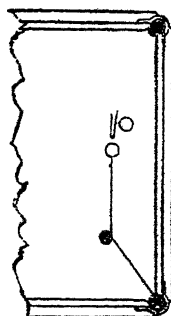


Red ball on the spot. Spot white as before. Cue ball 27 in. from No. 3 cushion and 25 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Played very gently, fine on the red with left-hand side, the object being to leave the red in position for the loser, and the white still near the spot.

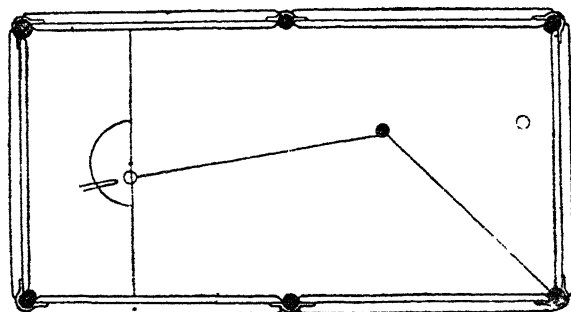
## STROKE 54.

Red ball 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 16 in. from No 5 cushion. Spot white 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and 25 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 31 in from No 3 cushion.



The idea in playing this loser should be to bring the red somewhere into the middle of the table so as to leave a loser into either of the top pockets.

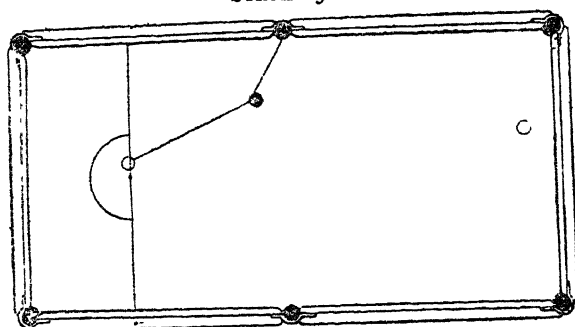
## STROKE 55.



Red ball 28 in. from No 3 cushion and 45 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball in hand.

The object here was to bring the red into position for the loser into No. 2 pocket, which was simply a question of strength. If played slowly a cannon would be left on, and if played hard the winner, instead of the loser, into the middle pocket would be left.

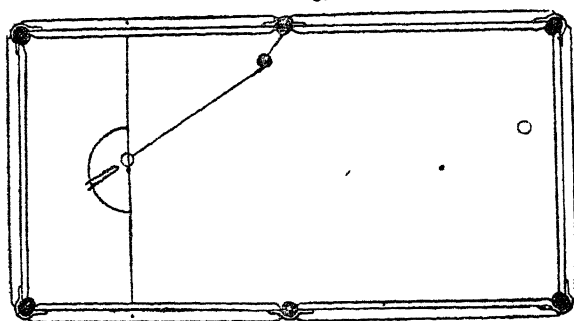
## STROKE 56.



Red ball 62 in. from No. 1 cushion and 16 in. from No. 2 cushion. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball in hand.

I played this rather full on the red, with the object of bringing it into position for the cannon, but I played too strong, and brought it too far down. It was somewhat fortunate that I did not lose the break here, as a little more misjudgment of strength would have brought the red close to No. 2 cushion, and have left a very bad position indeed.

## STROKE 57.



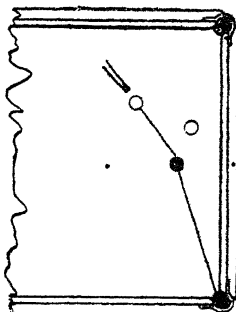
Red ball over pocket No. 2, 6 in. from cushion No. 2 and 5 in. from the centre of the pocket opening. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball in hand.

Play this winner somewhat slowly, so as to leave the cue ball near the spot, in position for the cannon or winner next time. Great care must be taken not to leave the cue ball close to the top cushion in a line with the two balls when the red is spotted. It is quite easy to make this mistake, and, as a matter of fact, it is often done by trying to get the player's ball very close to the other two.

## STROKE 58.

Red ball on spot. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball 18 in. from No. 3 cushion and 23 in. from No. 4 cushion.

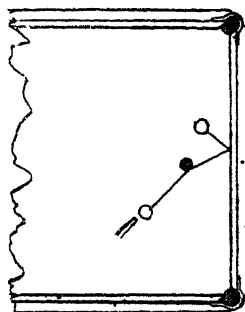
I played this winner so that I should leave my ball at least two feet from the top cushion and in position for the cushion cannon off the spot next stroke. If the stroke be played slowly very bad position is likely to result.



## STROKE 59.

Red ball on spot. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball 22 in. from No. 4 cushion and 22 in. from No. 5 cushion

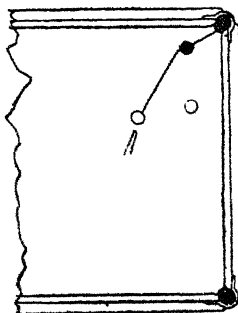
Play this cannon with a little left-hand side off the top cushion. The object aimed at was to get the red over the pocket, and to so get on the white as to prevent the balls getting into line.



## STROKE 60.

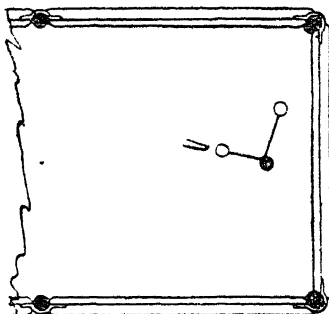
Red ball 4 in. from No. 3 cushion and 9 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and 21 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 22 in. from No. 4 cushion

I cut the red in and brought the cue ball back off the cushion to leave a cannon or losing hazard from the right-hand side of the table for the next stroke.



## STROKE 61.

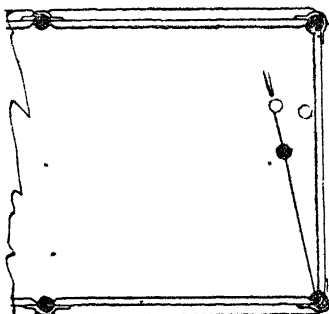
Red ball on spot. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball 20 in. from No. 4 cushion and 32 in. from No. 5 cushion



Play this cannon with easy strength—no side. Play a little full on the red so as to bring it out from the cushion far enough for the winner into No. 4 pocket, leaving the white still near the spot.

## STROKE 62.

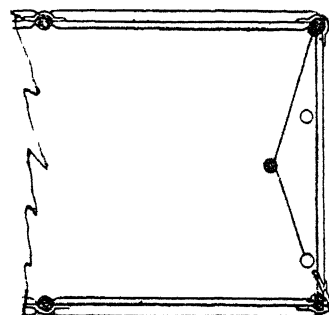
Red ball 32 in. from No. 3 cushion and 8 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 22 in. from No. 3 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 20 in. from No. 3 cushion and 10 in. from No. 4 cushion.



In playing this winner put follow on the ball, so as to leave the loser into No. 3 pocket next stroke.

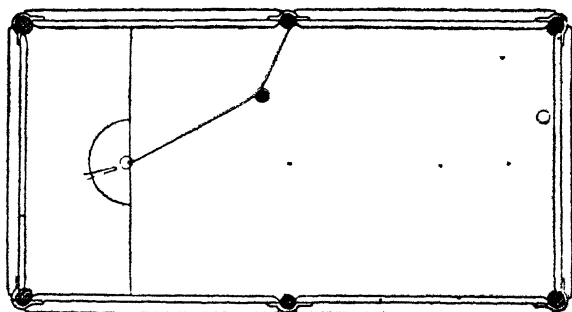
## STROKE 63.

Red ball on spot. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball 2 in. from No. 4 cushion and 11 in. from No. 5 cushion.



I played this loser with a little right-hand side.

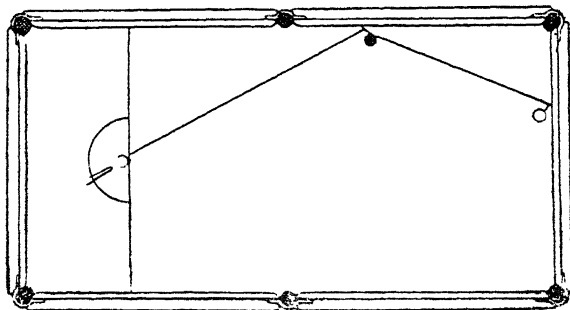
STROKE 64.



Red ball 62 in. from No. 1 cushion and 16 in. from No. 2 cushion. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball in hand.

I played this loser rather full on the red with the idea of avoiding the kiss on to the white.

STROKE 65.

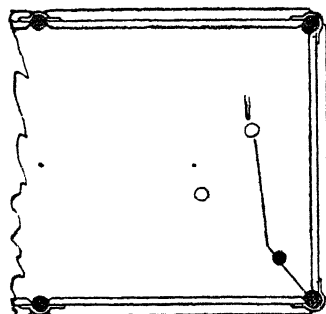


Red ball 4 in. from No. 3 cushion and 48 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball in hand.

I played this with a little right-hand side. The idea was to bring the red over No. 4 pocket, avoiding the kissing of the two object balls.

## STROKE 66.

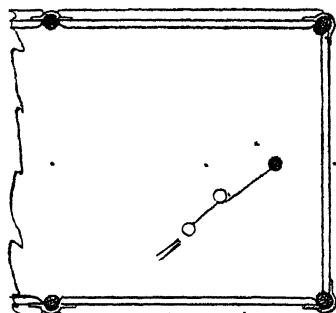
Red ball 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and 11 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 28 in. from No. 4 cushion and 28 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 26 in. from No. 3 cushion and 14 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Red winner, bringing the cue ball into position for the cannon from the right-hand side of the table, or adding a loser off the red if played too slowly to leave the cannon.

## STROKE 67.

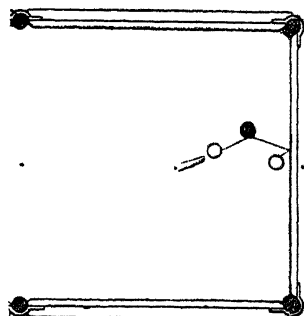
Red ball on spot. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball 36 in. from No. 4 cushion and 18 in. from No. 5 cushion.



I played this cannon with follow in order to get the balls together near the spot

## STROKE 68.

Red ball 28 in. from No. 3 cushion and 12 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 35 in. from No. 3 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 29 in. from No. 3 cushion and 17 in. from No. 4 cushion

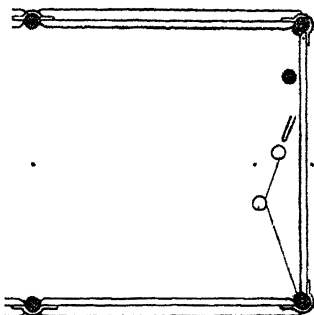


I played here to cut the red over the pocket, but struck it a little too full.

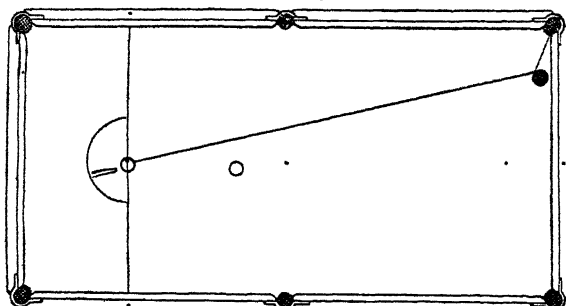
## STROKE 69.

Red ball  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 9 in. from No. 4 cushion and 24 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 35 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

I played this without side, a little fine on the white, with sufficient strength to bring it down, and left either a red loser or a cannon from baulk.



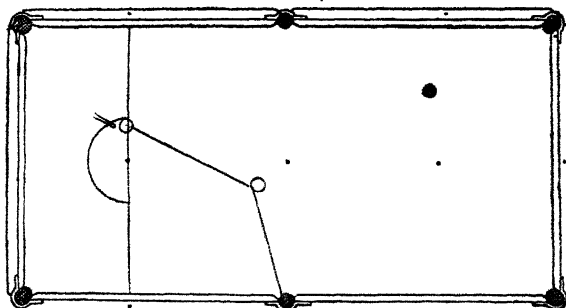
## STROKE 70.



Red ball same as before. Spot white 30 in. from No. 6 cushion and 58 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball centre of "D"

I played the forcing loser rather full on the red to avoid kissing the white and possibly thereby putting both object balls in baulk.

## STROKE 71.

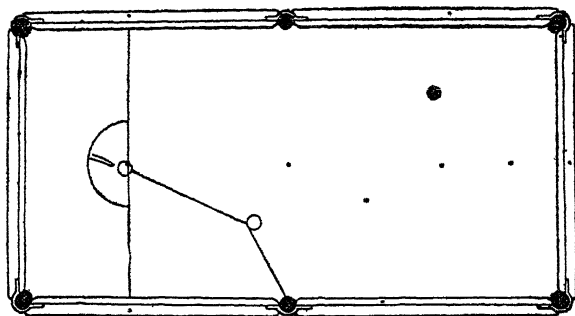


Red ball 16 in. from No. 3 cushion and 32 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white as before. Cue ball about an inch from the left-hand spot of baulk.



I played this with right-hand side, rather full on the white, with strength to bring it a little past the middle to leave both losing hazard and cannon for the next stroke, whichever appears to be the best game.

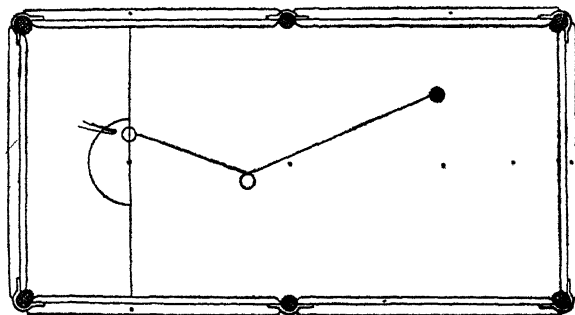
STROKE 72.



Red ball same as before. Spot white 19 in. from No. 6 cushion and 61 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. to the right of centre spot of baulk.

Ordinary half-ball stroke.

STROKE 73

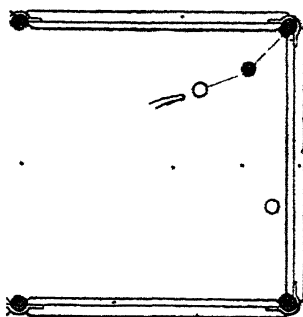


Red ball same position. Spot white 34 in. from No. 6 cushion and 60 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball about 6 in. from the left of "D"

Play slowly with no side, the object being to send the red over the pocket and the white off No. 5 cushion to near the spot.

## STROKE 74.

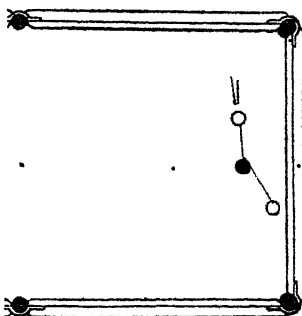
Red ball 9 in. from No. 3 cushion and 10 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and 25 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 14 in. from No. 3 cushion and 23 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Play this winner gently with a little left-hand side to bring the cue ball straight off the cushion.

## STROKE 75.

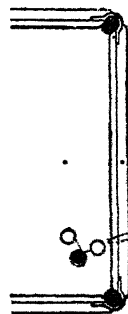
Red ball on spot. Spot white same position. Cue ball 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 17 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Play with follow

## STROKE 76.

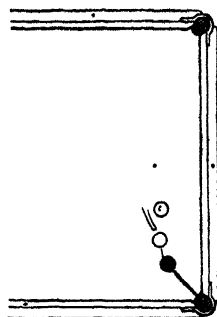
Red ball  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $10\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and 12 in. from No. 5 cushion.



Play this slowly with no side, a little fine on the red, in order to leave the red winner and send the white nearer the spot.

## STROKE 77.

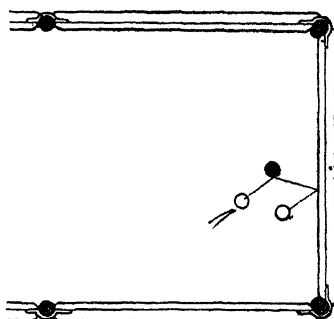
Red ball  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 10 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 24 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 14 in. from No. 5 cushion



I put the red in here with the idea of leaving my ball just above the white to leave cannon from white to red, but I played a little too strong, and left the cannon off the cushion instead.

## STROKE 78.

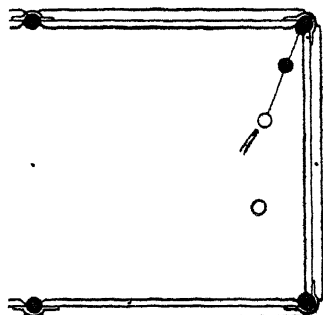
Red ball on spot. Spot white same as before. Cue ball 21 in. from No. 4 cushion and 26 in. from No. 5 cushion.



Play with right-hand side gently, so as to leave the red winner and the white still near the spot. The game here is to avoid putting the red in.

## STROKE 79.

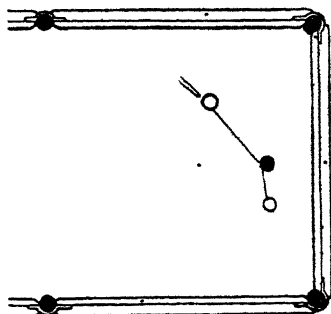
Red ball 4 in. from No. 4 cushion and 9 in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white 13 in. from No. 4 cushion and 24 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 25 in. from No. 3 cushion.



Play this winner with a little left-hand side to bring the cue ball off the cushion into position for the cannon off the red on spot next stroke.

## STROKE 80.

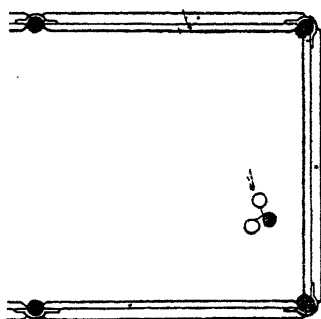
Red ball on spot. Spot white as before. Cue ball 18 in. from No 3 cushion and 27 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Play gently with no side, rather full on the red.

## STROKE 81.

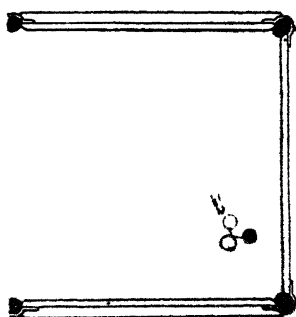
Red ball 9 in. from No 4 cushion and 24 in. from No 5 cushion. Spot white 12 in. from No 4 cushion and 20 in. from No 5 cushion. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 27 in. from No 5 cushion.



Play with slight screw, a little fine on the red.

## STROKE 82.

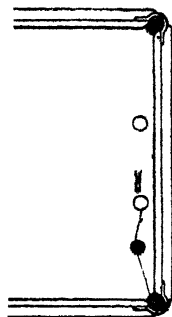
Red ball 9 in. from No. 4 cushion and 16 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 14 in. from No. 4 cushion and 21 in. from No. 5 cushion.



I played to leave the winner and bring the white down near the spot, but I hit the white too full.

## STROKE 83.

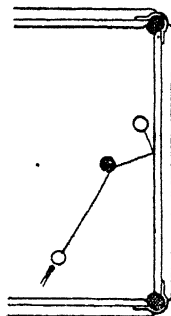
Red ball 3 in. from No 4 cushion and 13 in. from No 5 cushion. Spot white 23 in from No. 3 cushion and 4 in from No 4 cushion. Cue ball 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and 26 in. from No 5 cushion.



Play this with a little right-hand side, to bring the cue ball off No. 5 cushion into position for the cannon.

## STROKE 84.

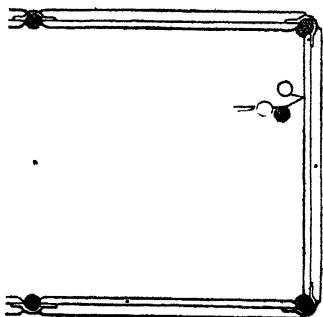
Red ball on spot. Spot white as before. Cue ball 25 in. from No 4 cushion and 12 in. from No. 5 cushion.



Play this with left-hand side rather full on the red, so as to get the balls together. I played the stroke a little too strong

## STROKE 85.

Red ball 6 in. from No. 4 cushion and 25 in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and 19 in from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 21 in from No. 3 cushion and 11 in. from No. 4 cushion.

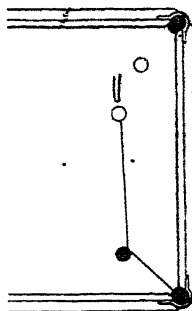


Play this with left-hand side to leave the red over No. 4 pocket.

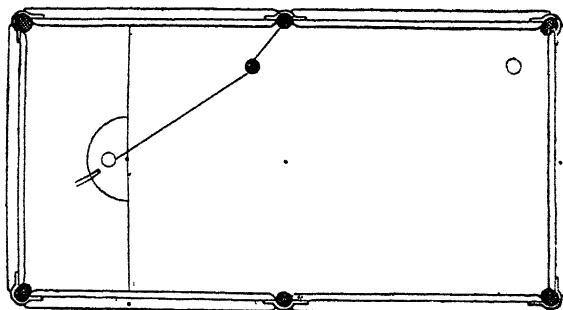
## STROKE 86.

Red ball 15 in. from No. 4 cushion and 10 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 9 in. from No. 3 cushion and 9 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 22 in. from No. 3 cushion and 13 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Played with slight twist and a little fine to double the red over No. 2 pocket, with a view to making a winning hazard at the next stroke, and leaving position for the white loser, and so bringing the white into play in the third shot.



## STROKE 87



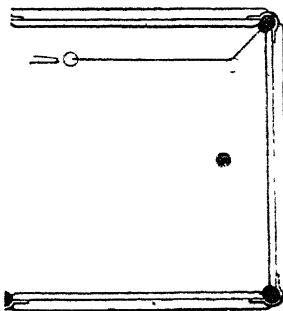
Red ball 9 in. from No. 2 cushion and 61 in. from No. 1 cushion. Spot white as before. Cue ball behind the centre spot in baulk.

Play this winner slowly, so as to leave the cue ball in position for the white loser next stroke.

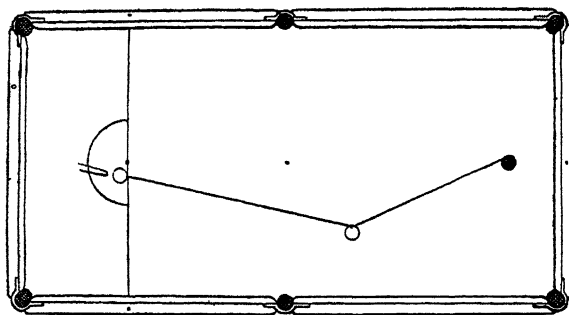
## STROKE 88.

Red ball on spot. Spot white as before. Cue ball 8 in. from No. 3 cushion and 53 in. from No. 4 cushion.

No side, but play a little fine on the object ball, to send it over into position for the cannon next stroke.



## STROKE 89.



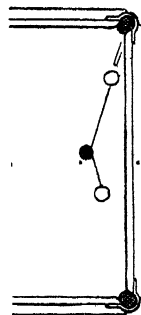
Red ball on spot. Spot white 54 in. from No. 4 cushion and 17 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball in hand.

No side, but play with sufficient strength to bring the white across from No. 5 cushion to somewhere near the spot.

## STROKE 90.

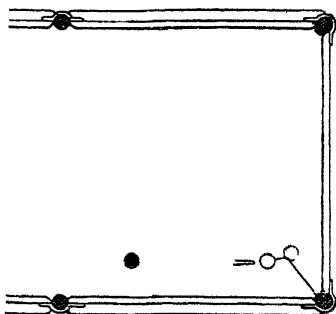
Red ball 12 in. from No. 4 cushion and 33 in. from No. 3 cushion. Spot white 7 in. from No. 4 cushion and 27 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Play gently, no side, the object being to leave a loser off the white into No. 4 pocket and at the same time send the red over or near the middle pocket. I played this stroke badly and did not get the positions desired.



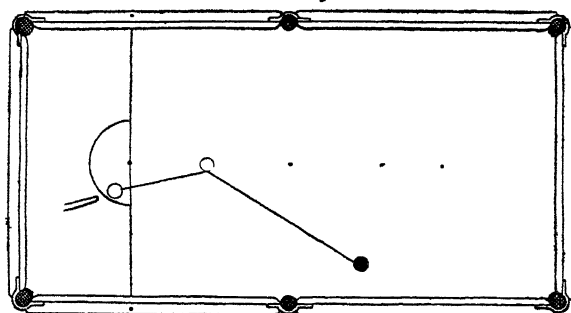
## STROKE 91.

Red ball 53 in. from No. 4 cushion and 9 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and 12 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 14 in. from No. 4 cushion and 9 in. from No. 5 cushion.



I played this stroke behind my back with twist, the principal object being to bring the white into play off Nos. 4 and 3 cushions.

## STROKE 92.



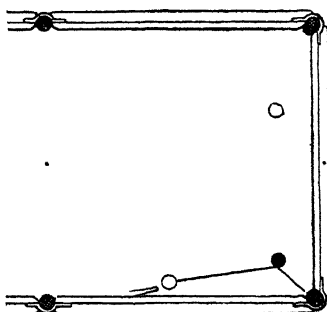
Red ball same position. Spot white in middle line of table 48 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball in hand

Play this without side. The object is to send the red over No. 4 pocket and leave the white near the spot, so that if a winner is left for the next stroke the balls will be together after putting the red in.

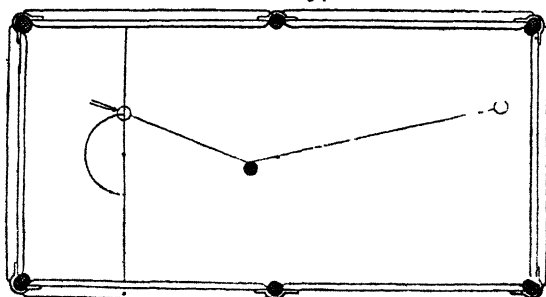
## STROKE 93.

Red ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 9 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 21 in. from No. 3 cushion and 9 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 40 in. from No. 4 cushion and 4 in. from No. 5 cushion.

I played this with the left hand with a little right-hand side. My object was to take the red over the middle pocket, but I got a little too much angle on it.



## STROKE 94.



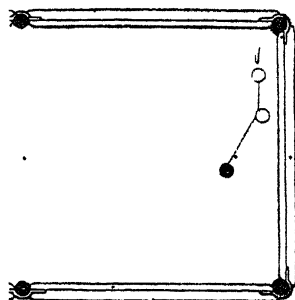
Red ball 32 in. from No. 6 cushion and 63 in. from No. 1 cushion. Spot white same position. Cue ball extreme left of baulk.

Play without side, but with sufficient strength to bring the red across the table to the white.



## STROKE 95.

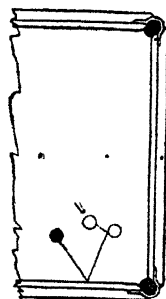
Red ball 14 in. from No. 4 cushion and 32 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 24 in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion.



This was an ordinary cannon, no side, and I should have brought my ball outside the other two, leaving a loser off the white; but I played very carelessly, and left a bad position.

## STROKE 96.

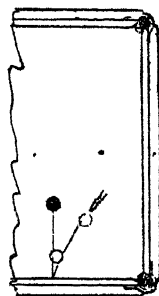
Red ball 23 in. from No. 4 cushion and 13 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 14 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 15 in. from No. 4 cushion and 29 in. from No. 5 cushion.



Played with a little left-hand side and gently. The object was to bring the balls together; but here again I played a bad stroke.

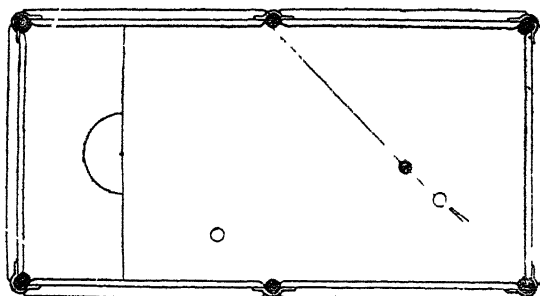
## STROKE 97.

Red ball 23 in. from No. 4 cushion and 21 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 23 in. from No. 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 15 in. from No. 4 cushion and 16 in. from No. 5 cushion.



Played without side. Cannon off cushion, leaving the red in the middle of the table and sending white up to middle pocket.

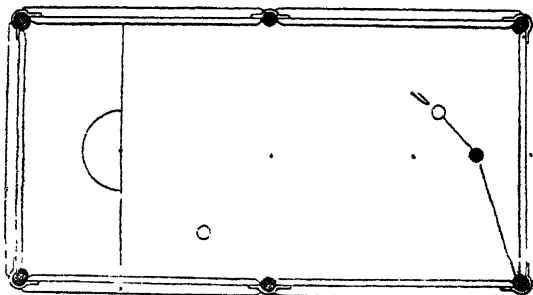
STROKE 98.



Red ball 32 in. from No. 4 cushion and 33 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 13 in. from No. 6 cushion and 55 in. from No. 1 cushion. Cue ball 25 in. from No. 4 cushion and 23 in. from No. 5 cushion.

Strike the cue ball low—a sort of stab shot—the object being to leave either the loser off the red when spotted or the winner into No. 4 pocket.

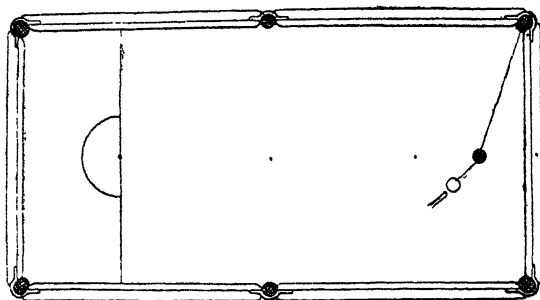
STROKE 99.



Red ball on spot. Spot white in same position. Cue ball 23 in. from No. 3 cushion and 22 in. from No. 4 cushion.

I played this winner with the least bit of right-hand side with sufficient strength to bring the cue ball out from No. 4 cushion far enough to leave a losing hazard into No. 3 pocket.

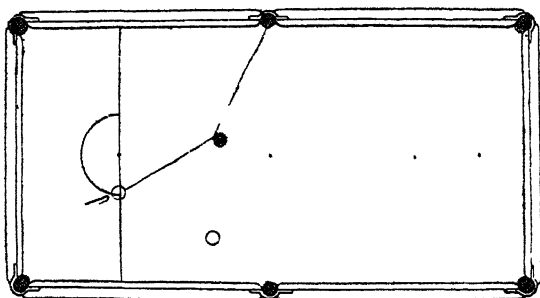
STROKE 100.



Red ball on spot. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball 40 in. from No 3 cushion and 19 in. from No 4 cushion.

I played this loser with a little left-hand side, bringing the red down the centre of the table to a little below the middle pocket, to leave either a loser or a cannon.

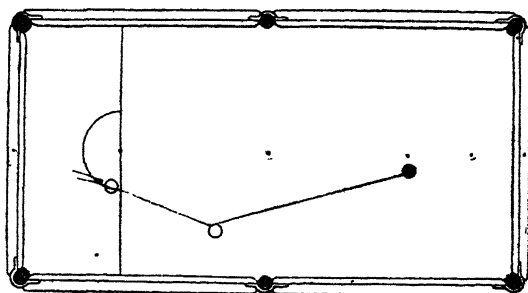
STROKE 101.



Red ball 58 in. from No. 1 cushion and 32 in. from No. 2 cushion. Spot white same position as before. Cue ball right-hand spot of baulk.

Play very gently with a lot of left-hand side to leave the red in position for a cannon from the white direct at the next stroke, and so bring the white into play again.

## STROKE 102

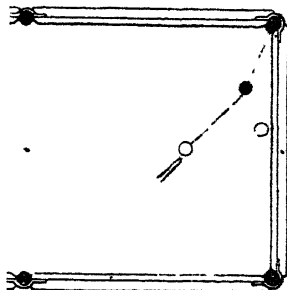


Red ball 30 in from No. 4 cushion and 31 in. from No. 5 cushion Spot white same position as before Cue ball in hand.

Play a little full on the white, so that it may come off from No. 6 cushion to a position near the billiard spot, the red being taken over No. 3 pocket.

## STROKE 103.

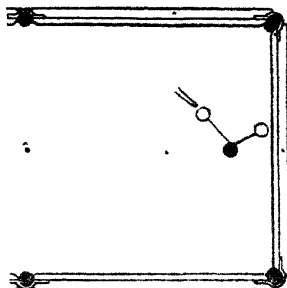
Red ball 17 in from No. 3 cushion and 8 in. from No. 4 cushion Spot white 29 in from No. 3 cushion and 2 in from No. 4 cushion Cue ball 35 in. from No. 3 cushion and 25 in. from No. 4 cushion.



Put in the red with a little right-hand side to bring the cue ball about two feet up the table, leaving a cannon for the next stroke.

## STROKE 104.

Red ball on spot. Spot white same position Cue ball 25 in from No. 3 cushion and 20 in from No. 4 cushion

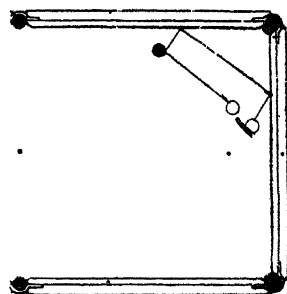


The idea here was to double the red over No. 3 pocket, but the ball caught the outside corner of the pocket and got the position shown.

## STROKE 105.

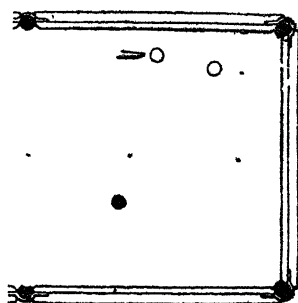
Red ball 4 in. from No. 3 cushion and 29 in. from No. 4 cushion. Spot white 27 in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 7 in. from No. 4 cushion and 21 in. from No. 3 cushion.

Played with right-hand side.



## STROKE 106

Red ball 45 in. from No. 4 cushion and 23 in. from No. 5 cushion. Spot white 9 in. from No. 3 cushion and 19 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 6 in. from No. 3 cushion and 34 in. from No. 4 cushion.



The breakdown. Played to go in off the white, very fine, so as to leave the cannon, but missed the stroke.

## TYPICAL BREAKS

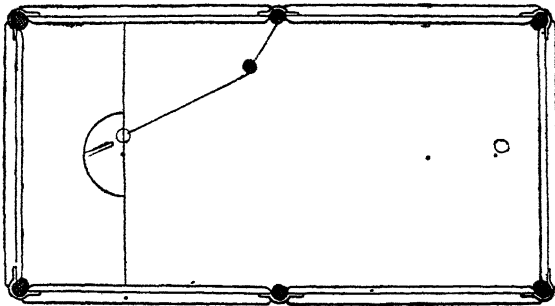


## A BREAK BY W. MITCHELL.

WITH HIS OWN INSTRUCTIONS AS TO HOW THE  
STROKES SHOULD BE PLAYED.

MR. MITCHELL is too well known, and his ability as a player too well recognised, to render it necessary to say anything about him here. He has replayed this break with a view to its reproduction, and the playing instructions are Mr. Mitchell's own.

STROKE 1.



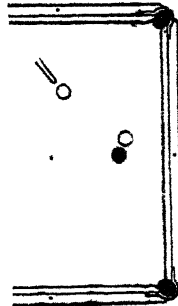
Red ball 11 in. from No. 2 cushion and 7 in. below the centre of No. 2 pocket. White ball about 2 in. to the left rear of the billiard spot. Cue ball about 6 in. from the left of the "D"

Winner. No side. Strength sufficient to bring ball to position shown in next diagram.

STROKE 2.

Red ball on spot. White ball as before Cue ball 18½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 26 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Cannon off red. No side. Play gently to take red over pocket.

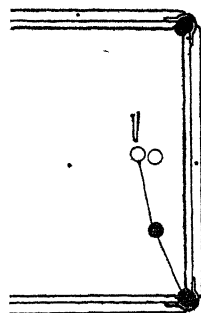




## STROKE 3.

Red ball 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and 18 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 34 in. from No. 3 cushion and 8 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball about 2 in. to the left of the spot.

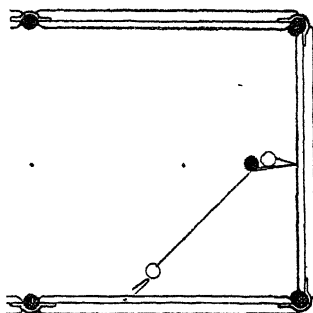
Hit the cue ball low.



## STROKE 4.

Red ball on spot. White ball as before. Cue ball 39 in. from No. 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 5 cushion.

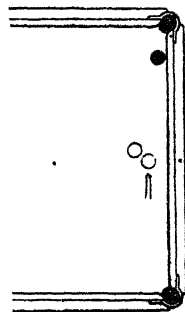
Play with right side, and try to leave the red ball over the pocket.



## STROKE 5.

Red ball 8 in. from No. 3 cushion and touching No. 4 cushion. White ball 33 in. from No. 3 cushion and 9 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 36 in. from No. 3 cushion and 7½ in. from No. 4 cushion.

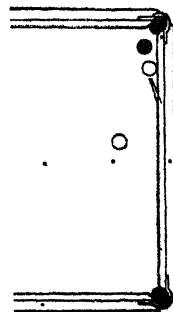
Cannon off white. Hit the object, white, very fine without side.



## STROKE 6.

Red ball 4 in. from No. 3 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 7 in. from No. 3 cushion and close to the top. White ball 32 in. from No. 3 cushion and 10½ in. from No. 4 cushion.

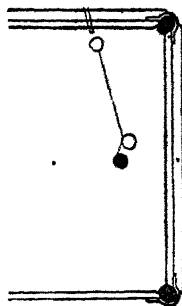
Stab the red in with just a little left side. Play sharp.



## STROKE 7.

Red ball on spot. White ball same position. Cue ball  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 3 cushion and 18 in from No. 4 cushion.

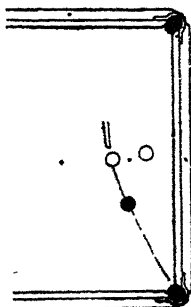
Cannon off white No side Play fine on white, and gently.



## STROKE 8.

Red ball 12 in. from No 4 cushion and 23 in. from No. 5 cushion White ball  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in from No 4 cushion and 34 in from No 3 cushion Cue ball 36 in from No 3 cushion and 15 in. from No 4 cushion.

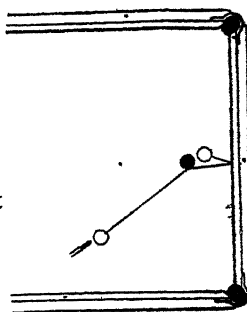
Red winner. Put bottom on the cue ball and play a little sharply.



## STROKE 9.

Red ball on spot White ball same as before. Cue ball 37 in from No 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 5 cushion.

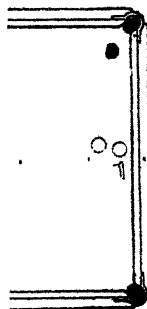
Play half-ball on the red, with just a shade of left-hand side.



## STROKE 10.

Red ball  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 3 cushion and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in from No 4 cushion. White ball  $32\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 4 cushion Cue ball 35 in. from No. 3 cushion and 7 in. from No 4 cushion.

Red winner. Put a little right-hand side on and play sharply.



## STROKE 11.

Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball  $21\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 3 cushion and 14 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Stab stroke.

## STROKE 12.

Red ball on spot. White ball as before Cue ball 24 in. from No. 4 cushion and 18 in. from No. 5 cushion.

Cannon off cushion, right-hand side. Do not play hard.

## STROKE 13.

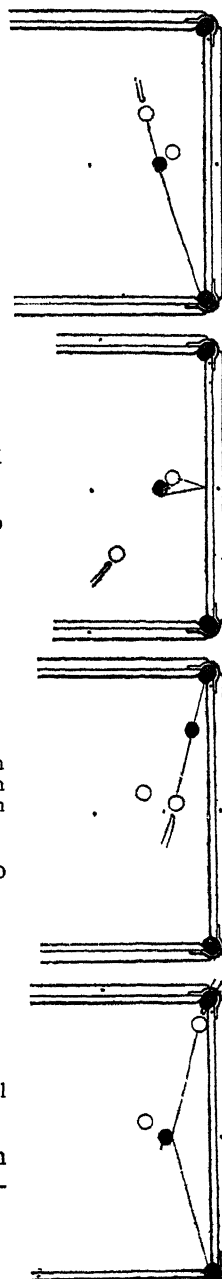
Red ball  $13\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 31 in. from No. 3 cushion and 16 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 34 in. from No 3 cushion and 9 in. from No 4 cushion.

Red winner No side. The object is to leave the cue ball for the cross loser.

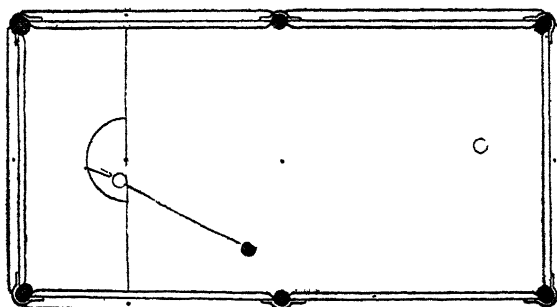
## STROKE 14.

Red ball on spot. White ball as before. Cue ball 5 in. from No. 3 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Ordinary half-ball loser. Play with sufficient strength to bring red into position for the winner into No. 5 pocket.



## STROKE 15.



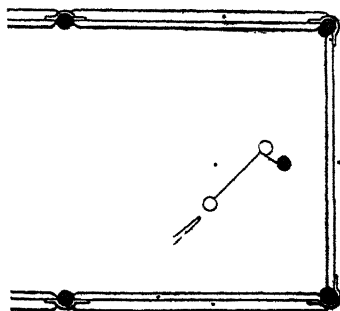
Red ball 11 in. from No. 6 cushion and  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. below the centre of No. 5 pocket. White ball same as before. Cue ball 4 in. from right of "D," just behind baulk line.

Red winner. Strike the red rather full so as to carry the cue ball into position for the cannon.

## STROKE 16.

Red ball on spot. White ball as before. Cue ball 32 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $23\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion

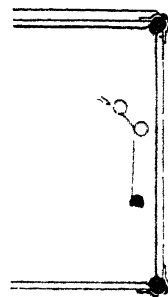
Cannon off white. Play with right-hand side rather sharp.



## STROKE 17.

Red ball  $21\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 5 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 27 in from No. 3 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 20 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $10\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

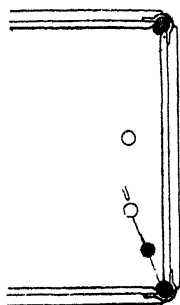
Play this cannon with right-hand side.



## STROKE 18.

Red ball 10 in. from No. 5 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 30 in. from No. 3 cushion and 10 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $20\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion

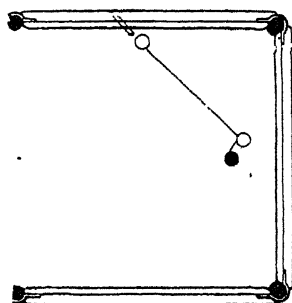
Hit the cue ball below the centre with left-hand side. Play rather sharply so as to bring the cue ball into position for the cannon off the white.



## STROKE 19.

Red ball on spot. White ball as before. Cue ball 35 in. from No. 4 cushion and 4 in. from No. 3 cushion.

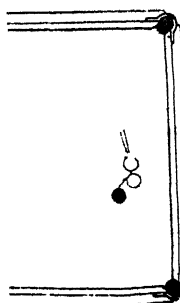
No side.



## STROKE 20.

Red ball 14 in. from No. 4 cushion and 26 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 31 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 34 in. from No. 5 cushion.

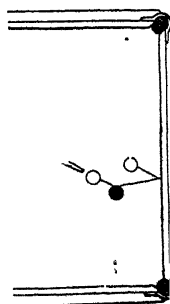
Fine cannon. No side.



## STROKE 21.

Red ball 29 in. from No. 5 cushion and 13 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 9 in. from No. 4 cushion and 34 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball  $31\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and  $17\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion

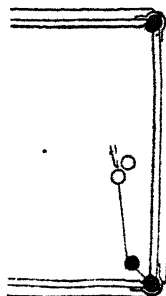
Play with left-hand side off the top cushion. This is preferable to playing it direct, as by playing off the cushion the white is left near the spot.



## STROKE 22.

Red ball 4 in. from No. 5 cushion and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 32 in. from No. 5 cushion and 8 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $29\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and 10 in. from No. 4 cushion.

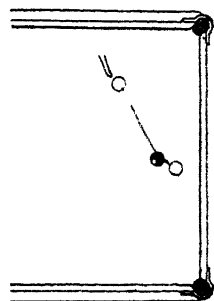
Play with just a little left-hand side.



## STROKE 23.

Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball  $15\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 21 in. from No. 4 cushion.

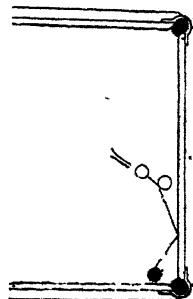
Play with a little right-hand side.



## STROKE 24.

Red ball 6 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $28\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 9 in. from No. 4 cushion and 38 in. from No. 3 cushion.

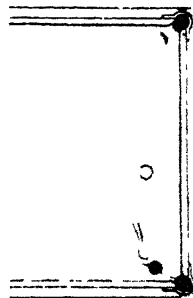
Play without side.



## STROKE 25.

Red ball 2 in. from No. 5 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $30\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 9 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.

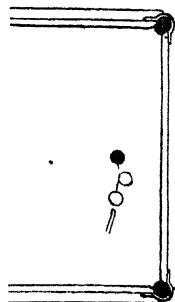
No side.



## STROKE 26

Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 25 in. from No 5 cushion.

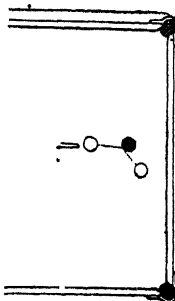
Fine cannon; no side.



## STROKE 27.

Red ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 31 in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball  $38\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 3 cushion and  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 4 cushion. Cue ball 20 in. from No 4 cushion and 32 in. from No. 3 cushion.

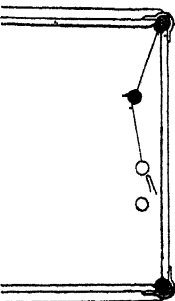
Played with the long butt. Use a little right-hand side, striking the red a little over half-ball.



## STROKE 28.

Red ball 18 in. from No. 3 cushion and 8 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $23\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $38\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion

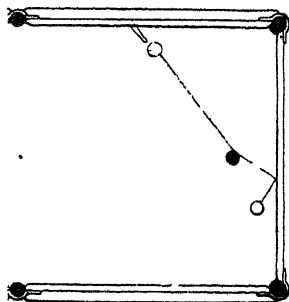
Put the red in slowly, with right-hand side on the cue ball.



## STROKE 29.

Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball  $33\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 3 cushion.

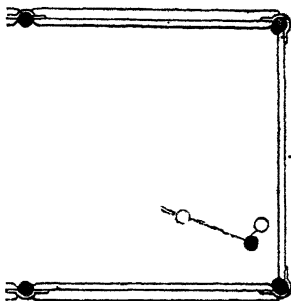
Put plenty of right-hand side on, and play slowly.



## STROKE 30.

Red ball  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and 9 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 4 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $15\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 27 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $17\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.

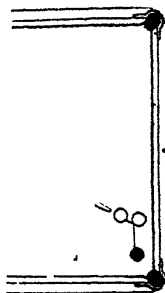
Play nearly full on the red so as to get fine on the white, and so leave another cannon. No side. Play slowly.



## STROKE 31.

Red ball 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 6 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $16\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.

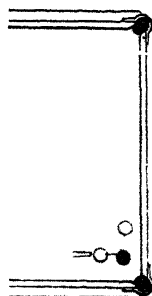
Play very fine on the white. Slowly. No side.



## STROKE 32.

Red ball  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 5 cushion.

Screw off the red, sending white nearer the spot and leaving red winner

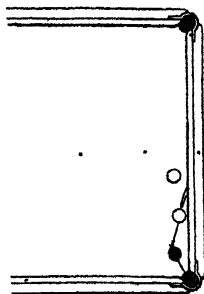




## STROKE 33.

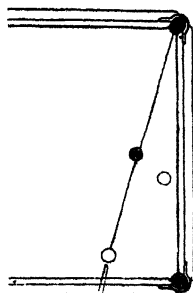
Red ball 3 in from No. 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball  $44\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 17 in. from No. 5 cushion and nearly touching No. 4 cushion.

Cut the red in with a bit of left-hand side.



## STROKE 34.

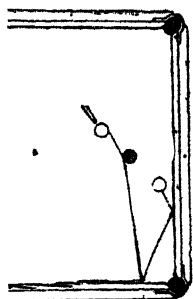
Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball 20 in. from No. 4 cushion and 7 in from No. 5 cushion.



## STROKE 35.

Red ball on spot. White ball same. Cue ball  $19\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $28\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion.

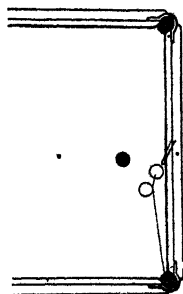
No side. Hit the red fine.



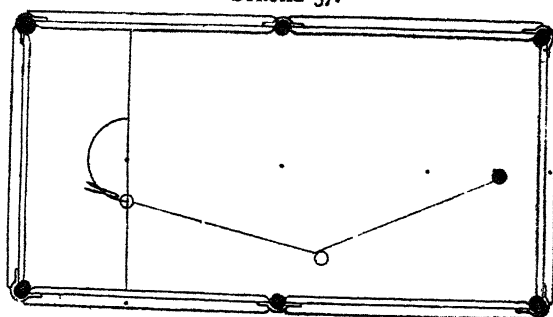
## STROKE 36.

Red ball 37 in from No. 3 cushion and  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $26\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 2 in. from No. 4 cushion and 41 in from No. 3 cushion.

Play this stroke with left-hand side.



STROKE 37.



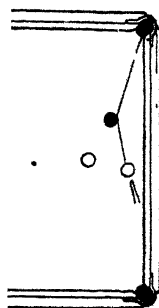
Red ball 37 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 61 in. from No. 4 cushion and 10 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball in hand. Play from right corner of "D."

Play this cannon with plenty of left-hand side.

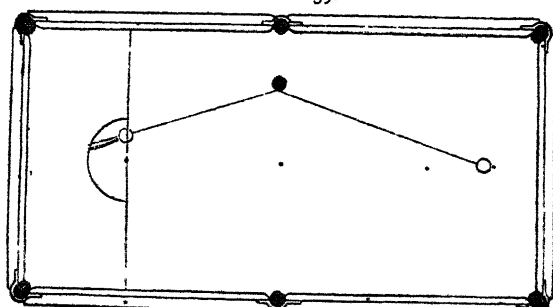
STROKE 38.

Red ball  $24\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $9\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 15 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $36\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 5 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $33\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.

This loser is an ordinary half-ball stroke.



STROKE 39.



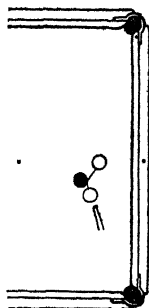
Red ball  $13\frac{1}{2}$  in. from the centre of No. 2 pocket. White ball same as before. Cue ball in hand. Play from 4 in. from the left of the "D."

This cannon is played without side.

## STROKE 40.

Red ball 13 in. from No. 4 cushion and 30 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball 37 in. from No. 3 cushion and 9½ in. from No. 4 cushion.

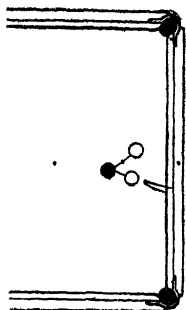
Play slowly without side.



## STROKE 41.

Red ball 38 in. from No. 3 cushion and 16 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 33½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 8½ in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 38½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 10 in. from No. 4 cushion.

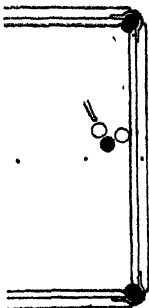
Screw-back cannon.



## STROKE 42.

Red ball 31½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 30½ in. from No. 3 cushion and nearly touching No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 28 in. from No. 3 cushion and 7 in. from No. 4 cushion.

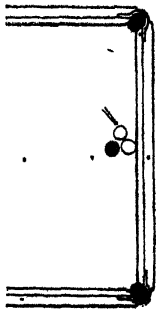
Play with just a little left-hand side.



## STROKE 43.

Red ball 33½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 4½ in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 30½ in. from No. 3 cushion and nearly touching No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 29 in. from No. 3 cushion and 3½ in. from No. 4 cushion.

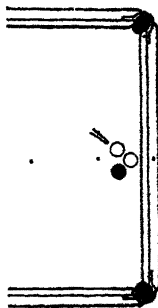
Kiss cannon. Play with a little left-hand side.



## STROKE 44.

Red ball 39 in. from No. 3 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 36 in. from No. 3 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $32\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

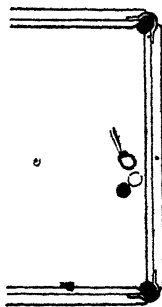
Slight screw. The white ball kisses.



## STROKE 45.

Red ball  $42\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball  $40\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $36\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

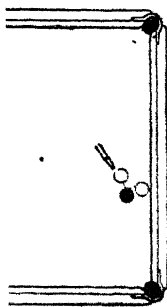
Play with a little right-hand side, so as to get full on the red.



## STROKE 46.

Red ball  $44\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 44 in. from No. 3 cushion and nearly touching No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 40 in. from No. 3 cushion and 8 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Play with plenty of right-hand side, so as to leave the red over the pocket, and kiss the white nearer the spot.



## STROKE 47.

Red ball  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 3 in. from No 5 cushion. White ball 43 in from No. 3 cushion and nearly touching No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 49 in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion.

No side.

## STROKE 48.

Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball 18 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $23\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.

Follow through with left-hand side, so as to make the cue ball come off cushions Nos. 4 and 3.

## STROKE 49.

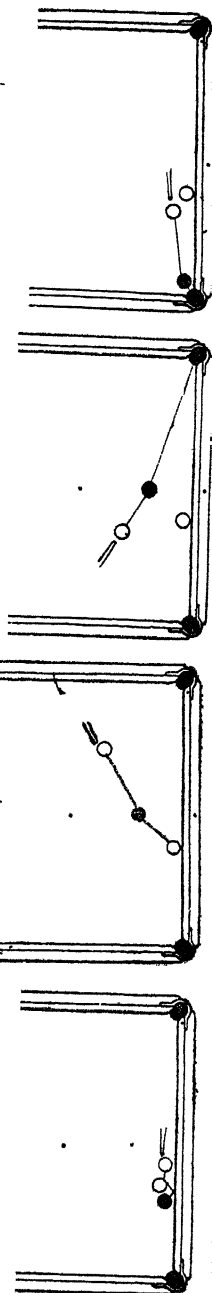
Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball 18 in. from No. 3 cushion and 21 in. from No. 4 cushion

Follow-through cannon with right-hand side. Hit the ball high on the right side.

## STROKE 50.

Red ball 21 in. from No. 5 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 24 in. from No. 5 cushion and 3 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 28 in. from No. 5 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion.

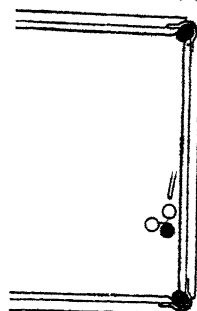
Strike the ball low with right-hand side.



## STROKE 51.

Red ball 20 in. from No. 5 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 21 in. from No. 5 cushion and 5 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 23 in. from No. 5 cushion and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

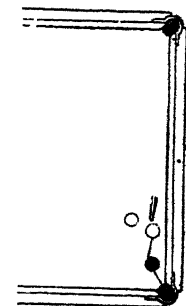
Hit the red rather full—no side—the object being to leave a winner into No. 4 pocket.



## STROKE 52.

Red ball 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball  $19\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and 11 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $18\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

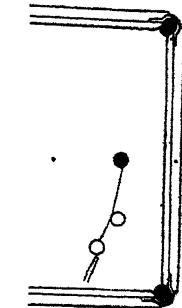
Play this winner with a little right-hand side, so as to leave the cannon off the white on to the spot.



## STROKE 53.

Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball 12 in. from No. 5 cushion and 17 in. from No. 4 cushion.

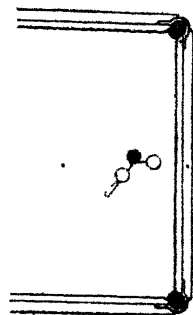
Play with right side, striking white rather more than half-ball.



## STROKE 54.

Red ball  $32\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 12 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 34 in. from No. 3 cushion and 8 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $14\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 36 in. from No. 3 cushion.

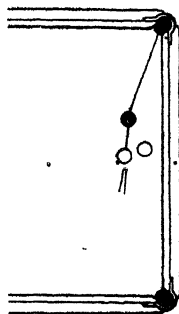
No side; strike red rather full to leave winner.



## STROKE 55.

Red ball  $23\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 3 cushion and  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in from No 4 cushion. White ball  $33\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in from No 4 cushion. Cue ball 34 in. from No 3 cushion and 10 in. from No. 4 cushion.

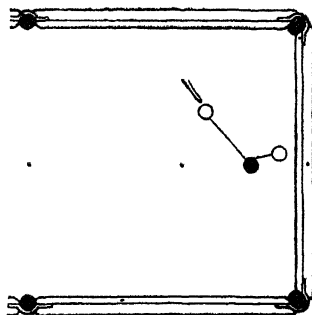
Winner. No side. Strike cue ball rather low to leave the cannon next stroke.



## STROKE 56.

Red ball on spot. White ball as before. Cue ball 22 in from No 3 cushion and 24 in from No 4 cushion

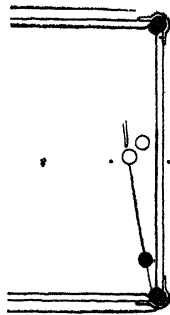
Play this cannon with left side, striking the red rather full.



## STROKE 57.

Red ball 3 in from No. 4 cushion and 9 in from No 5 cushion. White ball  $33\frac{1}{2}$  in from No 3 cushion. and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 34 in from No 3 cushion and 8 in. from No. 4 cushion.

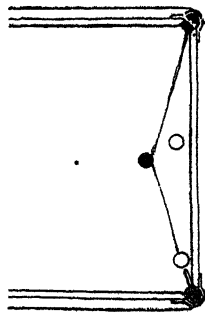
Put the red in with stab, so as to leave cross loser on next stroke.



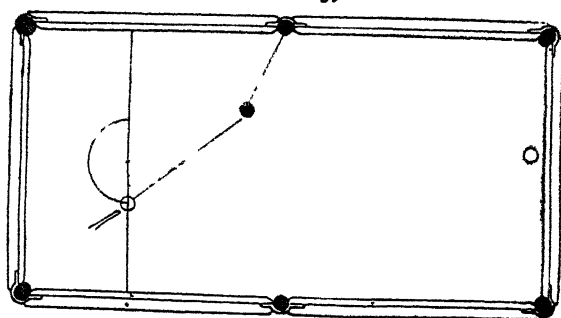
## STROKE 58

Red ball on spot. White ball as before. Cue ball 3 in. from No 4 cushion and 9 in. from No. 5 cushion

Half-ball loser; no side.



## STROKE 59.



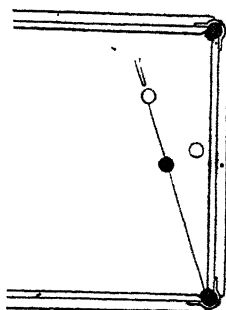
Red ball 21 in. from No. 2 cushion and 60 in. from No. 1 cushion. White ball as before. Cue ball extreme right of "D."

Play this winner with strength sufficient to leave the white as shown in next diagram.

## STROKE 60.

Red ball on spot. White ball as before. Cue ball 17 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $16\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

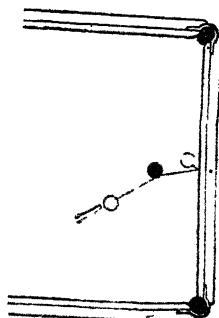
Play with stab.



## STROKE 61.

Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball  $22\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $27\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.

Play with left-hand side, hitting red rather fine.





## STROKE 62.

Red ball 15 in. from No. 3 cushion and 8 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 29 in. from No. 3 cushion and 5½ in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 36½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 6 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Following cannon. Strike the cue ball high and get fairly full on the red.

## STROKE 63.

Red ball 13½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 7½ in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 31 in. from No. 3 cushion and touching No. 4 cushion. Cue ball 16½ in. from No. 3 cushion and 12 in. from No. 4 cushion.

Winner with no side, the object being to bring the ball out so as to leave a cannon.

## STROKE 64.

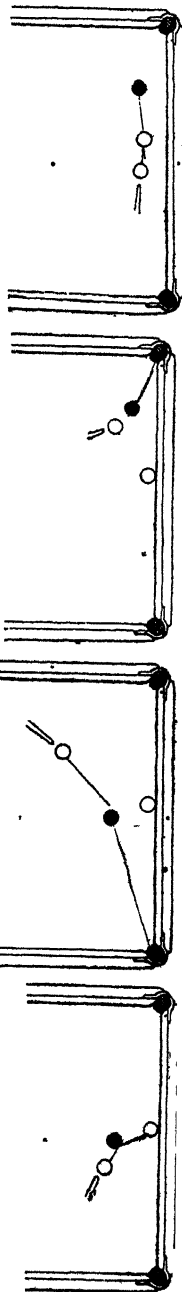
Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball 19 in. from No. 3 cushion and 24½ in. from No. 4 cushion.

Red winner; no side.

## STROKE 65.

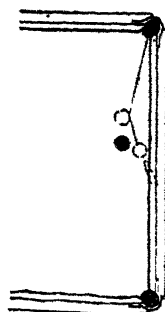
Red ball on spot. White ball same as before. Cue ball 14½ in. from No. 4 cushion and 29½ in. from No. 5 cushion.

Play this cannon with left-hand side, striking the red rather full.

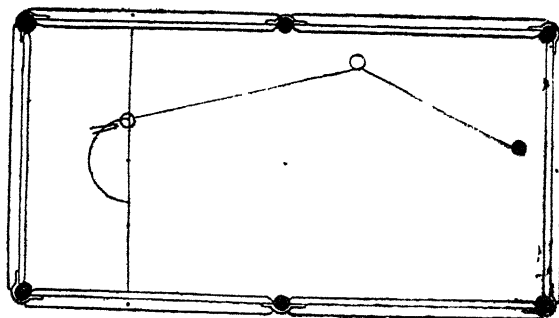


## STROKE 66.

Red ball  $26\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball  $22\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $33\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.



## STROKE 67.



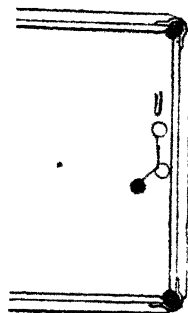
Red ball same as before. White ball 51 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball in hand; left spot of baulk.

Just a shade of right side, striking white a little more than half-ball.

## STROKE 68.

Red ball 38 in. from No. 3 cushion and 9 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 37 in. from No. 3 cushion and nearly touching No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $25\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 2 in. from No. 4 cushion.

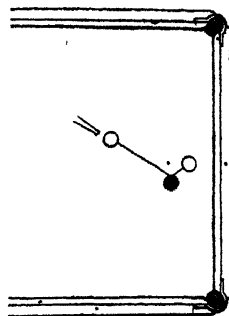
Play with slow screw rather full on white.



## STROKE 69.

Red ball  $39\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 12 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball  $36\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $29\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $26\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

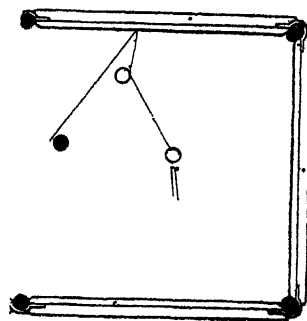
Play with screw rather full on the red.



## STROKE 70.

Red ball  $30\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 63 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball 45 in. from No. 4 cushion and 12 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball  $31\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $31\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

The breakdown.



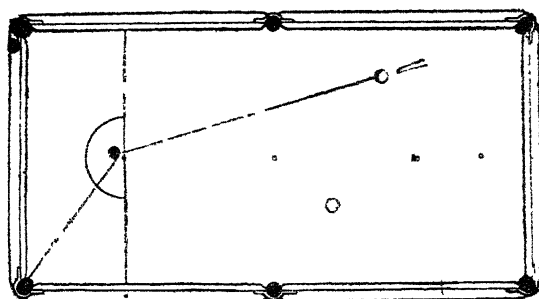
## BREAKS BY AN AMATEUR AND A PROFESSIONAL FROM THE SAME LEAVE.

THE amateur break here given was made in the course of the Licensed Victuallers' Championship, being in fact the highest made in that competition. A break of the same length from the same leave was afterwards made by Mr. W. Spiller, the well-known professional, who was, at the thirty-third stroke, still in excellent position for the continuance of the break. It will be noticed that while the amateur was almost always in difficulties, and showed considerable ingenuity in surmounting them, Spiller's strokes are all of a very simple character. The break is indeed so simple that by the aid of the instructions given it should not be difficult for a fair average player to play it over, after practising the strokes individually to arrive at the strength necessary to bring the balls into the positions shown. The way to proceed is to place the balls according to the measurements, and then mark their positions by a small dot made with a piece of tailor's crayon, which easily comes out. Blacklead should not be used, as the marks made by it are permanent.

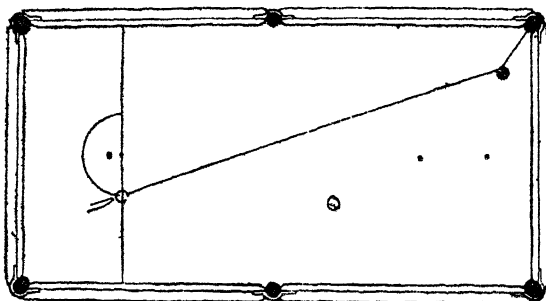
Then practise the strokes repeatedly, until the requisite position has been obtained. The measurements are taken from the edge of the cushion to the centre of the ball.

### THE AMATEUR'S BREAK.

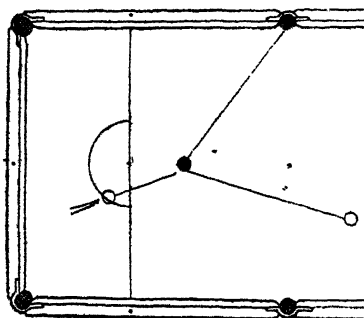
STROKE I.



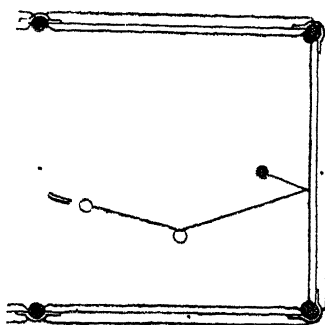
STROKE 2.



STROKE 3.



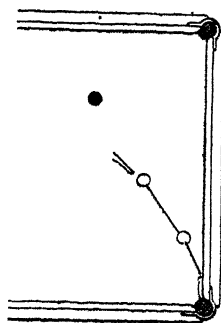
STROKE 4.



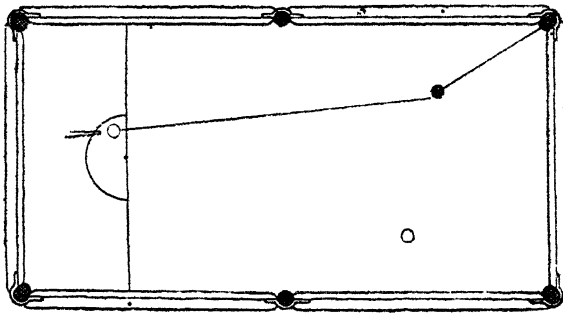
Five stroke. Apparently played to leave red over the pocket, not to put it in.

STROKE 5.

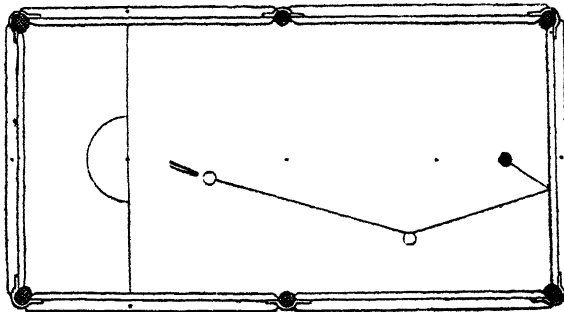
Run-through loser.



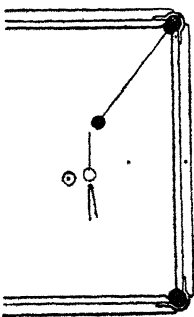
STROKE 6.



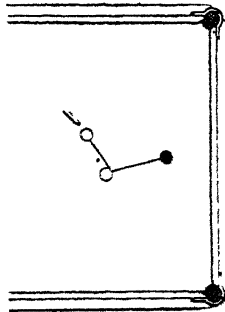
STROKE 7.



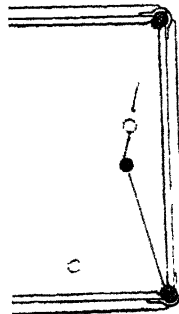
STROKE 8.



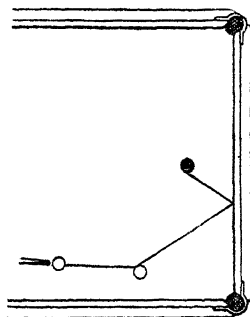
STROKE 9.



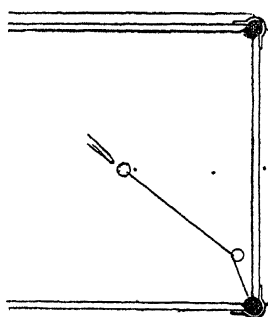
STROKE 10.



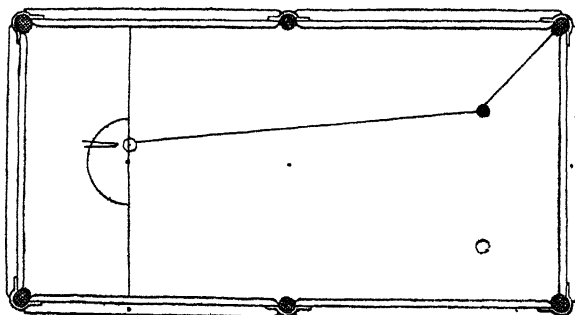
STROKE II.



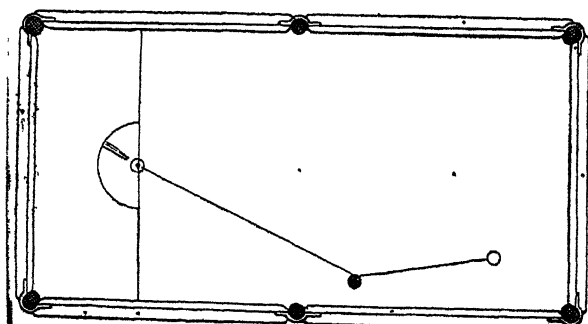
STROKE 12.



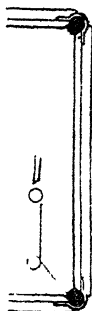
STROKE 13.



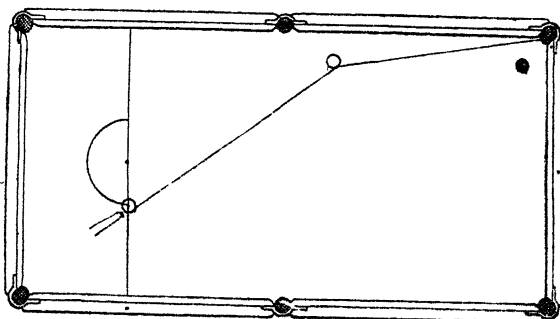
STROKE 14.



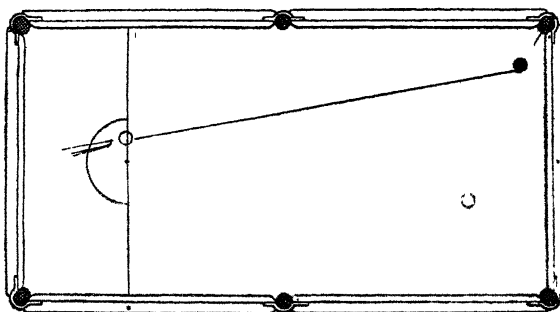
STROKE 15.



STROKE 16.



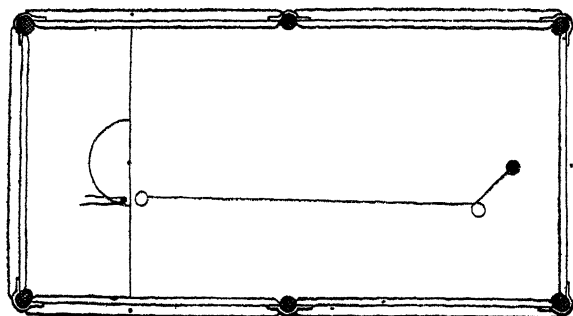
STROKE 17.



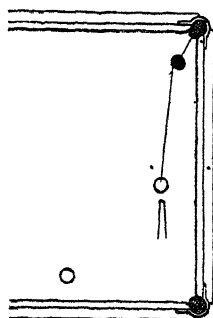
Red winner.



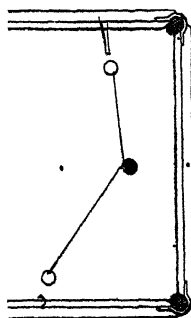
STROKE 18.



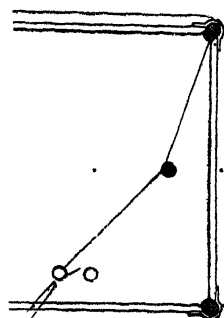
STROKE 19.



STROKE 20.

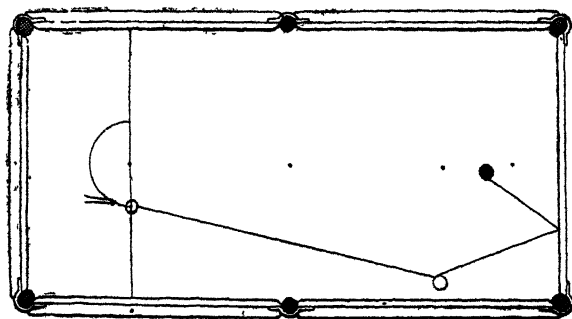


STROKE 21.

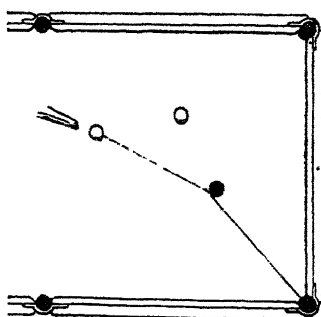


Red winner.

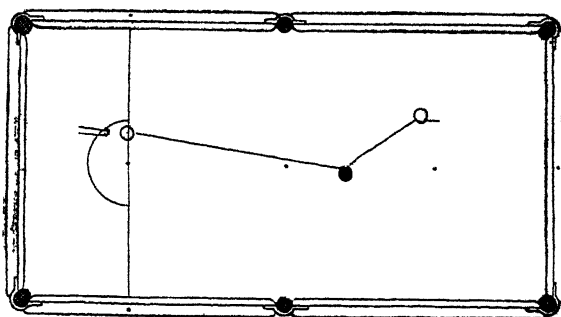
STROKE 22.



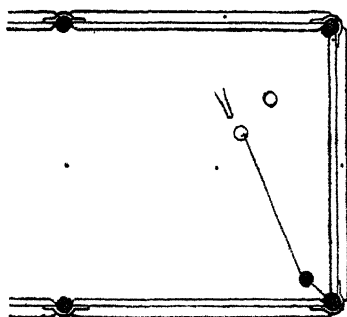
STROKE 23.



STROKE 24.

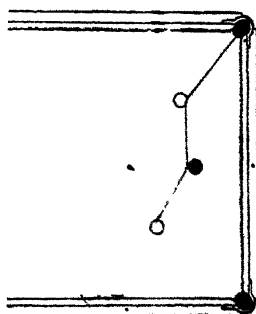


STROKE 25.



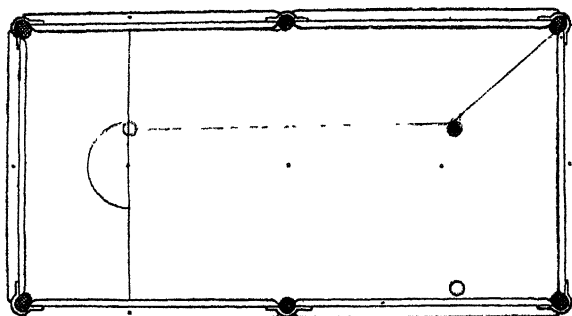
Red winner.

STROKE 26.

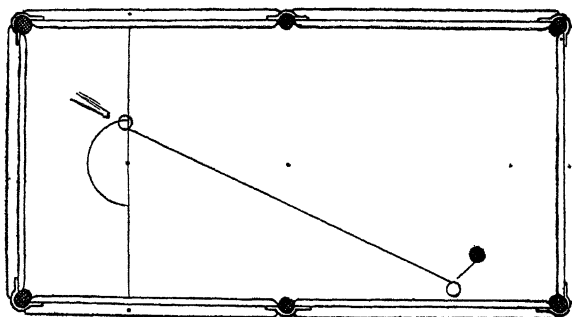


Fluked the loser. Played with wrong strength.

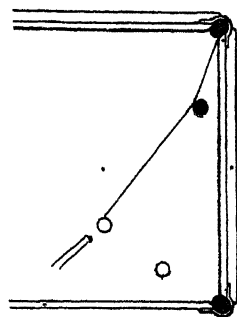
STROKE 27.



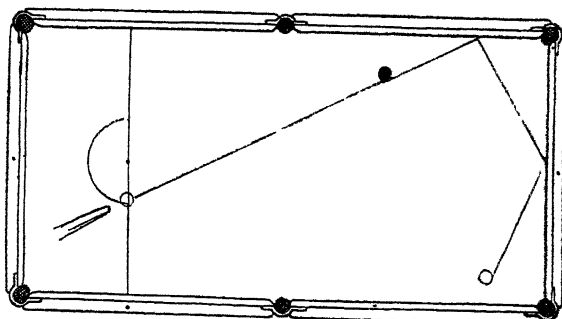
STROKE 28.



STROKE 29.

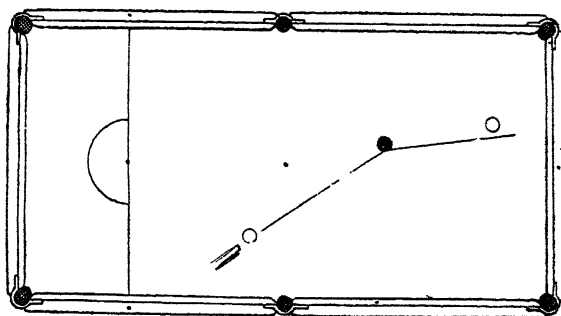


STROKE 30.



Stroke No 30 was actually made in the manner shown in the diagram. What really happened was that the player struck the red about three-quarter ball, and followed through it on to the cushion. In all probability he intended to play the stroke from ball to cushion, but fluked it in the way described. The correct way to play the stroke would be to play from the left of the "D" from the red to the top cushion

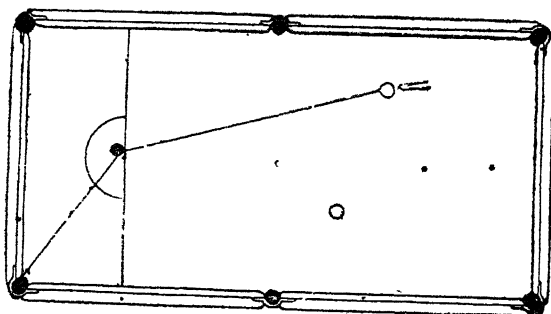
STROKE 31.



The breakdown.

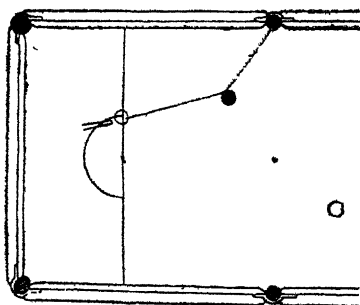
## W. SPILLER'S BREAK.

STROKE 1.



Red ball 26 in. from No. 1 cushion and 34 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball 55 in. from No. 4 cushion and 21 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 14 in. from No. 3 cushion and 40 in. from No. 4 cushion

No side required.

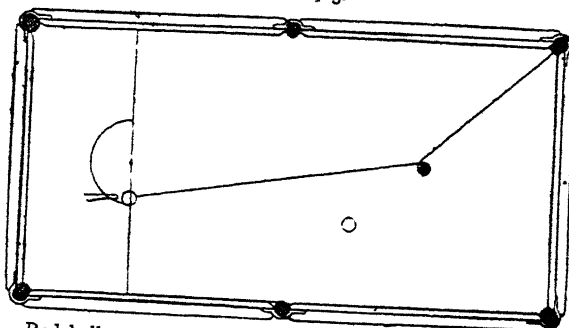


STROKE 2.

Red ball 18 in. from No. 2 cushion and 58 in. from No. 1 cushion. White ball same as before Cue ball in hand —left of "D."

Play with a trifle of right-hand side.

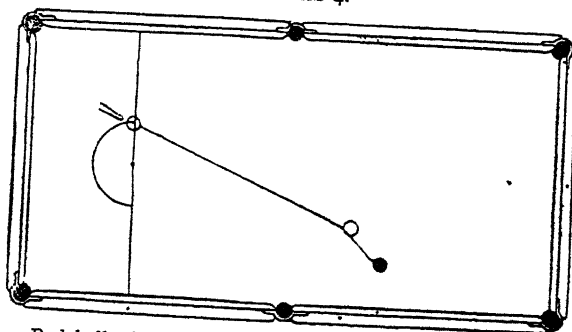
## STROKE 3.



Red ball 34 in. from No. 3 cushion and 35 in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball same as before. Cue ball in hand— $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from right of "D."

Play with slight left-hand side.

## STROKE 4.



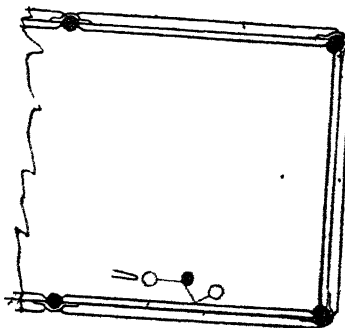
Red ball 46 in. from No 4 cushion and 12 in. from No 5 cushion. White ball same as before. Cue ball in hand, left corner spot of baulk.

Play gently, no side.

## STROKE 5

White ball  $28\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 4 cushion and 3 in. from No. 5 cushion. Red ball 37 in. from No 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 47 in. from No. 4 cushion and 6 in. from No. 5 cushion.

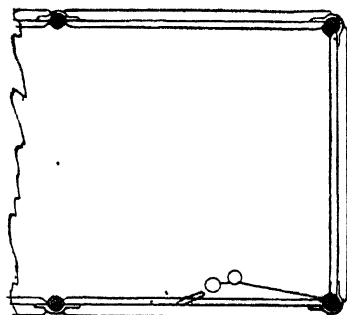
Play gently, no side.



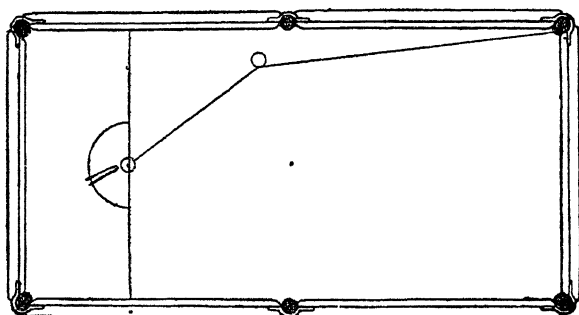
## STROKE 6

Red ball 22 in. from No. 4 cushion and 17 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball  $23\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 5 in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball 30 in. from No. 4 cushion and 3 in. from No. 5 cushion.

Put on as much right-hand side as possible.



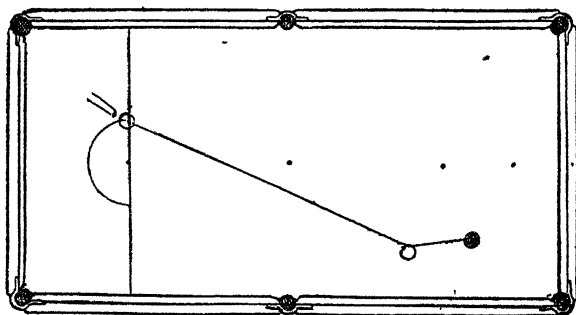
## STROKE 7



Red ball same as before. White ball 62 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 2 cushion. Cue ball in hand; middle spot.

Strong left-hand side with strength sufficient to bring the white over to the red.

## STROKE 8.



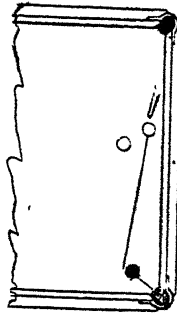
Red ball same as before. White ball 40 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion. Cue ball in hand; left spot of baulk.

Play gently without side.

## STROKE 9.

Red ball 7 in from No 4 cushion and 6 in. from No 5 cushion White ball 9 in from No 4 cushion and 32 in from No 3 cushion Cue ball 3 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $26\frac{1}{2}$  in from No 3 cushion

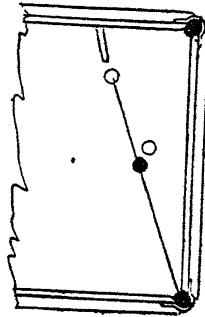
Red winning hazard. Play with strength sufficient to bring the cue ball into the position shown in the next diagram.



## STROKE 10.

Red ball on spot White ball same as before. Cue ball 12 in from No 3 cushion and  $20\frac{1}{2}$  in from No 4 cushion

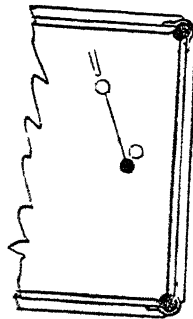
Red winning hazard, screwing back for position. Strike the cue ball below the centre, letting the cue go through it.



## STROKE 11.

Red ball on spot. White ball same as before Cue ball  $14\frac{1}{2}$  in from No 3 cushion and  $19\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 4 cushion.

Screw-back cannon from the red The intention here was to put the red ball over the pocket and leave the white close to the spot, but the balls kissed, with the result that the position in the following diagram was left.

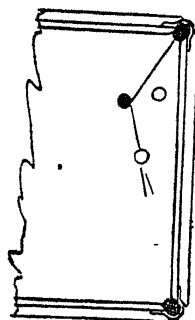




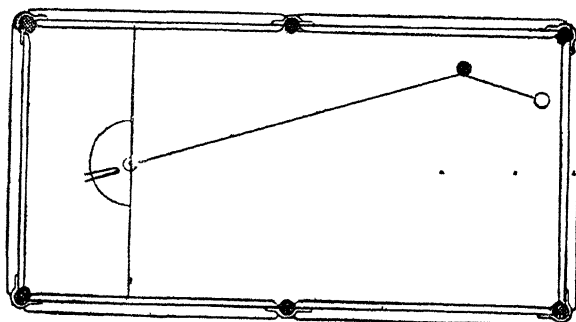
## STROKE 12.

Red ball  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $16\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 15 in. from No. 3 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $32\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and 11 in. from No. 4 cushion.

On account of the balls kissing in the last stroke the loser had to be played here instead of the winner as intended. Strike the ball low with left-hand side.



## STROKE 13.



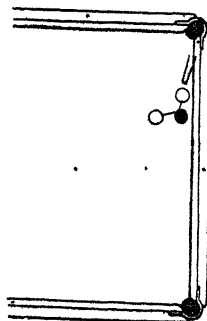
Red ball 8 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $25\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball same as before. Cue ball in hand; centre spot of "D."

Played gently, without side, to bring the balls together.

## STROKE 14.

Red ball 2 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $20\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 9 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $20\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 16 in. from No. 3 cushion and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

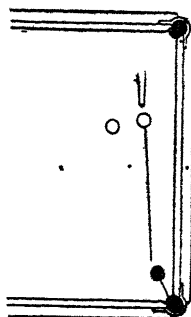
Play without side. Not too sharply.



## STROKE 15.

Red ball  $5\frac{3}{4}$  in from No 5 cushion and 4 in. from No. 4 cushion White ball 16 in from No 4 cushion and  $23\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 3 cushion. Cue ball 9 in from No 4 cushion and  $22\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion.

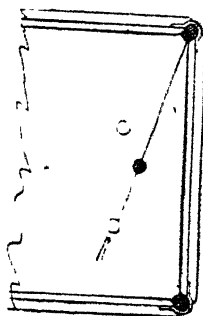
Red winner. Play slowly.



## STROKE 16.

Red ball on spot White ball same as before Cue ball  $17\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $18\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.

Red winner, screwing back for position.



## STROKE 17.

Red ball on spot. White ball same as before Cue ball  $18\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $18\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 5 cushion.

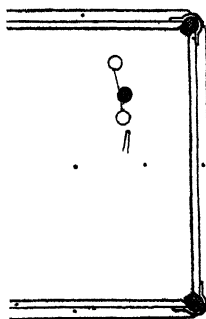
Play without side.



## STROKE 18.

Red ball  $16\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 16 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball  $16\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $22\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 18 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $9\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion.

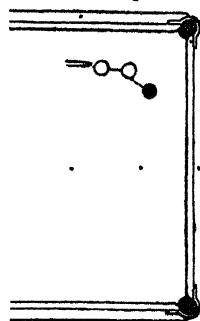
Put on as much right-hand side as possible, striking the ball above the centre.



## STROKE 19.

Red ball  $14\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $13\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball  $8\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $22\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball  $17\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $8\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 3 cushion.

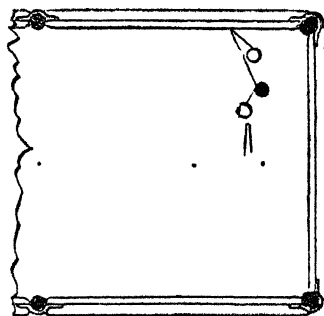
Play with a little left-hand side.



## STROKE 20.

Red ball  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $14\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball 16 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $21\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 13 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $6\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 3 cushion.

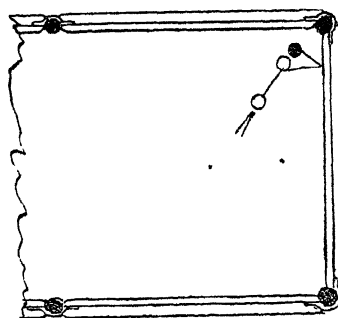
Play with as much right-hand side as possible.



## STROKE 21.

Red ball 7 in. from No. 4 cushion and 5 in. from No 3 cushion. Cue ball  $16\frac{3}{4}$  in from No. 4 cushion and 18 in. from No 3 cushion. White ball 10 in. from No. 4 cushion and 8 in. from No 3 cushion

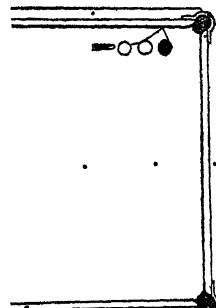
A plain half-ball stroke, but put a little top on.



## STROKE 22

Red ball 8 in. from No 4 cushion and  $4\frac{3}{4}$  in from No 3 cushion Cue ball 15 in. from No 4 cushion and  $5\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No 3 cushion White ball  $10\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No 4 cushion and  $4\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 3 cushion

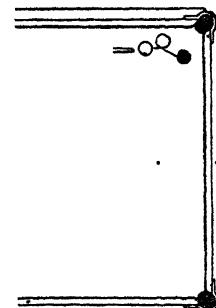
A very delicate stroke, played with left-hand side.



## STROKE 23.

Red ball  $8\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $5\frac{3}{4}$  in from No 3 cushion Cue ball  $11\frac{1}{4}$  in from No 4 cushion and 5 in. from No 3 cushion White ball 10 in from No. 4 cushion and 3 in. from No. 3 cushion.

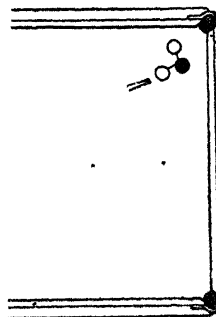
Play gently, no side.



## STROKE 24.

Red ball 8 in. from No 4 cushion and 6 in from No 3 cushion. Cue ball  $11\frac{1}{4}$  in from No 4 cushion and  $6\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No. 3 cushion White ball 9 in. from No 4 cushion and 4 in. from No 3 cushion.

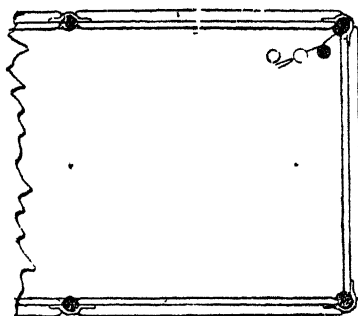
Play gently, without side.



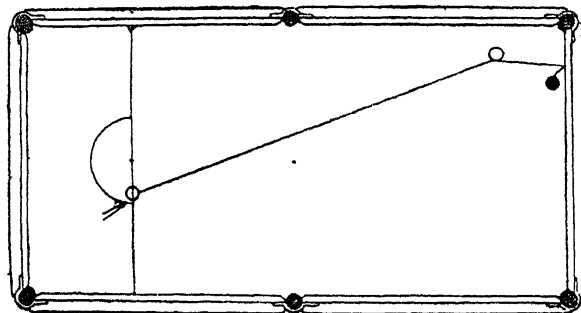
## STROKE 25

Red ball 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball  $10\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 13 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $7\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion.

Play a very fine stroke, no side.



## STROKE 26.



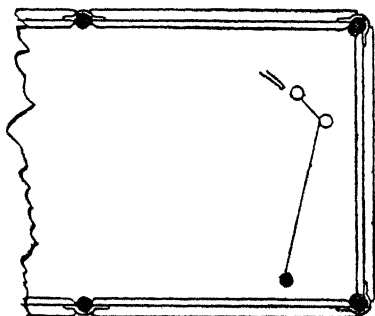
Red ball  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 15 in. from No. 3 cushion. Cue ball in hand, about 2 in. from right side of "D." White ball same as before.

Play with a great deal of right-hand side.

## STROKE 27.

Red ball  $4\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and 17 in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball  $14\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion and 16 in. from No. 3 cushion. White ball 8 in. from No. 4 cushion and  $23\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion.

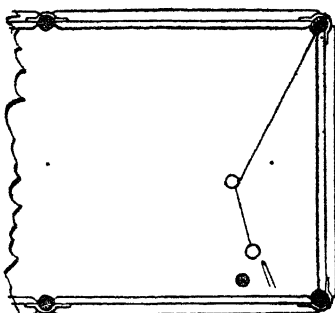
Play with right-hand side, striking the ball downward.



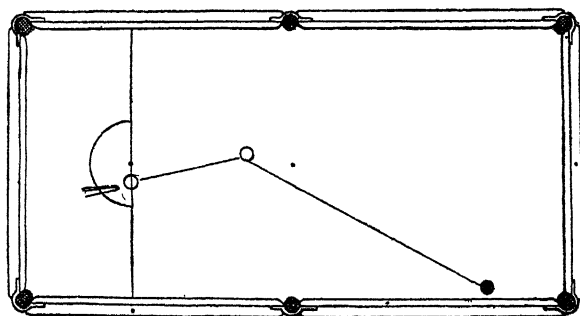
## STROKE 28.

Red ball  $4\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No 5 cushion and 19 in. from No 4 cushion Cue ball  $17\frac{3}{4}$  in from No 4 cushion and  $10\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No 5 cushion White ball 22 in from No 4 cushion and 31 in from No 5 cushion

Play with a little right-hand side



## STROKE 29.

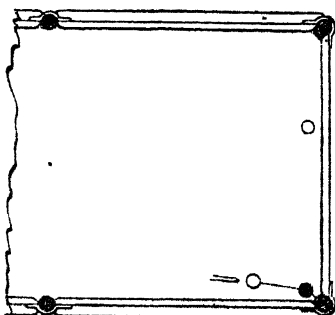


Red ball same as before Cue ball in hand, about 3 in. from right of middle spot White ball  $32\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No 2 cushion and  $59\frac{1}{4}$  in. from No. 1 cushion.

## STROKE 30.

Red ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 5 cushion and  $2\frac{3}{4}$  in from No 4 cushion Cue ball 3 in. from No 5 cushion and  $17\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball  $23\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No 3 cushion and  $2\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No 4 cushion.

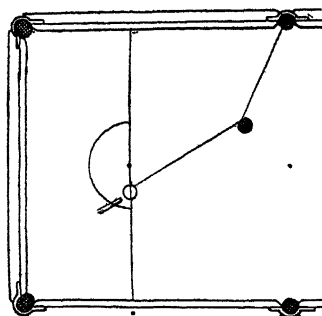
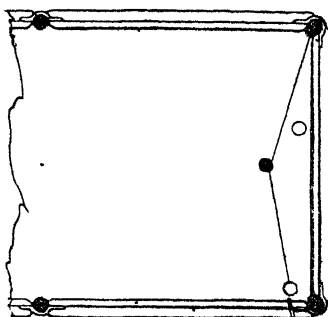
Play gently, so as to leave cue ball in position for the cross loser from the spot



## STROKE 31.

Red ball on spot White ball as before Cue ball 6 in. from No. 5 cushion and  $3\frac{3}{4}$  in. from No. 4 cushion.

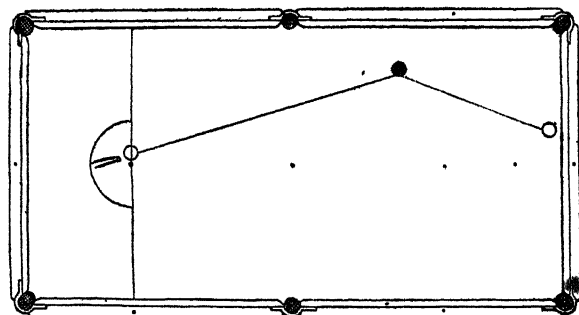
Play with left-hand side with sufficient strength to bring the red down to the middle pocket.



## STROKE 32.

Red ball 24 in from No. 2 cushion and  $60\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 1 cushion White ball same as before. Cue ball in hand

## STROKE 33.

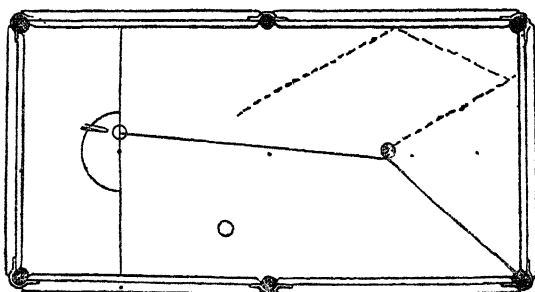


Red ball  $10\frac{1}{2}$  in from No 3 cushion and  $41\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. Cue ball in hand; 2 in. left of middle spot in baulk. White ball same as before.

## A LOSING HAZARD BREAK BY W. MITCHELL.

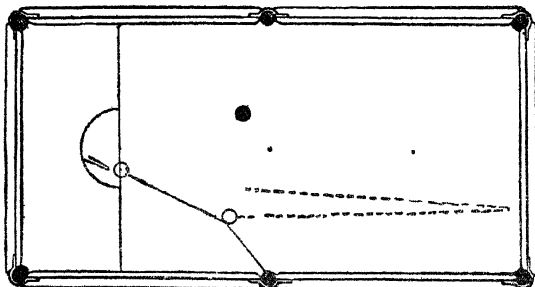
IT will be found to be excellent practice in losing hazards, which after all are the backbone of the ordinary amateur game, to place the balls as shown in the diagrams, and try to leave the resulting position. Any time spent over this exercise will bring a good return in general improvement.

No. 1.



Red ball  $34\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 3 cushion and  $39\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball  $6\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 1 cushion and  $15\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 5 in. to left of centre of "D"

No. 2.

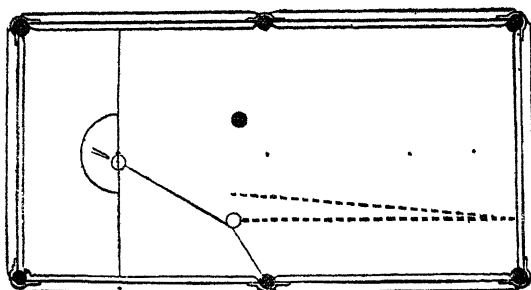


Red ball  $63\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 1 cushion and 25 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball as before. Cue ball 6 in. to right of centre of "D"



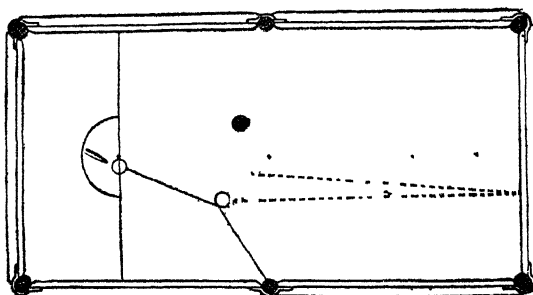
## MODERN BILLIARDS

No 3.



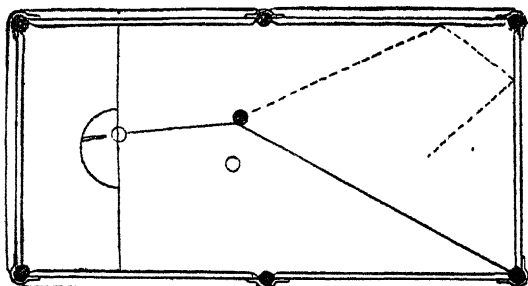
Red ball as before. White ball 62 in. from No. 1 cushion and 18 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 1 in. to right of centre of "D."

No 4



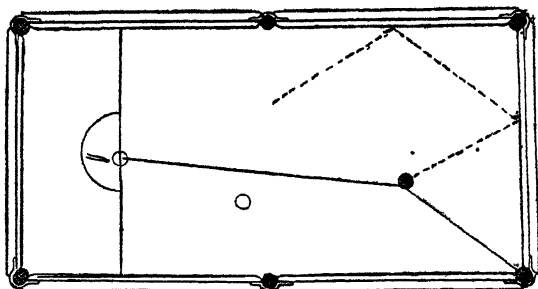
Red ball as before. White ball  $58\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 1 cushion and 22 in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 1 in. to right of centre of "D."

No 5



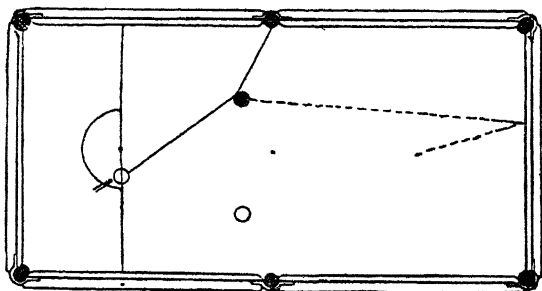
Red ball as before. White ball 60 in. from No. 1 cushion and  $24\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 6 cushion. Cue ball 6 in. to the left of centre of "D."

No. 6.



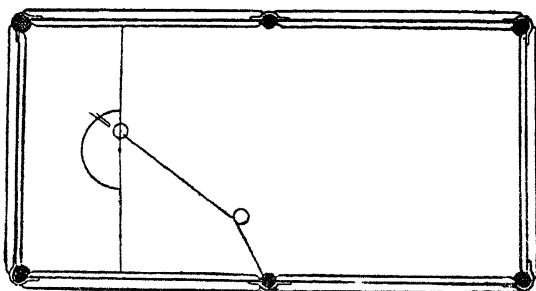
Red ball 33 in. from No. 4 cushion and 29 in. from No. 5 cushion. White ball as before. Cue ball  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. to right of centre of "D." Strong right-hand side, striking red quarter-ball

No. 7.



Red ball 63 in from No. 1 cushion and 21 in. from No. 2 cushion. White ball as before. Cue ball 3 in. from right corner of "D."

No. 8.

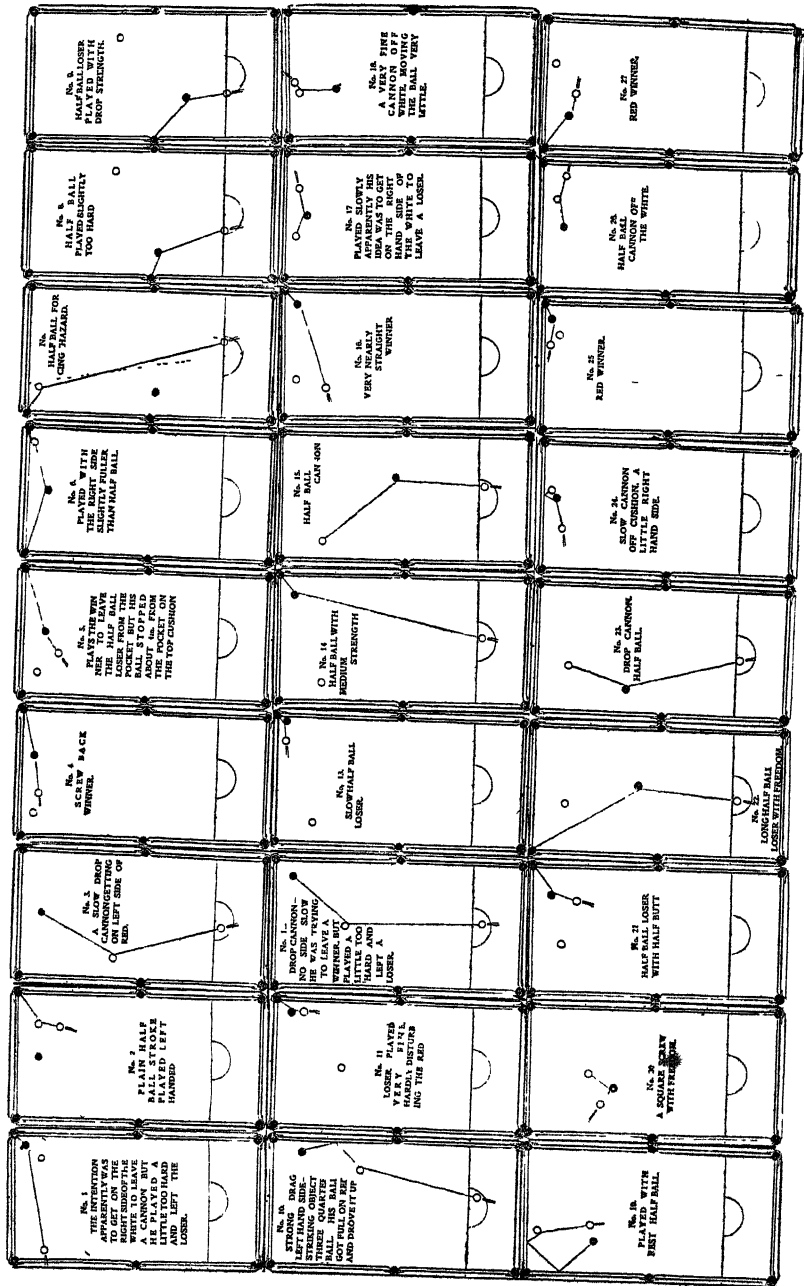


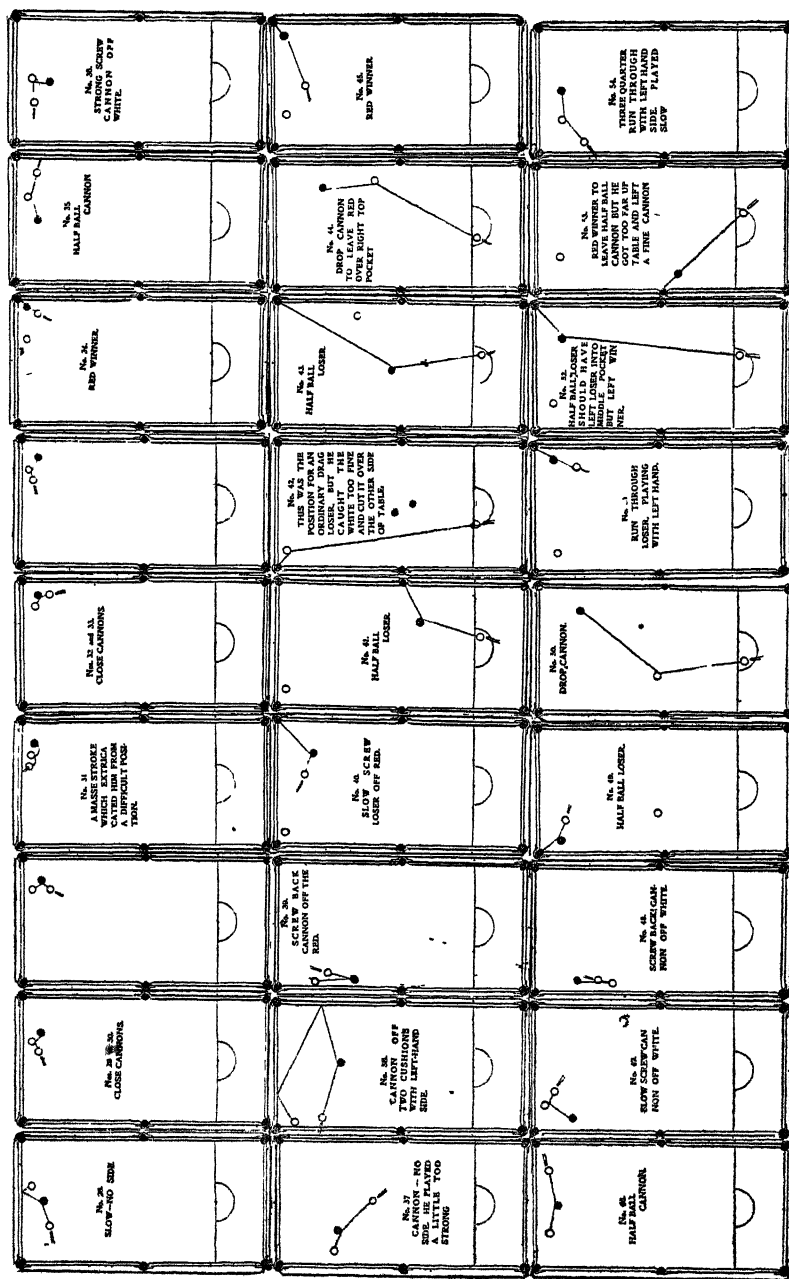
Red ball  $34\frac{1}{2}$  in from No. 3 cushion and  $39\frac{1}{2}$  in. from No. 4 cushion. White ball as before. Cue ball 5 in to left of centre of "D." This brings the ball to practically the same position as in No. 1, and the strokes can be made over again.

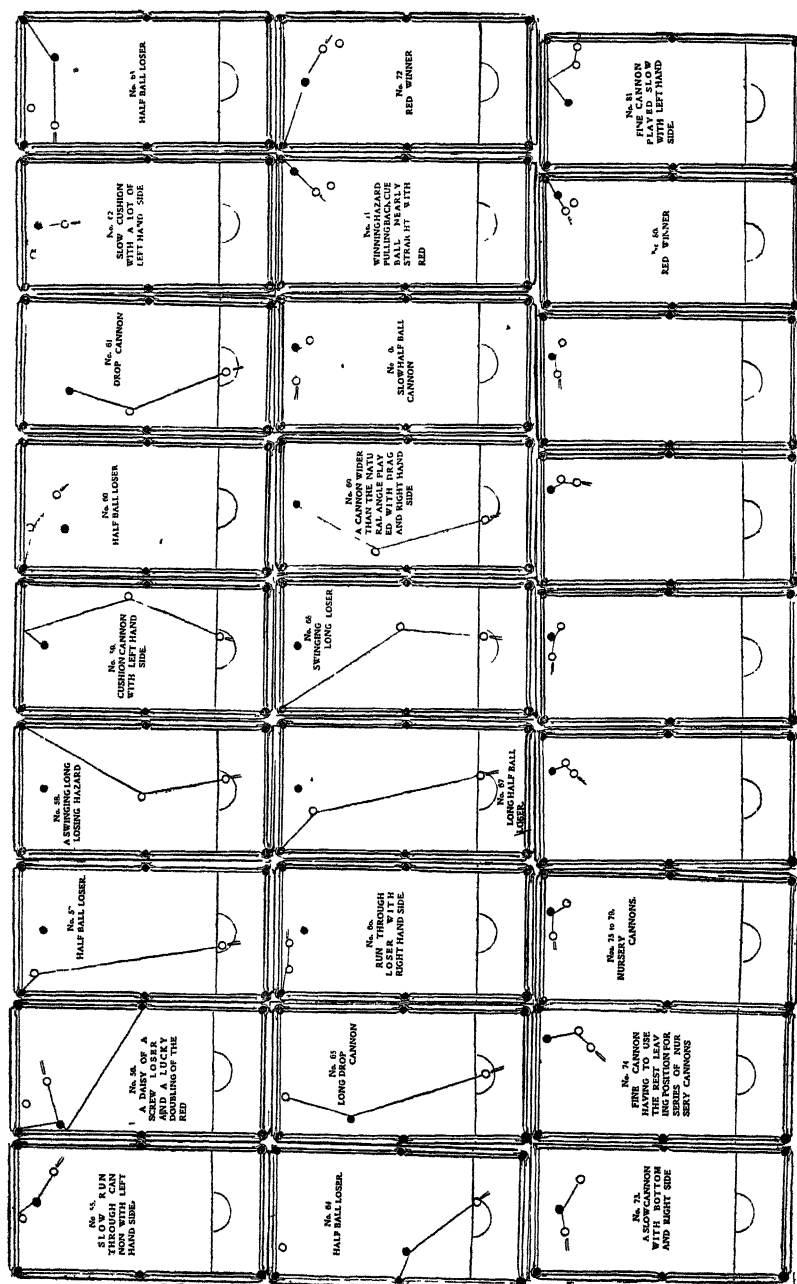


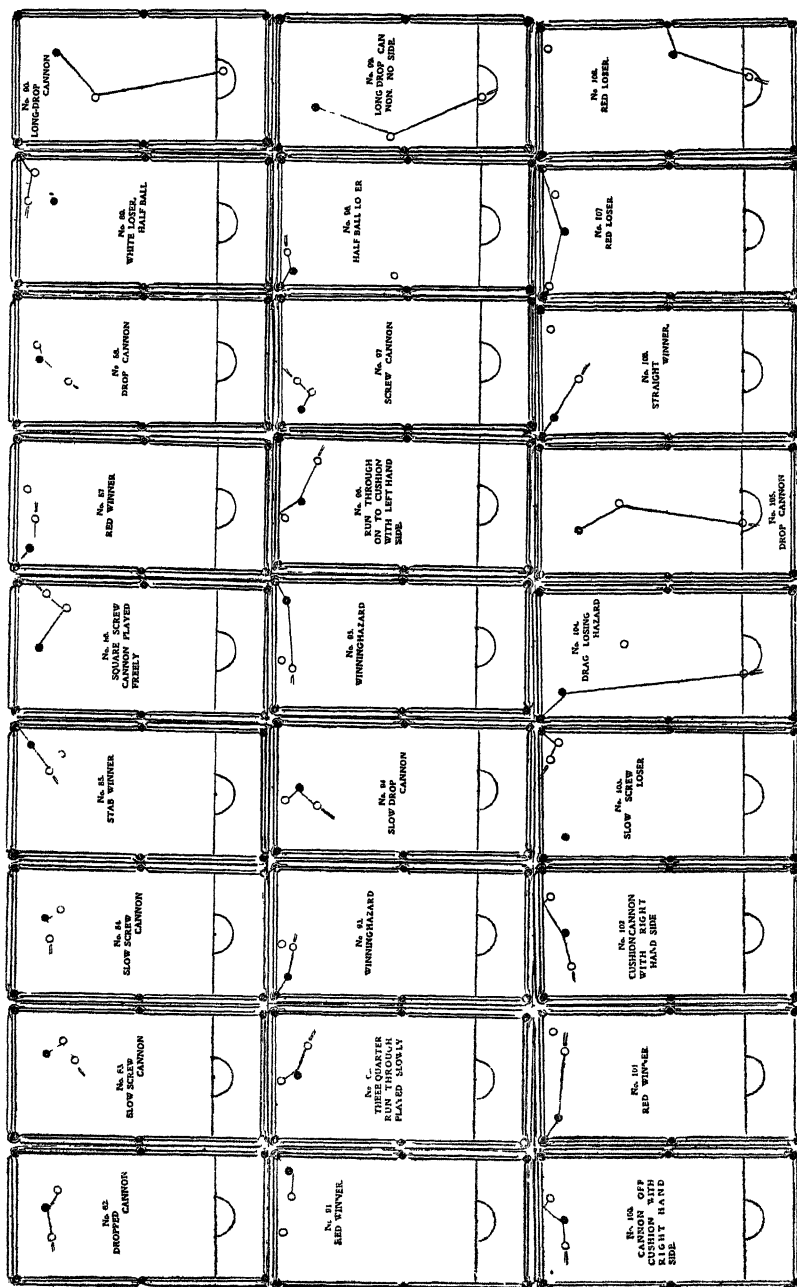
A BREAK  
OF 534 BY CHARLES DAWSON

THIS break was made on December 31st, 1900, in the course of a match with H W. Stevenson, for the Billiard Association Championship. The break is a very open one, an unusual feature in compilations of this length.



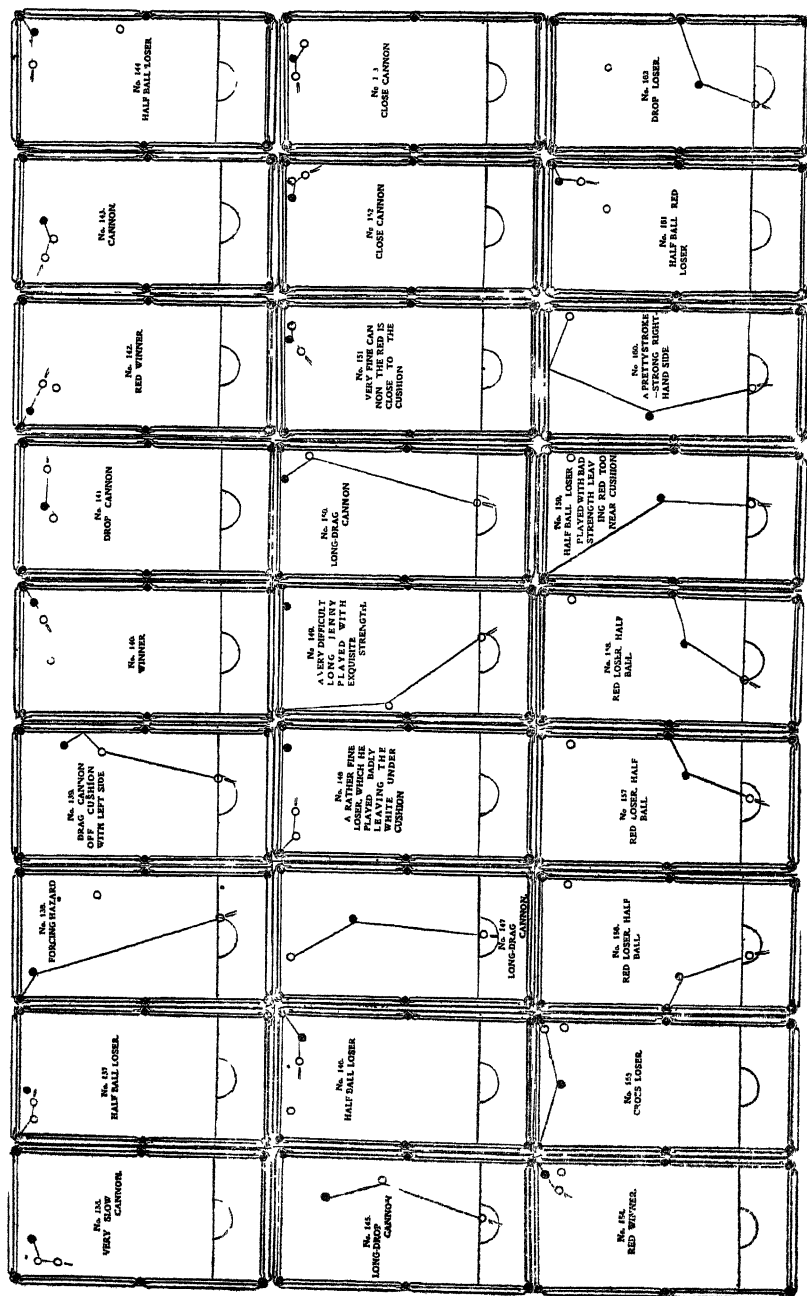


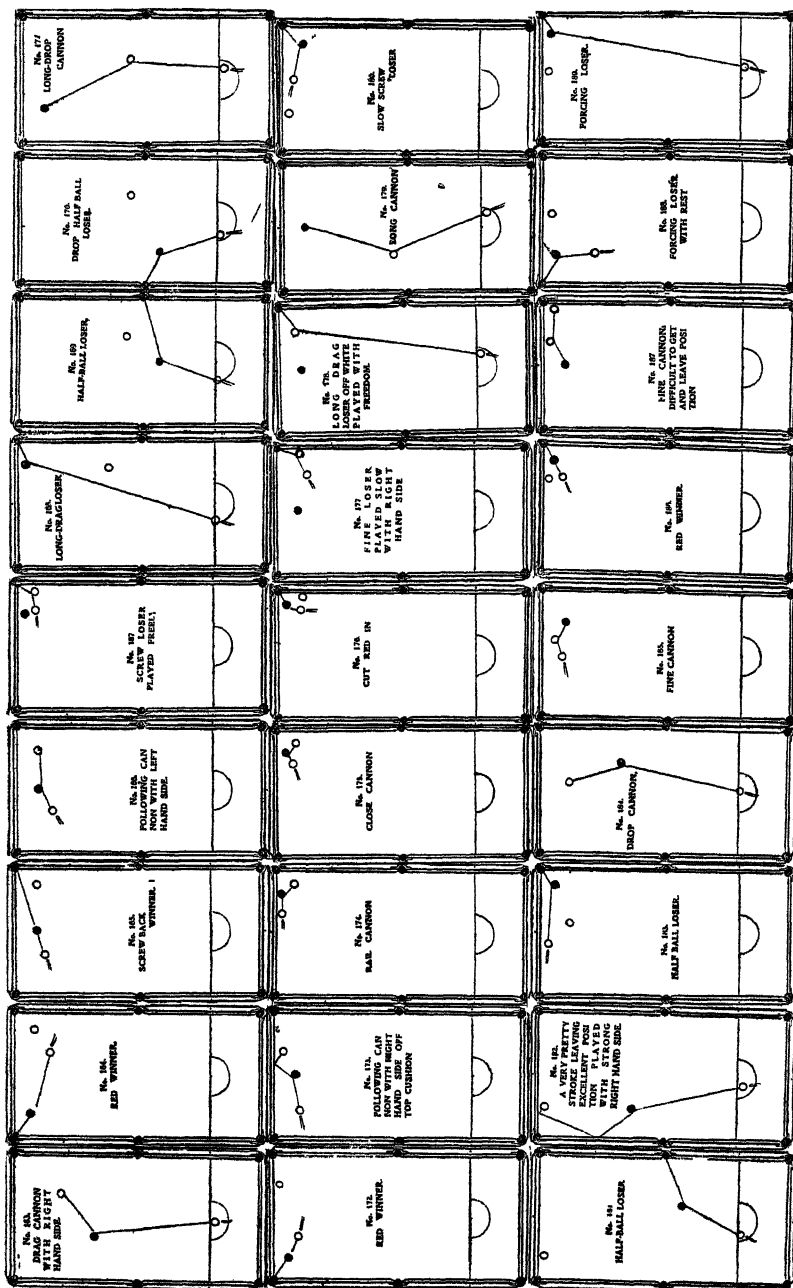


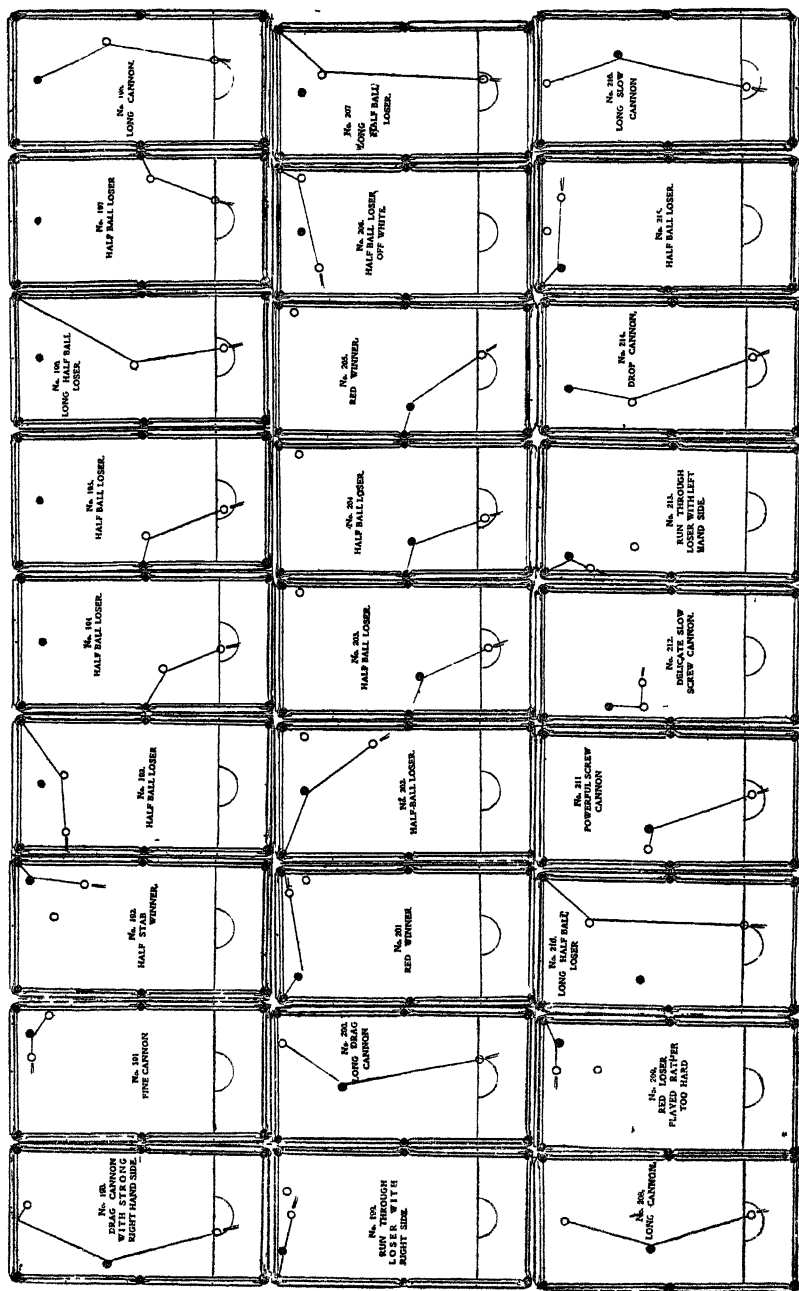


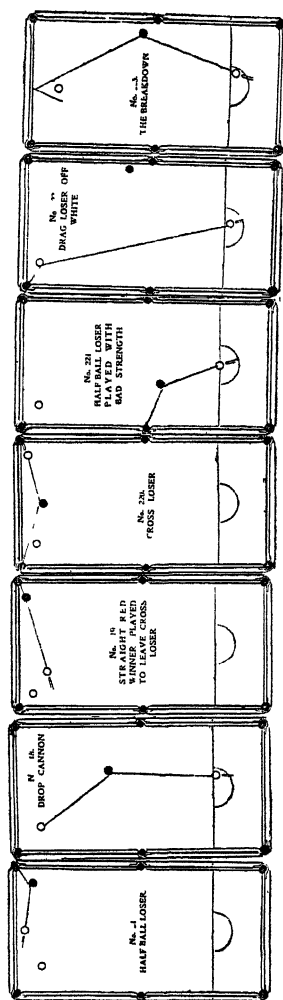






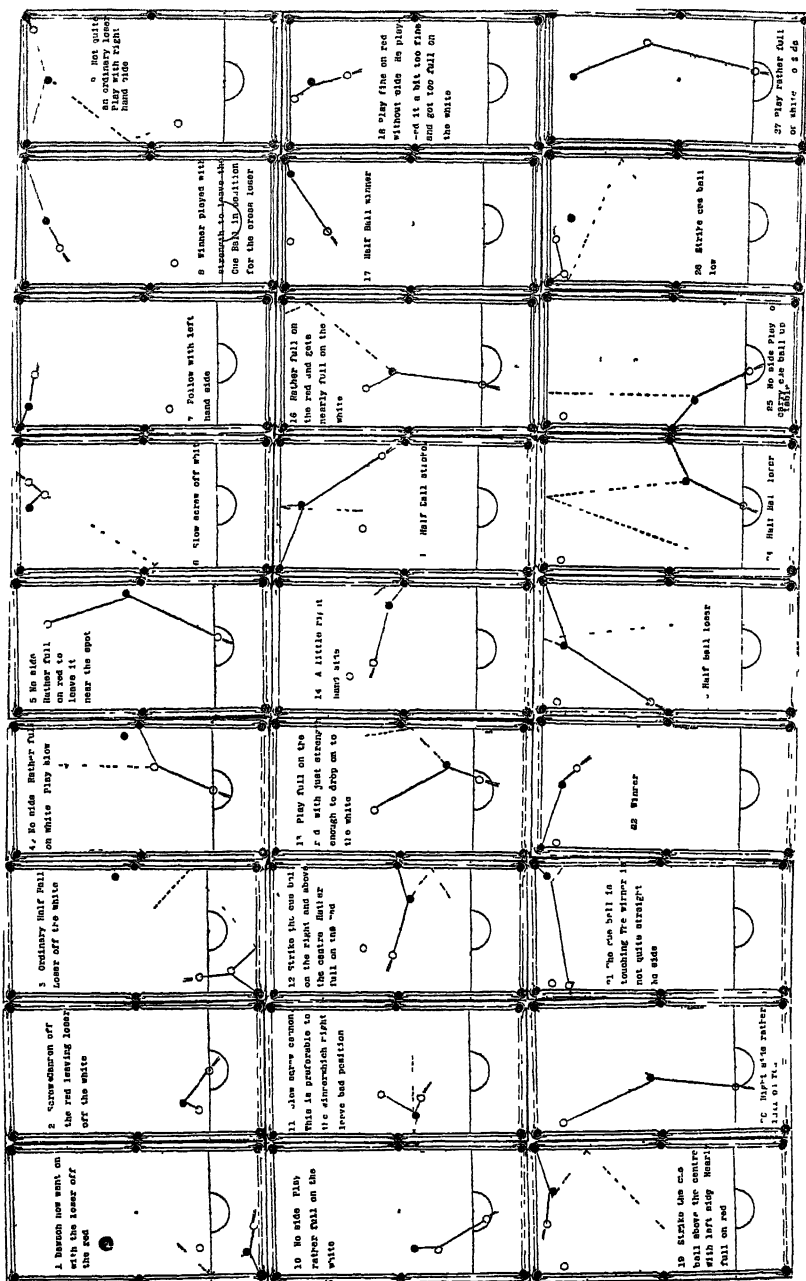


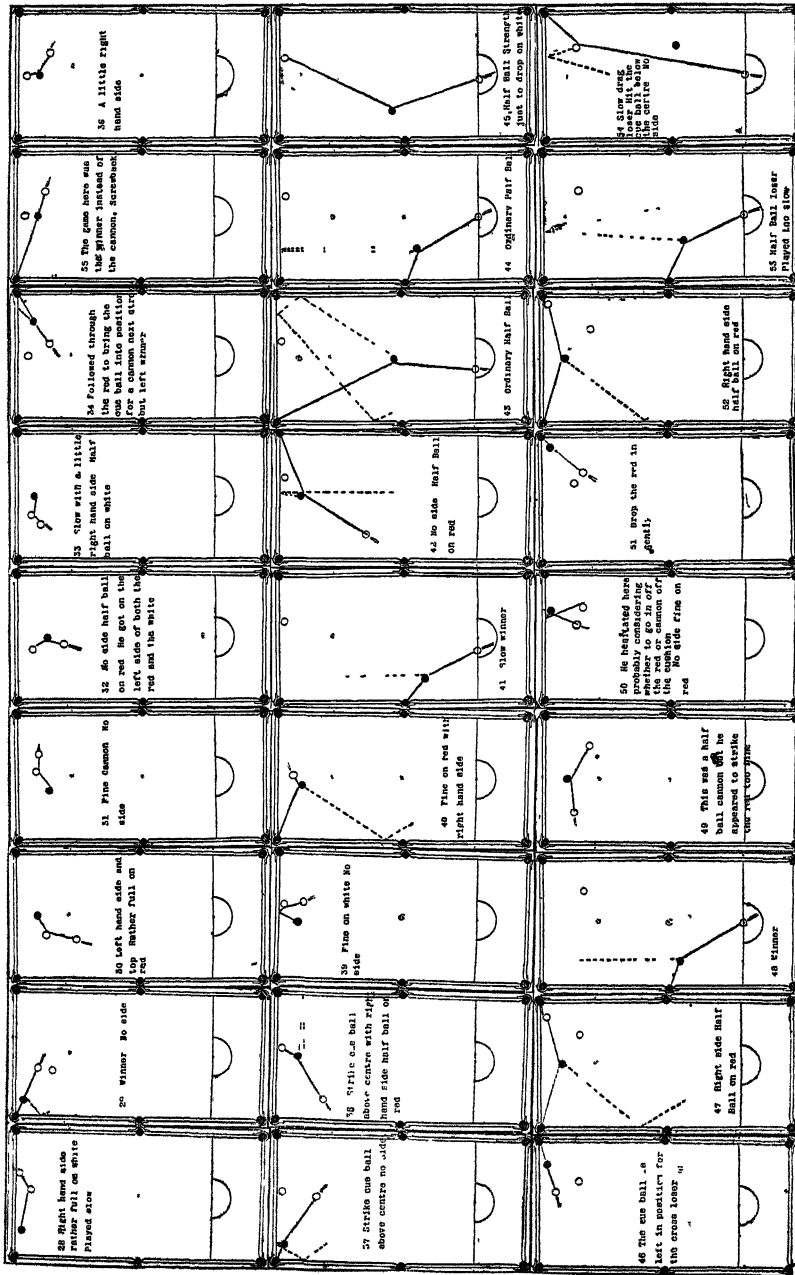




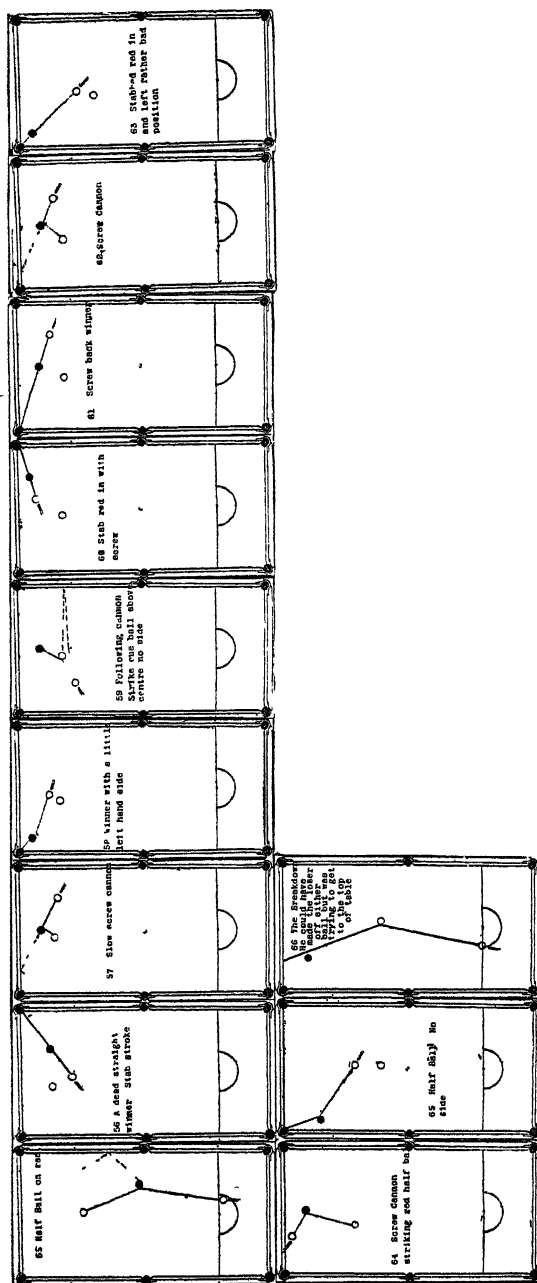
A BREAK  
OF 165 BY CHARLES DAWSON.

THIS break was made on the afternoon of Thursday, March 30th, 1899, in the course of the great match with John Roberts, elsewhere referred to as "The Match of the Century."





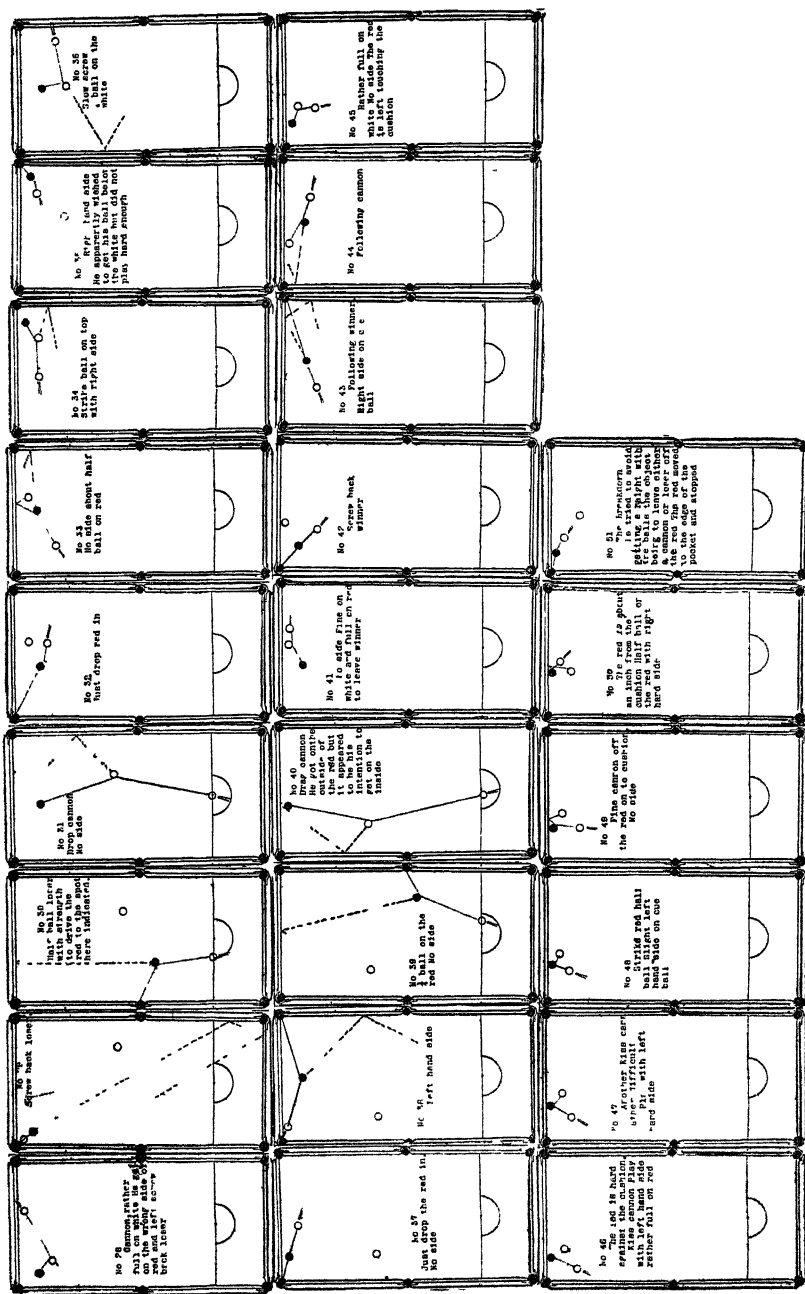




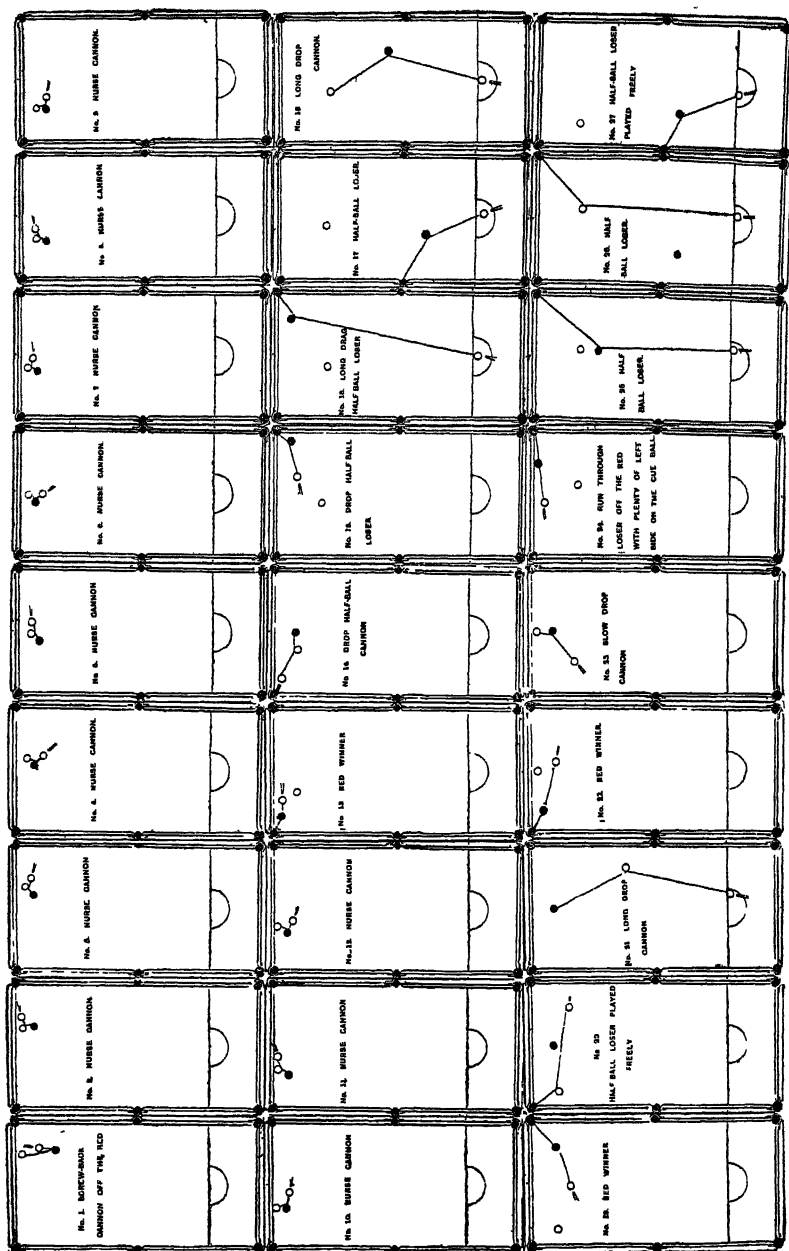
A BREAK  
OF 125 BY H. W. STEVENSON.

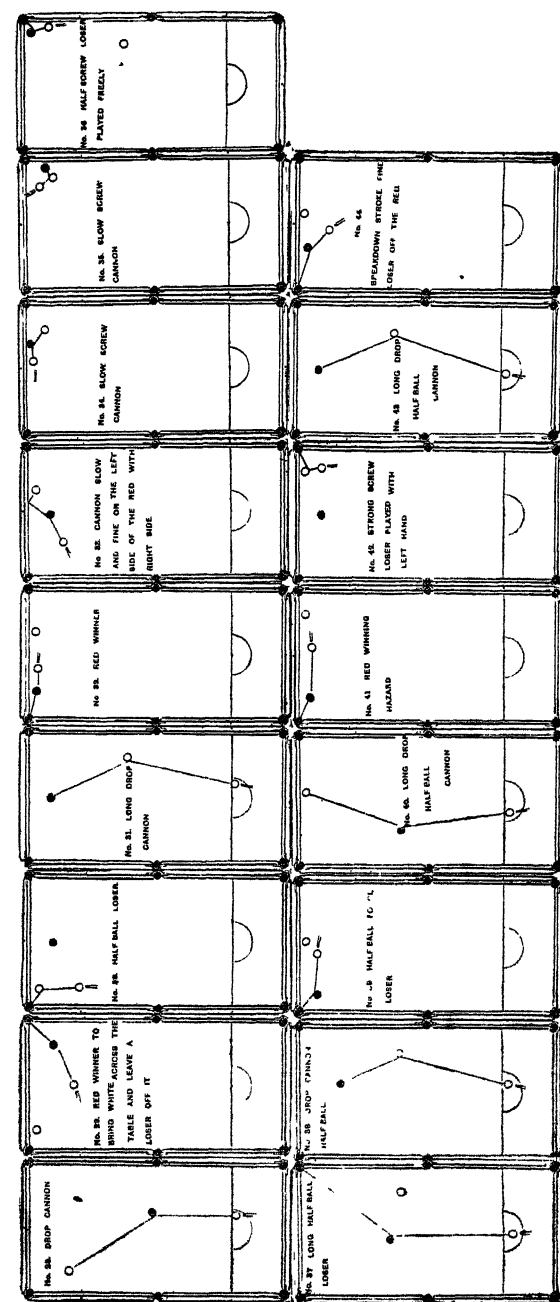
THIS break was made in the course of a match with John Roberts, at the Egyptian Hall, with bonzoline balls. The breakdown came when the player was apparently well set for a very large break, and shows what simple strokes often put an end to professional breaks. In this case the ball stopped right on the very brink of the pocket.



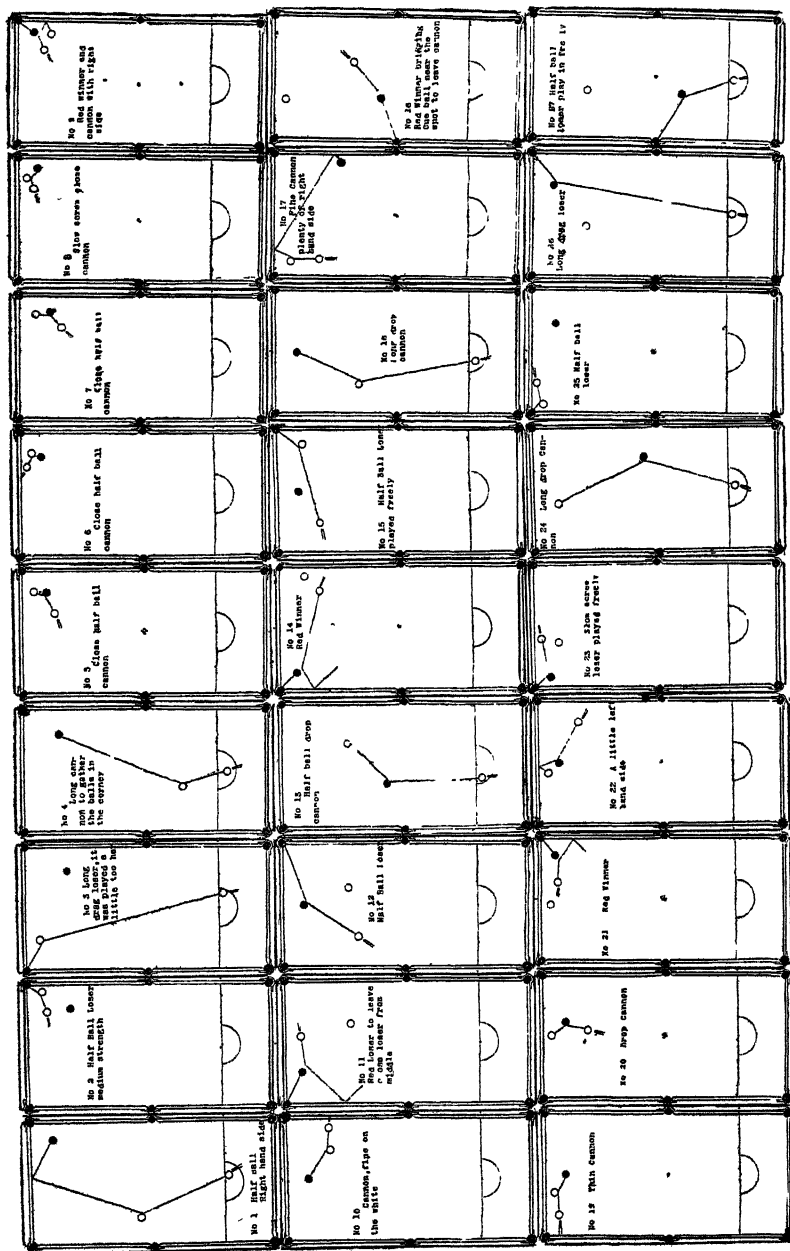


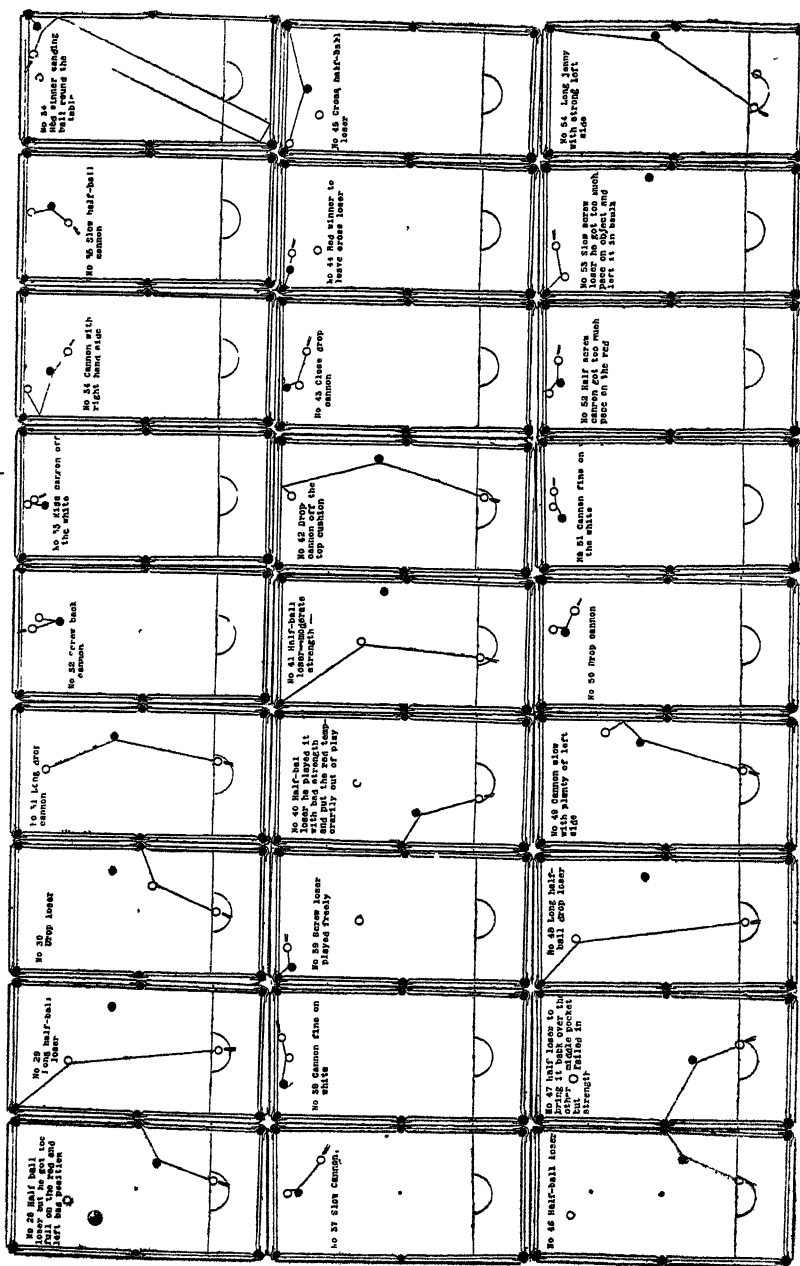
# BREAK BY W. SPILLER.



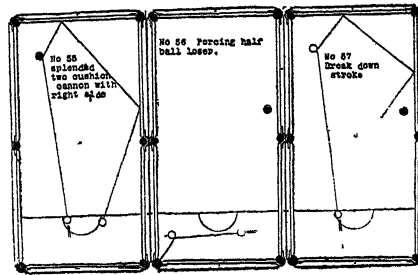


# BREAK BY W. OSBORNE.

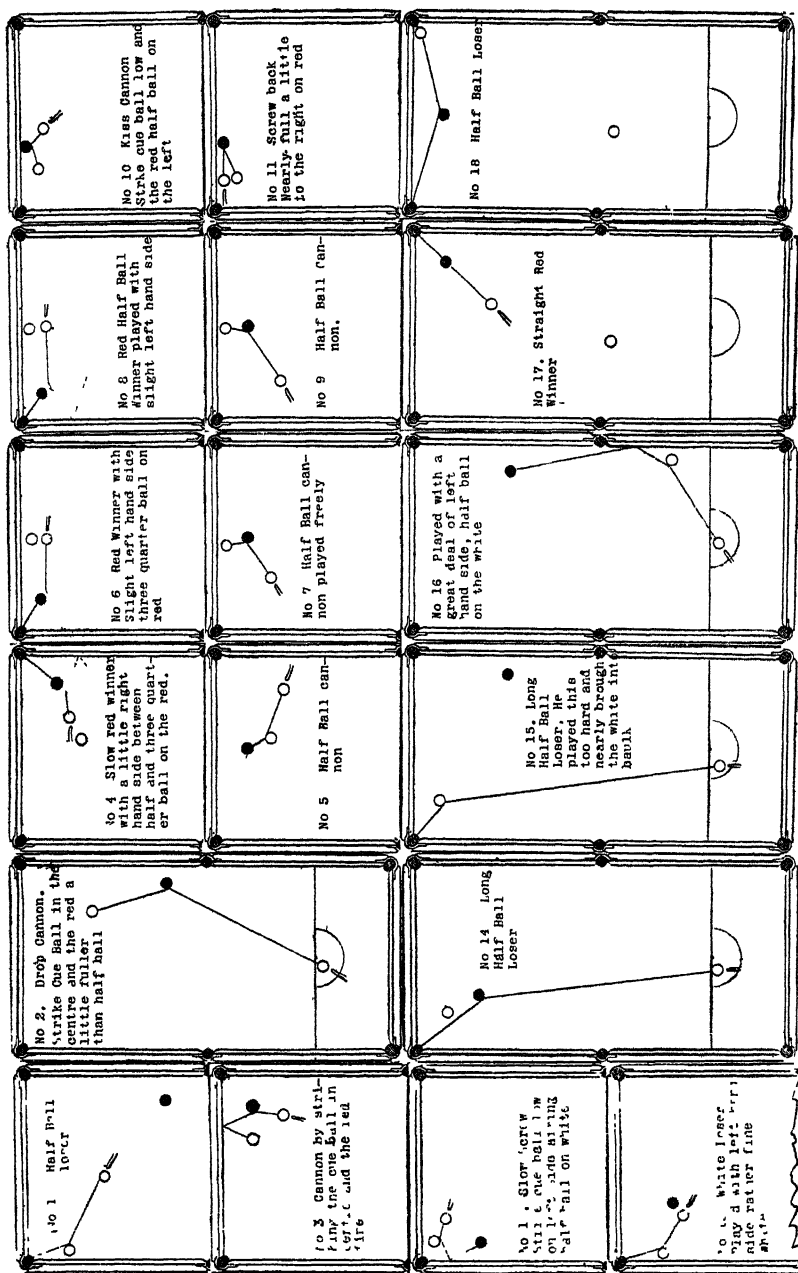


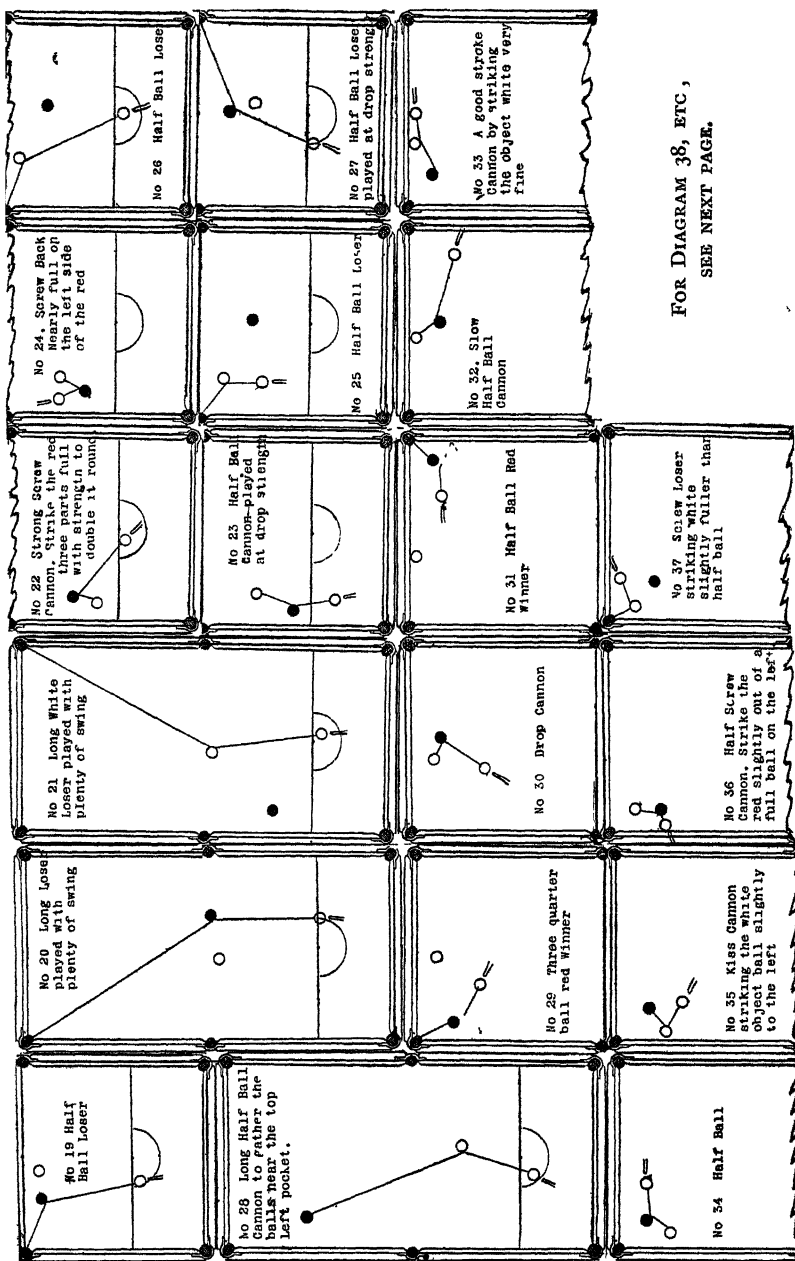




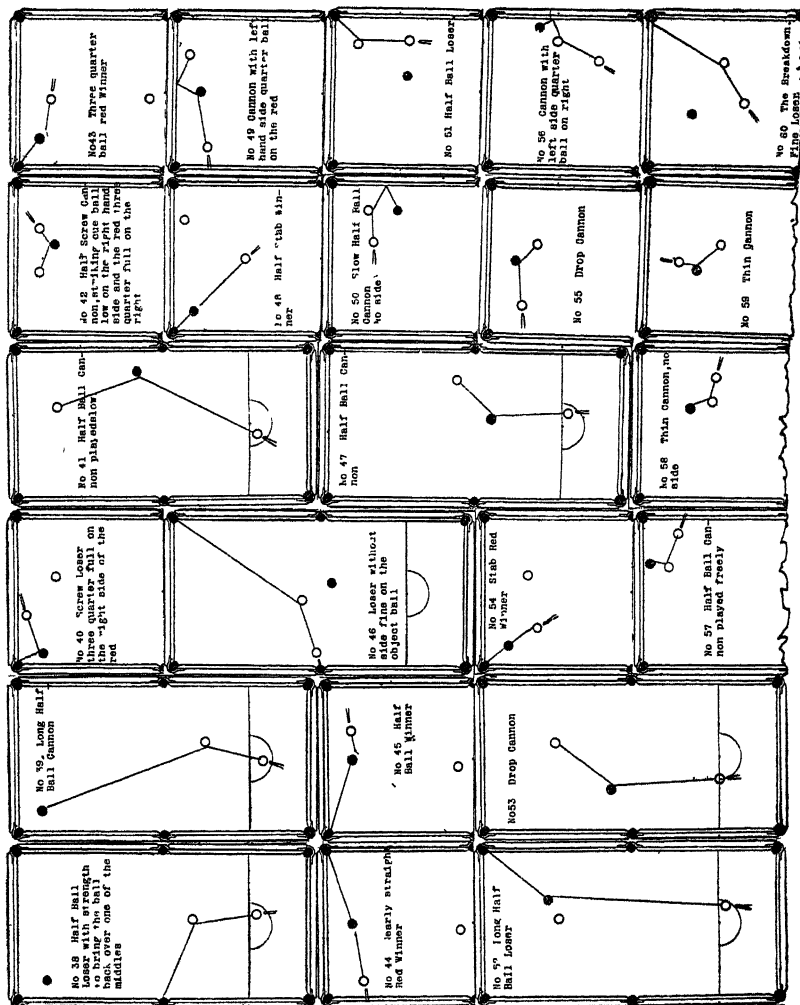


# BREAK BY F. BATEMAN.





FOR DIAGRAM 38, ETC.,  
SEE NEXT PAGE.



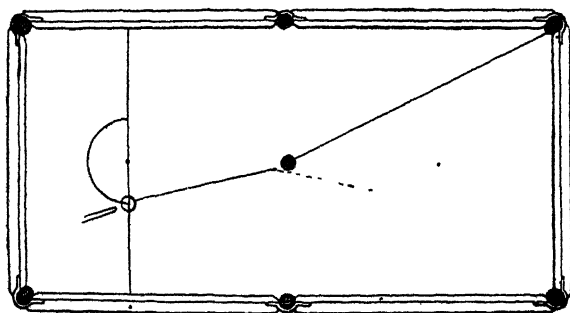
## A BILLIARD "PATIENCE" GAME.

THIS will be found excellent practice in winning hazards, and may serve to while away many a half-hour when otherwise the right hand might be playing the left. The idea of the game is extremely simple. The red is spotted in the centre, and the object of the player is to hole it in each of the pockets in consecutive order with the fewest strokes possible. It is customary to try for the left-hand top pocket first, but any pocket may be selected for the opening stroke; the remaining pockets must be taken in their proper sequence. The first stroke is made from the D, and succeeding ones have to be taken from where the white ball comes to rest. When white runs in the next stroke has to be taken from the D.

The first set of diagrams shows the round completed in ten strokes by Mr. J. S. Stafford, a young amateur, and the second set is by W. Mitchell, the well-known professional, who makes the six winners in seven strokes.

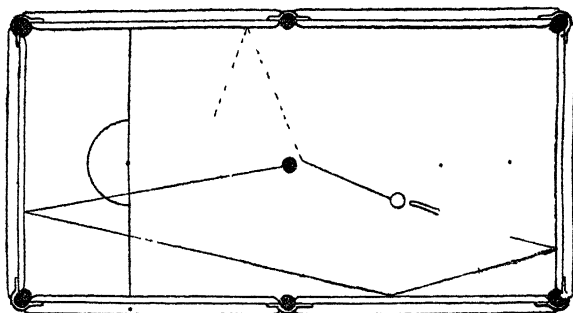
### SET I.

#### STROKE I.



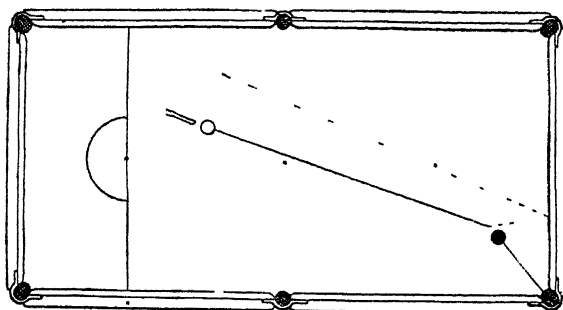
Holed red first shot.

STROKE 2.



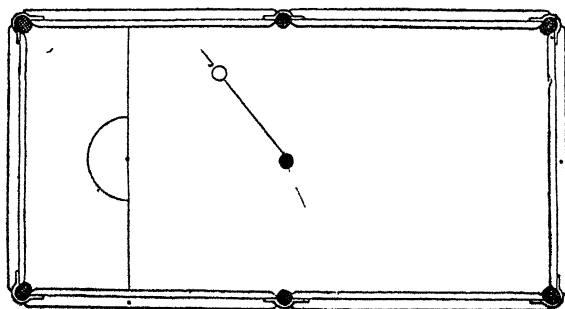
Double red down and up table, employing right-hand side to check ball off cushion.

STROKE 3.



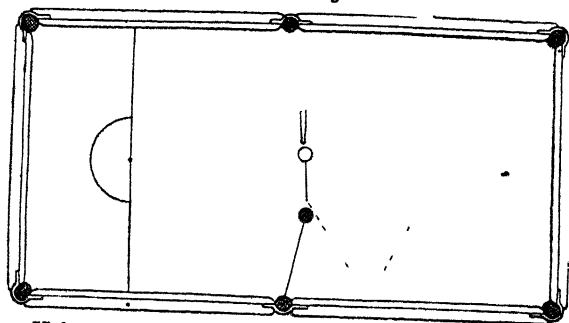
Cut red in with fine stroke and come off top cushion for position to obtain position for No. 3 pocket.

STROKE 4.



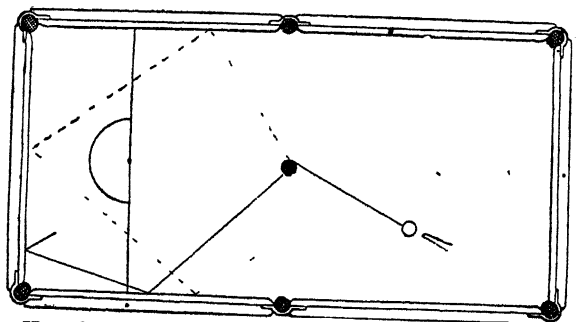
Dribble up to red very slowly to leave position to shop next stroke.

## STROKE 5.



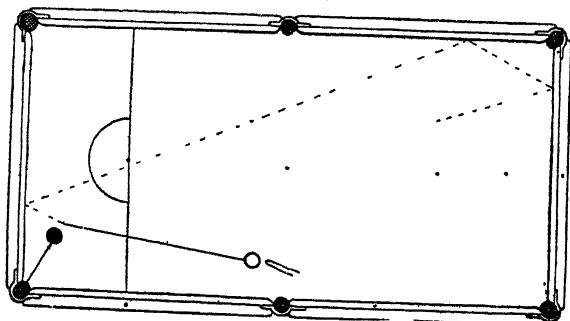
Hole red and attempt position for No. 4 pocket off right side cushion.

## STROKE 6.



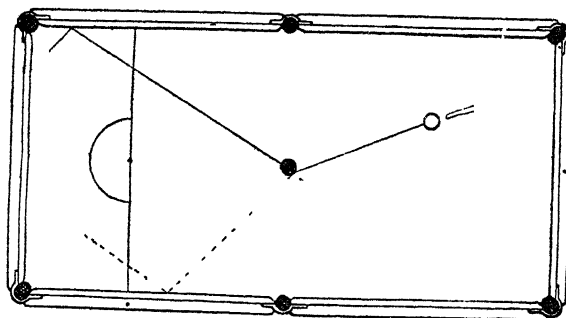
Here the object was to leave the white near the side cushion in baulk, with the red over the pocket, but the object ball was cut too fine.

## STROKE 7.



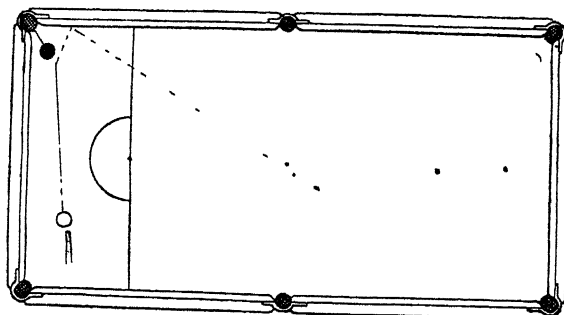
The red was pocketed and position for pocket attempted, but not sufficient strength employed.

## STROKE 8.



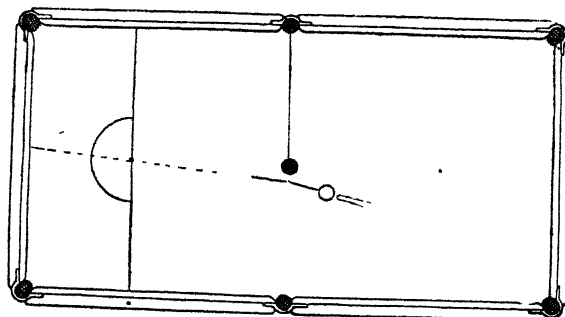
Position only played for, leaving the hazard for next stroke.

## STROKE 9.



Hazard, and attempt to get position for No. 6 pocket, but too much right-hand side employed.

## STROKE 10.

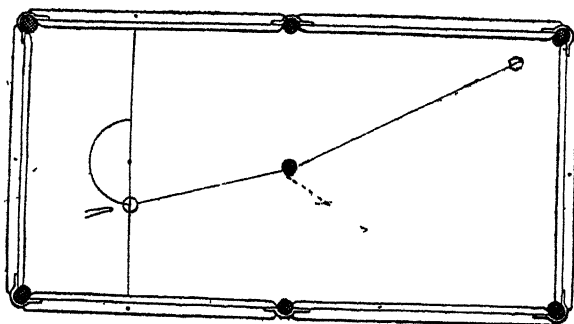


A very fine cut, which luckily "came off."

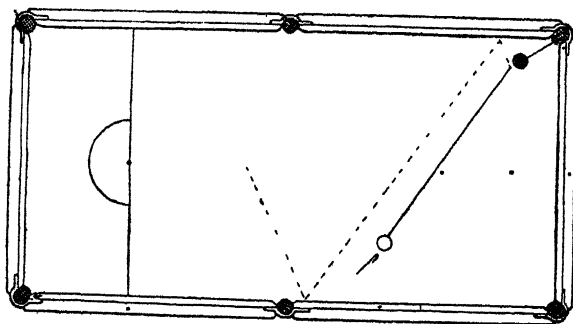


## SET II.

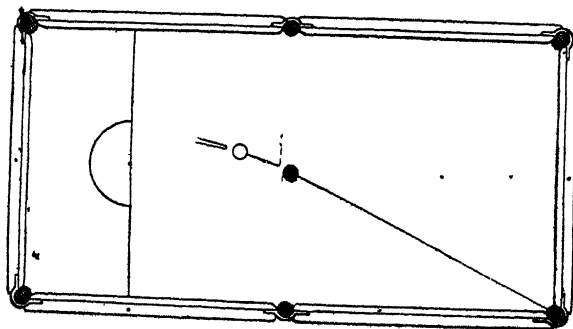
## STROKE 1.



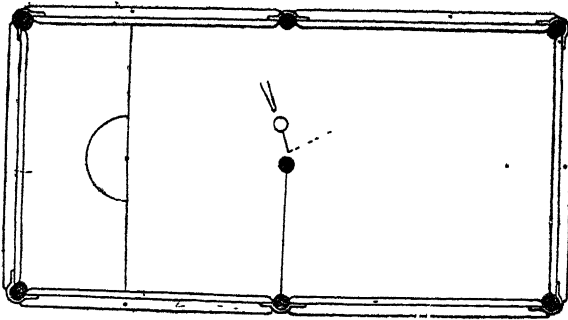
## STROKE 2.



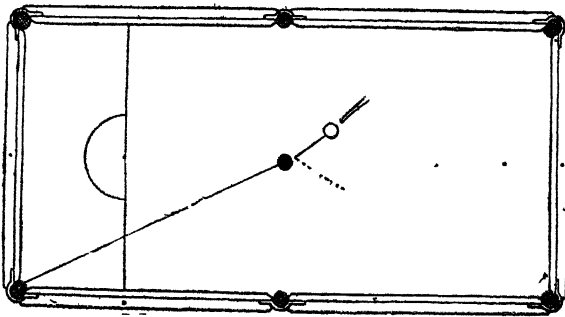
## STROKE 3.



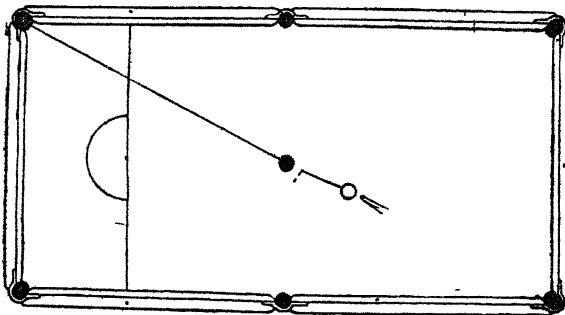
STROKE 4.



STROKE 5.



STROKE 6.





## CELEBRATED MATCHES



## THE CHAMPIONSHIP.

ALTHOUGH Edwin (he was more generally called Jonathan) Kentfield of Brighton was the titular champion of billiards for many years, and the elder John Roberts assumed the designation on Kentfield refusing to play him, and held it for more than twenty years, there had never been a match for the championship before February 11th, 1870, when John Roberts, senr, was beaten by young William Cook. The rules under which this and succeeding championship matches were played were drawn up by a committee of players selected from those who were deemed likely to compete for the title, and the championship trophy, which was in the end won outright by John Roberts the younger, was subscribed for by the three foremost firms engaged in the manufacture of billiard tables.

Full reports of the sixteen contests which took place for the championship are not to be found anywhere in a collected form, and as they make interesting reading for billiard players, and are, moreover, useful for purposes of reference, no excuse is necessary for their reproduction here. They are given exactly as they originally appeared, with a few trifling exceptions where repetition and introductory matter have been omitted.

### RULES FOR CHAMPIONSHIP MATCHES.

At a meeting at Bennett's Rooms of the players likely to take part in championship matches, J. Roberts (the champion) in the chair, it was agreed: Firstly, that in future all tables to be played on by competitors for the championship shall be supplied by Messrs. Burroughes and Watts, Thurston and Company, or Cox and Yeman, the choice to be determined by drawing lots each time a match takes place; the draw to take place at the *Sportsman* office. That the pockets be 3 in. wide at the fall from the slate, that the "spot" be  $12\frac{1}{2}$  in. from the face of the cushion, and that the balls be  $2\frac{1}{8}$  in. in diameter, the pocket opening to be made from a model to be shown within a month at the *Sportsman* office. Messrs. Burroughes and Watts, Cox and Yeman, and Thurston and Company each agree to give £50, to be invested in a piece of plate emblematic of billiards, the trophy to be held five years consecutively by any player, and then to become the actual property of the holder; two months' notice to be given prior to each match, which shall be for not less than £100 a side. Any holder not being the actual winner to receive a gold medal as a token of his having held the championship. The rules to be those published in the *Sportsman* on January 11th, 1870.

That all tables be set up at the expense of the maker whose table is chosen, and that receipts and expenses of the matches be divided by the two players. That the trophy be held by the editor of the *Sportsman*, and given up to the holder on a sufficient guarantee. That prior to each match the two players must agree to a referee, and in the event of their not agreeing, the editor of the *Sportsman* to appoint a referee. That the decision of the referee be final and binding in all cases, and that he have power to disqualify any player misconducting himself during the game

BURROUGHS AND WATTS,  
COX AND YEMAN,  
THURSTON AND CO.,

(Witness) HENRY BUCK.

JOHN ROBERTS (Champion),  
WILLIAM COOK,  
JOSEPH BENNETT,  
THOMAS MORRIS,  
JOHN BENNETT.

### CHAMPIONSHIP RULES OF THE GAME OF BILLIARDS.

1. The choice of balls and order of play shall, unless mutually agreed upon by the two players, be determined by stringing, and the striker whose ball stops nearest the lowest cushion, after being forced from baulk up the table, may take which ball he likes and play, or direct his opponent to play first, as he may deem expedient.

2. The red ball shall, at the opening of every game, be placed on the top spot, and replaced after being pocketed or forced off the table, or whenever the balls are broken.

3. Whoever breaks the ball must play out of baulk, though it is not necessary that he should strike the red ball.

4. The game shall be adjudged in favour of whoever first scores the number of points agreed on, when the marker shall call "game"; or it shall be given against whoever, after having once commenced, shall neglect or refuse to continue when called upon by his opponent to play.

[The scores are counted as below.]

5. A two stroke is made by pocketing an opponent's ball, or by pocketing the striker's ball off his opponent's, or by making a cannon; to effect which the striker must cause his ball to strike both the others.

6. A three stroke is made by pocketing the red ball, or by pocketing the striker's ball off the red.

7. A four stroke may be made by pocketing the white and spot-white balls, or by making a cannon and pocketing an opponent's ball, or by making a cannon and pocketing the striker's ball, the non-striker's ball having been first hit.

8. A five stroke may be made by scoring a cannon and pocketing the red ball, or by a cannon and pocketing the striker's ball after having struck the red ball first.

9. To effect a six stroke, the red ball must be struck first, and the striker's and the red ball pocketed, or by a cannon off an opponent's ball on to the red and pocketing the two white balls.

10. A seven stroke is made by striking an opponent's ball first, pocketing it, making a cannon, and pocketing the red also, or by making a cannon and pocketing the red and an opponent's ball, or by playing at an opponent's ball first and pocketing all the balls without making a cannon.

11. An eight stroke is made by striking the red ball first, pocketing it, making a cannon, and pocketing the striker's ball, or by hitting the red first and pocketing all the balls without making a cannon
12. A nine stroke is made by striking an opponent's ball first, making a cannon, and pocketing all the balls
13. A ten stroke is made by striking the red ball first, making a cannon, and pocketing all the balls.
14. If a striker scores by his stroke he continues until he ceases to make any points, when his opponent follows on
15. If when moving the cue backwards and forwards, and prior to a stroke, it touches and moves the ball, the ball must be replaced to the satisfaction of an adversary, otherwise it is a foul stroke; but if the player strikes and grazes any part of the ball with any part of the cue it must be considered a stroke, and the opponent follows on.
16. If a ball rebounds from the table and is prevented in any way or by any object except the cushion from falling to the ground, or if it lodges on a cushion and remains there, it shall be considered off the table, unless it is the red, which must be spotted
17. A ball on the brink of the pocket need not be "challenged"; if it ceases running and remains stationary, then falls in, it must be replaced, and the score thus made does not count.
18. Any ball or balls behind the baulk line, or resting exactly upon the line, are not playable if the striker be in baulk, and he must play out of baulk before hitting another baulk
19. Misses may be given with the point or butt of the cue, and shall count one for each against the player; or if the player strike his ball with the cue more than once a penalty shall be enforced, and the non-striker may oblige him to play again, or may call on the marker to place the ball at the point it reached or would have reached when struck first.
20. Foul strokes do not score to the player, who must allow his opponent to follow on. They are made thus: By striking a ball twice with the cue; by touching with the hand, ball, or cue, an opponent's or the red ball, by playing with the wrong ball, by lifting both feet from the floor when playing, by playing at the striker's own ball, and displacing it ever so little (except) whilst taking aim, when it shall be replaced, and he shall play (again)
21. The penalty for a foul stroke is losing the lead, and in case of a score an opponent must have the red ball spotted, and himself break the balls, when the player who made the foul must follow suit, both playing from the D. If the foul is not claimed the player continues to score if he can
22. After being pocketed or forced off the table, the red ball must be spotted on the top spot, but if that is occupied by another ball the red must be placed on the centre spot between the middle pockets.
23. If in taking aim the player moves his ball and causes it to strike another, even without intending to make a stroke, a foul stroke may be claimed by an adversary.
24. If a player fail to hit another ball, it counts one to his opponent; but if by the same stroke the player's ball is forced over the table or into any pocket it counts three to his opponent
25. Forcing the ball off the table either before or after a score causes a striker to gain nothing by the stroke.



26. In the event of either player using his opponent's ball and scoring, the red must be spotted and the balls broken again by the non-striker; but if no score is made the next player may take his choice of balls, and continue to use the ball he so chooses to the end of the game. No penalty, however, attaches in either case unless the mistake be discovered before the next stroke

27. No person, except an opponent, has a right to tell the player that he is using the wrong ball, or to inform the non-striker that his opponent has used the wrong ball; and if the opponent does not see the striker use the wrong ball, or, seeing him, does not claim the penalty, the marker is bound to score any points made to the striker.

28. Should the striker in playing up the table on a ball or balls in baulk, either by accident or design, strike one of them without first going out of baulk, his opponent may have the balls replaced, score a miss, and follow on, or may cause the striker to play again, or may claim a foul, and have the red spotted and the balls broken again.

29. The striker when in hand may not play at a cushion within the baulk (except by going first up the table) so as to hit balls that are within or without the line.

30. If in hand, and in the act of playing, the striker shall move his ball with insufficient strength to take it out of baulk, it shall be counted as a miss to the opponent, who, however, may oblige him to replace his ball and play again.

31. If in playing a pushing stroke the striker pushes more than once it is unfair, and any score he may make does not count. His opponent follows by breaking the balls.

32. If in the act of drawing back his cue the striker knocks the ball into a pocket, it counts three to the opponent, and is reckoned a stroke.

33. If a foul stroke be made whilst giving a miss the adversary may enforce the penalty or claim the miss, but he cannot do both.

34. If either player take up a ball, unless by consent, the adversary may have it replaced, or may have the balls broken, but if any other person touches or takes up a ball it must be replaced by the marker as nearly as possible.

35. If, after striking, the player or his opponent should by any means obstruct or hasten the speed of any ball, it is at the opponent's or player's option to have them replaced, or to break the balls.

36. No player is allowed to receive, nor any bystander to offer, advice on the game; but should any person be appealed to by the marker or either player, he has a right to offer an opinion; or if a spectator sees the game wrongly marked he may call out, but he must do so prior to another stroke.

37. The marker shall act as umpire, but any question may be referred by either player to the company, the opinion of the majority of whom shall be acted upon.

## MATCHES FOR THE CHAMPIONSHIP.

### FIRST MATCH.

W COOK *v.* JOHN ROBERTS, SEN.

Played at St James's Hall, February 11th, 1870.

1,200 up Cook won by 117 points.

(From "*Bell's Life in London*")

THE conditions of the present match were that John Roberts, sen., should play W. Cook, jun., a game, the best of 1,200 points, for £100 a side and Championship cup, a splendid piece of plate manufactured by Benson and Company, and presented by Messrs. Cox and Yeman, Burroughes and Watts, and Thurston and Company, the well-known billiard table makers. The above-mentioned trophy is a beautiful vase, designed especially for this occasion, value £120, of novel form, and surmounted by the John of Bologna figure of Mercury. On each side of the body sits a figure of Victory or Fame, extending a laurel wreath with one hand, and offering a Maltese cross with the other. The body is richly embossed all over with moresque ornaments. On one is a *bas relief* in repoussé work of a billiard-room, table, players, and accessories, and a shield on the other side bears a suitable inscription. The whole is enriched by parcel gilding and furnishing, and the vase stands on an ebony pedestal, the height being about 2 feet 6 inches. Half a dozen gold enamelled Maltese crosses, at a cost of £5 each, were also manufactured, one of which will be given to every holder of the championship. It would be wearisome to our readers were we to give the entire performances of either or both men, and we will therefore content ourselves with a few of their greatest feats.

John Roberts, it may be mentioned, was born on the 15th of June, 1823, at Liverpool, and is therefore in his forty-seventh year. He first showed his liking for the game at the early age of nine, but passing over his younger years, we will commence at Friday, October 18th, 1850, when conceding 100 points start he beat Starke, the American, by 221 in 1,000; his other matches of note resulting as follow.—

On October 18th, beaten by Starke (who received 1,500 points in 3,000) by 200; beat C. Hughes by 445 in 1,000, Hughes receiving 300 start, on April 10th, 1861, beat C. Hughes by 180, giving 375 points in 1,000, on May 17th, 1863; beat W. Dufton by 211, allowing 400 in 1,000, on June 14th, 1864; beaten by Bowles by 19, Roberts conceding 300 in 1,000, on January 15th, 1864; beaten by Moss, who received 500 in 1,000, on January 19th, 1864; beat C. Hughes by 234, allowing 350 in 1,000, on March 5th, 1864; beat W. Dufton by 291, giving 350 in 1,000, on May 20th, 1864. Roberts' longest breaks have been 188 (55 spots),

against Herst, at Glasgow, in 1858; 240, including 102 consecutive cannons, against Bowles, at Oxford, in 1861, 346 (104 consecutive hazards), against Dufton, at Saville House, in March, 1862, 256 (78 spots), at Huddersfield, Yorkshire, in January, 1867. The foregoing scores show that the old 'un is also a good spot player; and although the fact is disputed, nevertheless Mr. Lee Birch, of the Union Club, Manchester, is credited with having been his tutor in this particular stroke.

Cook was born on June 15th, 1849, and is consequently barely of age, having been a child of only two years when the present opponent first assumed the title of champion. They have both met some score of times, but the young 'un has always had a good start, and generally won. In 1868 we find him gradually progressing to the top of the tree, and since his performances are legion, we shall limit ourselves to those in which he has made any noteworthy breaks in 1869, viz.: Beat Herst, at Glasgow, on January 30th, making a break of 180 (40 spots), repeating his victory the next day, his score including a break of 156 (46 spots). Shortly after we find him at Birmingham, making 187 (56 spots) in a match with J. Bennett; and again on March 22nd he defeated the same player at Kennington, scoring at one essay 128 (40 spots). On May 10th, at West Kensington, in a match with the champion, he put together 116 (27 spots); and the following day scored 102 (24 spots) at Kennington. Taking a wide margin, we now come to October, during which month he gave Moss 350 in 1,000, and won by 309, four breaks alone counting 710; he made 361 (112 spots) on October 26th, against J. Roberts, jun., at Manchester, was beaten by the same player in same place, although he made 329 in one break; made 243 (78 spots) and 311 (99 spots) also ere he returned from his exhibitions at Manchester with the eldest son of the champion. On November 6th he made 126 when playing against J. Bawell, at Manchester (the spot being barred); 204 against Kilkenny, at Halifax, on November 10th, and shortly after gave the latter player 300, and by the aid of a 341 break (102 spots) won. On November 12th, in a match with J. Roberts, jun., he got together 311 (99 spots), and on the 26th made 103 (29 spots) against Mills, at Sheffield, winding up the month with 171 (47 spots) against North at the same town. In December he made the largest break on record, and also his greatest number of consecutive spot hazards, the former in a match with young Roberts, on the 28th, at Nottingham, when he made 394 (112 spots), and the latter at Purcell's rooms, when he scored 388 by 119 consecutive spots in a match against J. Bennett, on December 16th; in addition to which he made 133 (28 spots) against Dufton, at the Crystal Palace, on the 6th; 249 (82 spots) against Bennett, at St James's Hall; 249 (75 spots) at Chatham, and 182 (42 spots) on the 14th, and 153 on the 22nd, both at Paddington, and against John Roberts, jun. During the present year Cook has been playing several days a week, both in London and the provinces.

Although after the match had been ratified many looked upon the result as a hollow affair for Cook, it nevertheless began at the outset to excite the most lively interest, especially in turf circles, and so brisk was the demand for tickets, of which 500 were usually issued at a £1 each, that the players eventually engaged the large room at St. James's Hall. They were thus enabled to find accommodation for another 300, and yet from the commencement of the week no tickets have been available from the advertised sources, and enterprising speculators, who bought up two or three dozen with the view of making a profit, were enabled to command war prices. In fact, it no sooner oozed out that the Prince of Wales

would witness the match than the tickets, even for the back seats, 10s 100 per cent in value, and, incredible as it may seem, we saw £5 given yesterday for a place in the front row commanding an uninterrupted view of the spot hazard, while many similar instances have reached us. The earliest odds laid on Cook were 5 to 2; but after Roberts had cleverly vanquished Bennett at the Prince of Wales' Club, with the spot stroke barred, the price fell to 9 to 4, and 6 to 4 was accepted in some quarters, at the beginning of the week, in consequence of Cook having come off second best in more than one of his late exhibition matches. Constant travelling, however, alone caused the temporary decadence in play, and such brilliant execution did Cook show on Thursday at the Victoria Club in three games of 500 up, conceding an accomplished amateur 150 points, that his warmer partisans were loud in his praises, and once more the betting ruled at 2 to 1 against Roberts. With the praiseworthy object of leaving no stone unturned to retain his position as champion cueist, the latter has taken the greatest care of himself since the signing of articles, and he certainly acted wisely in taking up his quarters for a month at Kennington Oval.

The plan of the hall was left to the entire superintendence of Mr. Austin, of the booking office, and although, with 800 people anxious to obtain the clearest view of the billiard table, some were dissatisfied with their seats, the arrangements could scarcely have been excelled. From seven o'clock the hall began to fill, and as the minutes drew nigh for the fixed hour of commencement (8) seats were taken with a really astonishing absence of confusion. When the opponents made their appearance at 8.15 they were received with some enthusiastic cheering, which had barely ceased before Dufton commenced a brief address, and, although some portion of his remarks tickled the risible faculties of the audience, his primary objects were to announce an interval of a quarter of an hour at the completion of the sixth hundred, and to remind the gentlemen of the difficulty likely to arise in the regaining of seats. The company, the like of which had never been seen previously in this or any other country, included the *élite* of town society, and a great majority of the leading turf bookmakers. Joseph Bennett having been readily agreed to by both parties as referee, the balls were broke at 8.27, previous to which one of the leviathans of the ring offered to take 200 to 100 that no one named the winner, and it was not until the game had opened that we saw "two ponies" laid by one of Cook's famous admirers. Whether from the material difference in the size of the pockets, or any anxiety which either man might easily feel at such a critical period, both opened the ball with unusual tameness, and thus neither had reached his first fifty when the Prince of Wales quietly took possession of his box at half-past eight punctually. The Heir Apparent was attended by Colonel Keppel, and the other occupants of the Royal box were the Earl of Leicester, Mr. Sumner, Mr. G. Russell, Hon. Oliver Montagu, and Hon. Mr. Arundel. Lord Dudley, Colonel Farquharson, of Innes, and a host of other notabilities were also present.

With at least two-thirds of the company smoking, the atmosphere soon became painfully close and oppressive; and what with the anxiety for her youthful husband's victory, to say nothing of the stifling temperature, Mrs. Cook, who sat in the space railed off for the families of representatives, must have experienced, we think, a very trying time.

## THE GAME.

At 27 minutes past 8, the balls having been previously weighed by Mr. Cox, the players strung for break, the event being gained by Cook, who, of course, sent his opponent to the scratch, and, after a double miss on both sides, the champion, by a succession of all-round play, including some magnificent cannons, made 22 ere he broke down at a red loser in the left-hand middle pocket. Cook did not score, and his opponent following with a similar result, the former made 8, but failed at a red loser, and let Roberts in. The latter now obtained 5, after which the young 'un, commencing with a red loser, ran up a pretty 19. Roberts made 3, but failed to score a cannon, his opponent going on without a result; a cannon was the champion's next contribution, and again Cook failed to add to his score. Roberts now put together a brilliant 19, when he missed a screw cannon; and his opponent, pulling himself together, obtained position for the spot, but, unfortunately, at his second essay made a foul stroke, the rest coming in contact with his opponent's ball. Roberts, however, only made 3, and now Cook got in with an all-round break of 37, including seven successive cannons; and the score being now—Roberts, 58; Cook, 94. The former made 7, and his opponent 12, whereby he obtained his first 100 in 18 minutes. Roberts failed to bring off a red loser, and Cook, once more getting in, put together a carefully-played 18 ere he came to grief at a white loser in the top right-hand pocket. Roberts now pulled up with a splendid break of 20, including some brilliant red losing hazards, and then he let Cook in, who only managed a cannon. Roberts, although he made a cannon which fairly brought down the house, could do no more, and a succession of non-scoring took place ere Cook got in again, when, having made a red loser, he obtained position for the spot, but broke down at the sixth, leaving the red right over the pocket. Roberts, however, failed to make a cannon, and there was now a slight pause in the game. With the score Cook, 151; Roberts, 88, the latter made a careful 16 ere he failed at a double event—red winner and a cannon. Cook only made 7, when he missed a red winner, leaving the ball on the brink of the pocket. Roberts obtained 9 by three red losers, and then broke down at a cannon, the game being called—Cook, 158; Roberts, 113. The former now run up 17 by a succession of cannons, breaking down at the seventh, and Roberts added 7, when he came to grief at a cannon. The young 'un did not score, and Roberts, commencing with a white loser, made a splendid cannon, bringing the red out of baulk, but broke down at his next stroke. Cook, having made half a score, failed at a red loser, leaving his own ball close on the bottom right-hand pocket; Roberts potted his opponent, and played for double baulk, but, fluking the red, gave a miss. Cook did not add anything, and Roberts having made half a score, the younger player obtained 9, and the game was called—Roberts, 140; Cook, 199. The veteran, by some good all-round cannons, 150, obtained position for the spot, but only gained the stroke twice; he, however, followed on with a cannon, and, leaving the red on the pocket, scored a red winner, and missed a cannon. Again there was a lull in the game, but the score having reached to Cook, 203; Roberts, 171, the former by some very pretty but careful hazards ran up 21, but failing, let in the veteran: the latter, however, only obtained two hazards, and Cook then put together 9. Roberts then, having made 7, potted his opponent, and gave a miss. With the game Roberts, 187; Cook, 241, the former went on and made 34 (including three five strokes

and five spots), when he broke down at a red winner and cannon, leaving the red over the top right-hand pocket. Cook, however, attempted a white loser and failed, the play again falling off a bit. The score being Roberts, 229; Cook, 249, the former got together a brilliant 16, breaking down at a cannon when only two points behind Cook, who, however, went away again with a very pretty and careful 38, including some brilliant red loses, each of which was received with great applause by the spectators. Safety was now the order of the day, nothing being done until the game was called—Roberts, 259; Cook, 290, when the latter broke down at a red loser. Roberts now ran up 19 in his old style ere he let Cook in; commencing with a brilliant cannon, the latter increased his score by 24, and came to grief at the spot. Roberts did not score, and Cook only made a cannon; after which the veteran made 9, breaking down at his third spot, his opponent, after scoring a winning hazard and gaining position for the spot, doing the same. The champion only made 5 when he came to grief, and leaving the balls, the younger player took advantage of his opponent, making 22, gained by all-round play, ere he failed to score a red loser. Both players having failed to score anything, Roberts potted his opponent's ball, but, playing carelessly for the double baulk, left both balls out. Neither again scored, and Cook, going on, ran up 16 ere he muddled a cannon in the top left-hand corner, the score being—Roberts, 294; Cook, 369. The old 'un now got together a finely-played 30, when he failed at his second spot, and his opponent, commencing with a red loser, answered to the calls of his supporters with a loudly-applauded and careful 23, when he failed at a white loser, leaving the white on the brink of the top left-hand pocket. Roberts potted his opponent, and left a double baulk. Cook did not score, and the champion brought down the house with a magnificent cannon. Again Cook added nothing, after which Roberts increased his numbers by a fine all-round 14 ere he came to grief at a cannon. The game being called—Roberts, 350; Cook, 394, the latter put together 28 ere he had hard lines with a cannon, missing it by a hair's breadth. A pretty and well-turned 28 was the champion's next contribution, when he failed at the spot hazard, leaving the red over the left-hand pocket. Cook now led off with a red winner, and augmented his score by 20 ere he broke down at a red winner in the right-hand middle pocket. Roberts following, put together 20, and accidentally potting the white attempted the double baulk, but left the red out, and, Cook not scoring, the veteran added another 13, when he let his opponent in. The latter, however, missed a cannon by a hair's breadth, and the champion having made 6, a non-score on both sides followed. Cook now made 7, and failed to bring off the spot, leaving the red hanging on the brink of the right-hand pocket. Roberts followed with half a score, and a pause in the play occurred, both players repeatedly missing some very near things. With the score Cook, 456; Roberts, 433, the former made 9 and left a double baulk, and, Roberts not scoring, supplemented it with another 13, missing his second spot. The champion now got in with 33 (seven successive cannons), and, Cook not scoring, brought down the house with a fine red winner and cannon, but failed at a cannon immediately afterwards. Small scores from both brought the totals up to—Cook, 487; Roberts, 463. The latter made 8, followed by one less from his opponent, who made a very mild attempt at a spot. The veteran now, by the aid of 22, got up to within 2 of Cook and left a double baulk, and, the latter giving a miss, made 3 and took the lead. At this point 600 to 400 would have been taken in several places, but Cook,

getting in once more, again took foremost place with a break of 14, and a 7 from Roberts and a miss from both brought the score up to—Cook, 509, Roberts, 504. An 8 from Cook and 12 from the veteran were next called, and the latter having left the balls safe, Cook gave a miss, the marker amidst great excitement calling the game at 517 all. A non-score from Roberts and a cannon from Cook were followed by a non-contribution from the old 'un. Cook then made 7, and, his opponent again missing, brought down the house with two cannons and again let Roberts in. The latter, however, only made 3, and Cook put together a very pretty and useful 49, finishing up with an easily made miss in baulk. Roberts did not score, and the younger man then ran up another all-round 42, and, the time being 10.47, and game, Roberts, 521; Cook, 625, an adjournment was made for the interval.

At 11.17 play was resumed by Roberts, who, however, only made a cannon, followed by a four from Cook, who had laid lines with a cannon. After a 10 from Roberts, who left a double baulk, Cook made nothing, while a 3 from Roberts and a miss from Cook brought the score up to—Cook, 641; Roberts, 540. The latter did not score and Cook gave a miss, after which, his opponent again not making anything, the young 'un put together 18, failing at a red loser. Again Roberts made nothing, and Cook, having obtained 6, failed at a white loser, leaving his ball on the pocket. The champion put him down and missed a red winner; after which, Cook not scoring, he made a quiet 7 ere he let the young 'un in. The latter now had miserable luck with a cannon, and Roberts, just missing a white loser, once more failed to count. The champion then, by the aid of some brilliant cannons, made 17, and Cook, for the fourth time in succession, added nothing to his score. The next contribution was one of 8 from Roberts, who left a double baulk, and, Cook making a miss-cue, the old 'un got a red hazard and let the younger player in. Cook, by the aid of some brilliant cannons, ran up 27 ere he missed a white loser and let the champion in. The latter, who elicited a round of applause for a beautiful red winner, however, only made 11 when he just missed a cannon, and Cook made 7. Roberts did not score, and his opponent only added 4, after which the former obtained a careful 7, and missed a red loser in the top left-hand pocket. Cook started with a cannon, and, by the aid of some clever hazards and pretty cannons, put on 80 ere he came to grief at a red loser, the game being now—Cook, 785; Roberts, 600, and this the largest and best-played break of the evening. The champion only made 5 when he let Cook in, and the latter quickly put together a dozen, and gave a miss in baulk, followed by a splendid cannon from Roberts, who, however, had very bad luck with his next stroke (also a cannon), and Cook, getting in, carefully put together 18, when he missed a very difficult cannon, the white being covered. The veteran now increased his numbers by a score, and, after a non-score on both sides, Cook had a somewhat lucky white loser after laid lines with a cannon. Roberts then opened with a splendid cannon, but, after making 12, let Cook in, who, gaining position, made 23 (three spots), and, Roberts not scoring, added 16, and broke down at the spot. The game now being—Roberts, 640; Cook, 856, the former made a score, and, missing a white loser, Cook put on 5 and came to grief. A non-score from both players followed, and then the veteran made 16, including a fine 6, breaking down at a red loser. Cook, who for the last thirty minutes had been playing a studied and careful game, ran up 22 ere he failed at a red winner in the middle right-hand pocket, following after which the old 'un with pretty

play (his red hazards calling forth repeated applause) made 26, and Cook not scoring a difficult red loser, supplemented it with half a score ere he missed a cannon. Again Cook scored nothing, and the champion, by some all-round play, put on 17. For the third time Cook failed to score, and his opponent, following on, made 17, the score being—Cook, 883; Roberts, 746. After a non-score from each, repeated applause greeting a splendid red winner from Roberts, the latter got 24, and, after a white winner from Cook, added another 14. \*Cook did not score, and the veteran put on 12. A succession of poor breaks now took place until the game was called—Roberts, 804; Cook, 899; when the former, though he only made 11, got them in such style that we must not pass it over. The younger player now once more got in, and, aided by four spots, he by skilful play obtained 63, but had very hard luck with a cannon, leaving both balls together, and again there was a lull. When the score was—Roberts, 828; Cook, 962, the former ran up 62, but was answered by 15 from the other side, the game at 1250 standing—Cook, 981; Roberts, 892. The next break worth noticing was not made until the marker called the game—Roberts, 899; Cook, 981, when the latter rattled away with a brilliant 35 (four spots), and, failing at a red loser, put his ball in the jaws of the top left-hand pocket, having put together 1,000 in 3 hrs 52 min. The old 'un, however, only turned his opponent's ball out and placed his own in its place. After a lull Roberts made 39, followed by 8 only from Cook. A score from the old 'un, who made a miss-cue, followed, and his opponent doing nothing, the veteran added 11. After another non-score from Cook, Roberts made 31, and another lull followed. With the score Cook, 1,036; Roberts, 997, the latter struck Cook's ball off the table. The aspirant now gave a miss, and no scores of note for a time took place; Roberts, however, got in with a somewhat lucky 39, and thus took the lead. The marker, amidst intense excitement, called the game—Roberts, 1,041; Cook, 1,037. Cook now made 4 to his opponent's 7, and then, not to be daunted, by an additional contribution of 26 once more gained the lead and played safety. These tactics being again pursued on both sides, Cook got in with 31, and took thereby a more decided command. Game—Cook, 1,100; Roberts, 1,051. Although the breaks were small, intense excitement prevailed, as Cook twice had bad luck, the following being their respective contributions—Cook, 13, 7, 5; Roberts, 5, 6, 8, 3, 8; and the full score being called—Cook, 1,132; Roberts, 1,083. The former went right out with a magnificent all-round break of 68, making the winning stroke, a red loser in the left-hand middle pocket, at 138, the full game being—Cook, 1,200, Roberts, 1,083, the latter at last, after so many years, losing his title of champion by 117 points. The game, which was played on a table erected expressly by Cox and Yeman under the new rules, was marked with the greatest care throughout by D Andrews.

REMARKS—In the first half-hour of the play it was as plain as a pikestaff that the game would extend considerably into the small hours. The spot stroke, of which Roberts and Cook were considered masters *par excellence*, availed them little with the new pockets, and throughout the first 600 moderate-sized breaks were the rule, indeed, Cook's contributions never exceeded 49, 42, 38, and 37, while Roberts was behind him with 30 and 28, very few spots being made in either of these scores. Cook soon took a slight lead, and was 151 to Roberts' 101, whence they preserved their relations with faint variation until the score was called—Cook, 400, Roberts, 350. At this point the old 'un, who had taken 20 to



10 and 50 to 20, pulled himself together, and soon afterwards the marker cried the game of 497 all, whereupon the company gave way *en masse* to tumultuous cheering. Cook was first into the next hundred, and again the excitement knew no bounds when they were each at 517, but Cook now stole away with the two splendid collections of 49 and 42, and, when the interval came round at 10 47, the younger man stood in a better position than he had been hitherto, with 625 booked against him to 521 on the part of Roberts. During the interval 100 to 40 was laid and offered on Cook. With the resumption of play, after an interlude of half an hour, they moved along pretty evenly until Cook was 701 to Roberts' 593, and directly afterwards the aspirant to the championship got the balls together, and, with a series of strokes (some of them of the most delicate strength), he never stopped till he had raised his total 80 points. At the conclusion of this magnificent performance, the clapping of hands lasted for two or three minutes, the Prince of Wales joining heartily in the demonstration. His Royal Highness retired at midnight, expressing himself highly pleased with the skill exhibited by Cook; but he nevertheless declared his intention of not witnessing another match, except on the old-fashioned tables, as he wanted to see the compilation of the gigantic breaks which have so often been recorded of late. From 701 Cook made a century, while Roberts only made from 593 to 608; but the latter then came out with a series of useful scores and got to 822 when Cook was within an ace of making 900—two points to one was here taken. With a 63, however, Cook nearly regained his long command, only to be answered with a 62 from Roberts, and at 12 50 the game stood—Cook, 957; Roberts, 892. The jaunty air which many think affected the champion in an early stage of the play had quite disappeared, and he now strained every nerve to catch his youthful opponent and retain a position of twenty years' standing. With such steadiness, in fact, did Roberts now play, that, in spite of a dashing 35 from his adversary, he responded with two 39's, the second enabling him to actually get in front at 1,041, Cook now being four points to the bad. The excitement at this crisis knew no bounds; the company, scarcely diminished in numbers, being almost spell-bound at every stroke, with the betting reduced to 5 to 4 and evens. Still Cook's pluck did not forsake him, and, while Roberts contributed 7 and played for safety, the youngster was sailing away with 26 and 31. He never stood the ghost of a chance afterwards, and, with an uncompleted break of 68, the winning stroke being a losing hazard off the red, William Cook was proclaimed the billiard champion of England by 117 points.

## SECOND MATCH.

W. COOK, JUN., *v.* JOHN ROBERTS, JUN.

Played at St. James's Hall, April 14th, 1870.

1,000 up. Roberts won by 478 points in 3 hours 4 minutes.

(From "*The Sportsman*.")

THE second match for the champion's cup and £100 a side took place on Thursday night in the great hall, St. James's Hall, Regent Street, between W. Cook, jun., the champion, and John Roberts, jun., the son of the ex-champion. This is the fourth time they have played together for money in public. Their first contest was for £100 a side on December 29th,

1868, at the Bentinck Club, when, notwithstanding that at the outset Cook led by nearly 150, Roberts won by 92 points. On the second occasion they met at St. James's Hall, when Cook not only turned the tables, but secured an easy victory by 323 points. Their third match was at pyramids, for £25 a side, and on this occasion Roberts again proved the conqueror after some of the most marvellous hazard-striking ever witnessed. The subsequent defeat by Cook of the veteran, John Roberts, brought forth a challenge from his son, and resulted in the meeting of Thursday night.

After settling the preliminaries, choosing a referee (the representative of the *Sportsman*), weighing the balls, and posting the final deposits of £90 a side in our hands, play commenced at 7.35. A good deal of speculation had taken place, and during the first six weeks after the last championship match 2 to 1 was freely laid on Cook (£250 to £125 in one hand), and in some instances 5 to 2. During the past fortnight, however, public opinion changed, and there were found takers at 7 to 4. After the string for the balls, which Roberts won, an offer was made to take £65 to £40. As this was not forthcoming, £30 to £20 was accepted by a Manchester man, and 6 to 4 must be considered the market price at starting. Three misses each were given, and then Cook opened the game, but failed to figure, his ball failing by a shade to score a cannon. Roberts dashed in off the red, which rebounded from the cushion nearly a foot above the table and stopped in baulk. He did not score again, and Cook also missing a fine stroke, Roberts got in with a white loser, followed by a cannon, and ran up the first break of 21. Game: Roberts, 27; Cook, 3. The latter now made a couple, but seemed to be playing altogether without confidence, and Roberts, having the balls well left, succeeded with a well-judged 30, missing a moderately difficult red hazard at length. Score: Roberts, 57; Cook, 5. An easy shot remained on, and, after Cook had scored, £25 to £20 was offered on him, £15 to £10 being taken four times in one hand after he had run up 30. Only five more were scored, and, breaking down at a winning hazard for a contribution of 35, the totals were called: Roberts, 57; Cook, 40. Safe play was now the order of the day, until Cook added 17, succeeded by 33, and reached 100 against his opponent's 69, after twenty-three minutes' play. Cook soon made 15 and Roberts 36, and when the game stood—Roberts, 123; Cook, 122, an incident occurred which seemed likely to mar the interest taken in the match. Roberts was in the midst of a break, in which he had put together 22, when he played for a cannon by gentle strength off the top cushion. Cook, thinking his opponent had not scored, walked up to the table. Roberts said, "It was a cannon." Cook appealed to the referee, who asked the marker. He said, "I did not see it," and, as Roberts was standing immediately in front of the referee, it was impossible for him to decide without an appeal to the persons sitting at the spot end. To this Cook, urged by some of his supporters, refused to agree, arguing that the balls should be broke afresh, or the whole company questioned on the point. Roberts, who declared that he had scored, refused to accede, but, on the referee proposing the toss, the players cued content, and, Cook winning, followed on with the balls in the positions in which they were left. He, evidently with the intention of gaining nothing by the advantage, drove the balls round the table, and played for safety the next shot, tremendous applause following his magnanimous burst of feeling. Both for his own sake and the sake of his backers it would have been better had he taken matters coolly and played the game, as, although declining to make the

most of a fair and legitimate advantage may have great dramatic effect, it does not pay in everyday life. We have since asked a dozen disinterested witnesses, several of them connected with the Press, sitting in the best positions for seeing the stroke, and they unanimously declare that it was a cannon.

To continue, however, Roberts made 4, and reached 127 against Cook's 122, and here again £30 to £20 was laid on the latter. He failed to figure, and Roberts, having put on 26, was backed for an even "fiver," about a dozen backers of Cook "shooting" the speculator at once. Cook again missed a hazard, and Roberts, getting fairly into swing, added 20, during which (score: Roberts, 165, Cook, 122) he was supported for an even "pony." At length he missed an even cannon, and for several strokes each no break was made, until from 187 Roberts made 22, including five spot hazards, and reached 209 against Cook's 136. The latter from 148 scored 16, and from 210 Roberts increased the gap between them by one of the prettiest breaks of 40 ever seen. Every stroke was executed with great nicety and finish, the balls being brought together after each shot. From 262 he made 25 more, and here, when 98 in advance, was just the favourite, an offer of £25 to £20 on him being accepted by one of Cook's supporters. Slowly the champion moved along, and from 318 Roberts added consecutive breaks of 30 and 24, during the first of which £30 to £20 was laid on him. Game: Roberts, 372; Cook, 174. One of the best cushion cannons in the match here let Cook in, and twice he got up to the spot, only, however, to find that the hazard was so difficult to make that it would have been unwise to continue attempting them. By great judgment and dexterous manipulation he contrived to put together 46, and was only stopped then by adverse circumstances—a losing hazard off the red doubling the object back on the white, and baulking both balls. A hearty round of applause followed this display, and it was beginning to be whispered that we should yet see a good match. Roberts, however, seemed determined to keep his scoring lead, and never played a single slipshod stroke. From 382 (Cook 230) he contributed a 16, from 406 a 33 and a 23, from 464 a 26, and from 490 a 31, reaching 531, against his adversary's 261. £25 to £10 was now laid on Roberts, who from 522 once more forged ahead with a 28. Shortly four "ponies" to one was offered on Roberts, and, after he had added 33 and 20, which caused him to reach 619 (Cook 282), a noble lord betted £1,000 to £200 on him, and offered £500 to £100 more. An interval of half an hour occurred, during which £70 to £10 was laid on Roberts, who, on resuming play, added 29, succeeded at 659 by the break of the evening, 55. Game: Roberts, 714; Cook, 299. The champion here improved his position by 22, but continued to be unfortunate. Either the white found a pocket, or one of the balls remained in baulk. Roberts, finding how matters were going, took £10 to £1 he won by 500, but as Cook shortly ran up a grand break of 53, including some surprising cannons, Roberts just lost his wager. From 877 he added a 33, from 914 a 47, and from 977 a 21, winning eventually at 11 13 by 478 points, Cook reaching 522 only. Exclusive of the interval and the time occupied by the dispute, the match occupied three hours.

After so lengthy a report, we shall make little comment. Roberts looked well and confident, and played, as his friends expected, both pluckily and well. His cannons and losing hazards were perfection, and often he contrived to hole the red in the small space open to him

with great force. No long breaks were scored, not so long even as in the match between the elder Roberts and Cook, but the play of Roberts was better; in short, we have seen nothing to surpass it. After the unlucky dispute, Cook's nervous system seemed shaken. At the outset he looked haggard, and as if travelling and too much play had done him no good; and, when the pinch came, when his physical powers were called on, he gave way altogether, and only made 100 whilst Roberts was making 250.

### THIRD MATCH.

JOHN ROBERTS, JUN., *v.* A BOWLES.

1,000 up. Roberts won by 241.

(*From "Bell's Life," June 1st, 1870.*)

FIVE months have not yet passed over our heads since J. Roberts, sen; and W. Cook, jun, contended for the first cup ever offered for competition as a championship prize, and that match was a treat to all lovers of the sport. It is now a matter of history that Cook, the finest player that ever wielded a cue, beat the world-renowned John Roberts, and upon the latter's defeat his eldest son challenged the victor. Cook, upon their meeting on April 14th, being evidently for the time played-out, was defeated easily. We now have to chronicle the third meeting, the challenger being Alfred Bowles, of Brighton, and the holder, John Roberts, jun, which took place in the lesser hall, St. James's Hall, last Monday, and the conditions that they should play for £100 a side and the cup presented by Messrs. Cox and Yeman, Burroughes and Watts, and Thurston and Company, the great billiard table makers; but a more dreary or monotonous affair was never witnessed, the betting ruling almost from the commencement at the absurd price of 10 to 1 on the champion, and, ere he had scored 300, one speculator, after he had vainly offered all sorts of prices, laid 20 to 1, which was taken by Roberts himself. The performances of both men are well known to all followers of billiards, and as the match itself is worthy of but little notice, it being literally 100 to 1 on one all the way, we shall indulge in no further comment, but merely append the following return of the play, noticing the principal breaks. At 8 15 the players strung for break, which was won by Bowles, who was the first to get away with 18, followed by 10, 25, and 20 from Roberts, who thus took the lead, which he retained for the remainder of the evening, the score being now: Roberts, 70; Bowles, 39. Nothing worthy of note took place for some time, Roberts taking twenty-six minutes to put together his first 100. When Bowles was 95 to Roberts 145, the former struck his ball off the table in attempting a difficult white loser, and Roberts played a double baulk.

Bowles gave a miss, and Roberts not scoring, put together 5, after which the champion treated the spectators to 25, when, having lost his opponent's ball, he gave a double baulk. The next feature in the game was that Bowles five times essayed to score without result, and Roberts only added twos and threes, the latter reaching 200 in forty-nine minutes. When the game was called—Bowles, 134; Roberts, 202, the latter went away with a brilliant 47, failing at a red loser, and very small scores were the order of the evening, the play falling below zero. Eventually,

when 193 to Roberts' 328, the Brightonian made 31, his cannons being something marvellous, but this was only a small ray of light on a dreary picture, for fourteen minutes elapsed ere anything more worth looking at took place. The marker, however, having called the game—Bowles, 341; Roberts, 382, the latter made 51 (including a fine nursery of cannons), and any odds were now offered upon the champion, one speculator being particularly anxious to lay a level 100 on Roberts and Macgregor for the Derby coupled. As it was now palpable to the merest tyro that, but some extraordinary accident, the champion was bound to retain his honours, we think it will suffice for public information to give the principal breaks of both performers up to the finish of the game, which resulted in favour of Roberts at 12.45 by 241 points. Principal breaks from the point last named. Roberts, 57, 27, 29, 18, 15, 21, 25, 30, 19, 32, 27, and 37; Bowles, 15, 31, 21, 24, 18, 26, 47, 17, 45 (three spots), 36, and 19. The whole game, which on the present occasion was played on a table by Messrs. Thurston and Company, made of Spanish mahogany, was: Roberts, 1,001; Bowles, 759; and was marked by Harry Evans.

REMARKS—Little or no comment is necessary, but still some few remarks will be looked for by our readers. There was little, or rather none, of that glorious uncertainty which characterised the last contest, since Roberts assumed the lead in the first 50, and won, in horsey phraseology, "hands down" by 241 points. Throughout the whole game Bowles' cannons were loudly applauded, some of them being something marvellous, but at the same time his hazards were bad. After the interval, however, he greatly improved in this latter particular, whilst Roberts, though now and again he came out in his true form, seemed to get weary at the length of the game, and did not play with that brilliancy for which he is famous. On the two previous occasions the match was played in the large hall, but on Monday night the lesser one was used, a fact which speaks for itself, and the earnest wish of the 300 or so of spectators who attended the present match is, we have little doubt, judging from the opinion expressed by several of them, that it will be the last time such a farce is indulged in, and that upon the next occasion it may be what it ought to be—a match worthy of champions.

---

#### FOURTH MATCH.

JOHN ROBERTS, JUN., v. J. BENNETT.

Played at St. James's Hall, November 28th, 1870.

1,000 up. Bennett won by 95 points.

(From "*Bell's Life in London*.")

THE match came off on Monday evening in the banqueting-room of St. James's Hall, in the presence of a large number of visitors, the Nawab Nizam of Bengal and suite being among the visitors, and so interested were they in the fine play exhibited that they stayed till the close of the game. For some time before play began the room was filled by a mixed and not over discriminating audience, many of whom applauded their favourite on every occasion, and those strokes that

were made well or were unsuccessful came in for an equal amount of approbation. One individual who occupied a position in the gallery, evidently labouring under Bennett on the brain, and, as the Yankees say, "had snakes in his boots," was most vociferous in his desire to back his man, offering to lay 100 to 5 on one occasion, which was accepted by some person at the far end of the building, who, amidst laughter, stated his name to be Joey Jones. The would-be layer of the odds, however, did not book the bet, but quietly subsided for a little time, only to break out shortly louder than ever. We must add, by the way, that the eccentric Joey was not present, as we hear he was busily engaged collecting the proceeds of his benefit, which was held at the Surrey Theatre on the Thursday previous. There appeared to be almost as much interest attached to this as to the first event, when Cook and the elder Roberts played, and during the progress of the play, especially towards the finish, the excitement was very great, an immense amount of money being wagered on the result at all sorts of prices. For some time previous to Monday Roberts was the favourite, and odds of 5 and 6 to 4 were forthcoming; but the fine form exhibited by Bennett, who had been playing during the previous week with Cook on a champion table at his own rooms, of which he was successful in six, caused him to have many partisans, and just before the balls were set rolling layers of the longer odds were somewhat chary in their offers.

Bennett was born at the town of Malling, in the county of Kent, in 1841, and his first match was at the Albion Hall at Leeds, with Dufton, 1,000 up, when the latter won easily; he played the first time in the metropolis in January, 1866, also with Dufton, to whom he again had to succumb. His first victory was achieved over Evans, and then he, in company with the late Charles Hughes, played a double-handed match with John Roberts, sen., and W. Dufton, and he and his partner displayed such fine form that they defeated their opponents by 344 points. He then beat, and was beaten by the late J. Herst, and in the month of February he met the younger Roberts, his present opponent, and, after a closely-contested match, Bennett was the winner. He then once more met Dufton, this time giving him a start of 200 in 1,000, the stakes being £100 aside, and, although Dufton maintained his ground for a long time, his opponent eventually vanquished him by 88 points. In December, 1867, he again met J. Roberts, jun., but this time Roberts turned the tables upon his former conqueror, and Bennett was beaten by 79 points, after being a long way in front for more than half the game. In November of the following year he had his first meeting with W. Cook, at the Prince of Wales Hotel, Paddington, when the famous spot-hazard player won by 357. Subsequent to this he had a trial with the elder Roberts for £50, and after a very close finish he managed to land the stakes.

Bennett had not up to this time acquired any fame as a spot hazard striker, and he challenged any man in England, the "spot hazard barred," when the challenge was accepted by the then champion's son, and they became antagonists for the third time. Roberts took the lead, and kept in front throughout, winning by 115 points. Since then he has played in a series of matches that took place at the Palais Royal a few weeks back, and the play he there exhibited gave his backers increased confidence in his powers for the coming championship tounay, and, moreover, he showed greater facility in spot hazard striking than he had ever previously exhibited. J. Roberts, jun., is a year or so younger than Bennett, and during his comparatively short career he has played matches

against all the best men of the day with success, proving himself to be well worthy to follow the footsteps of his father.

Play was announced to commence at 7.30, but owing to the crowded state of the hall the game was not begun until five minutes to 8 o'clock. Both gave two misses in baulk, when Roberts was first to score, and ran up 8. Each then played four times, but Bennett failed on each occasion, while his opponent only added 2. The latter then with short runs got to the front, and soon became 49, Roberts having reached but 20, and when shortly after Bennett was called 55, Roberts 22, even money was betted on the candidate for championship honours, and subsequently more level wagering took place. The game then proceeded very slowly, and Bennett with small breaks reached 90, against 32 on the part of Roberts, who with breaks of 10, 13, 18, and 28, rose his total to 106, whilst Bennett had failed to score on several occasions, and had only reached 105. At this juncture 120 to 100 was offered on the champion, but he again fell away, and the marker in a brief space of time called Bennett (who had just run up 19), 157; Roberts, 119. The latter responded with 17, and still slight odds were obtainable, both playing very carefully, the game proceeding very slowly for some time, Bennett being the next to score a break of any moment, coming out with a nice little run of 28, which caused him to be registered 215 against 172 on the part of Roberts, play having lasted little more than one hour. Roberts was the next to make a break, a nice 27, but he broke down at an easy cannon, letting in Bennett, who just after added 35, a well-played break, finishing up with a miss in baulk. Bennett, 307; Roberts, 238. Bennett then became favourite for the first time, and when Roberts failed to score five breaks in succession, the former was just 99 in advance. Offers of 7 to 4 found few takers. Runs of 17, 20 (in which were some beautifully-executed cannons), and a fine all-round break of 40 were Roberts' best efforts, and he had raised his score to 354. Bennett had been gradually forging ahead, and, with minor breaks, playing with great judgment, had reached 508, when the interval occurred at ten minutes to ten for refreshment, lasting twenty minutes, during which a great deal of speculation took place in Bennett's favour. On play being resumed, Roberts opened his account with a splendidly-played 24, and Bennett followed with 35; and when Roberts next took up his cue he added 36, the marker calling Bennett, 574; Roberts, 438, at which point offers of 50 to 25 were wanted. Very careful play resulted for some little time, when the champion came out with a fine run of 36, Bennett having turned into the sixth hundred. The latter then contributed 17, and bringing the balls well into play, directly after made a break of 47, in which there were some splendid hazards. His opponent immediately responded with an equally fine break of 42, Bennett supplementing it with 20, the respective scores standing—Bennett, 718; Roberts, 553. From this point the balls, which had broken badly for Roberts throughout the evening, lay more favourably, and, pulling himself together, he gradually reduced the wide gap that had existed between himself and his opponent, and while Bennett's principal contributions were a couple of 20's, Roberts ran up the principal break of the evening (56), and he became 751, Bennett being 866. The supporters of the champion were now in ecstasies, offers to take 5 to 4 being plentiful; and it really seemed, so well set did Roberts appear, that he would snatch the match out of the fire; but Bennett played coolly, and, assisted by a run of 20, he reached the ninth hundred 136 ahead of Roberts, and when Bennett had placed 38 more to his credit Roberts was 777. The latter then made a very fine all-round

display, the break numbering 44, and, Bennett failing to score four times in succession, a run of 20 made Roberts 868; Bennett, 968. The game now became very exciting, but the latter held his own from this point, and neither made any large breaks. The game was finished at ten minutes to one, Bennett being the winner by 95 points.

The match was played on a very handsome table built for the occasion by Messrs. Cox and Yeman, of the Brompton Road, and was a beautiful specimen of their handicraft. W. Cook, jun., officiated as referee, and the game was correctly and distinctly marked throughout by C. Stanton, to whose efficiency in this particular great praise is due.

### FIFTH MATCH.

JOHN ROBERTS, JUN., *v.* J. BENNETT.

Played at St. James's Hall, January 30th, 1871.

1,000 up. Roberts won by 363 points in 3 hours 29 minutes.

(*From "Bell's Life in London."*)

THE fifth match took place at St James's Hall, Regent Street, on Monday evening, January 30th, on the same terms as the four previous matches, with the exception of the difference in points, as before stated. The room was very full, but not so uncomfortably crowded as on the evening when the same players met in November last. A great deal of speculation took place on the event, Bennett having many supporters at even money. Notwithstanding that, Roberts, who had been playing with Cook at Manchester on one of Messrs. Orme's champion tables, had made the largest break hitherto attained with small pockets, viz., 91. Roberts' play on Monday was the best we ever witnessed; he scarcely ever made a mistake, exercised great judgment, and never threw a chance away; some of his cannons and hazards were most remarkable, and a treat to behold. Both players have nothing to complain of on the score of luck, for Dame Fortune favoured them pretty equally. Bennett, who has been unwell for some little time, was not up to his usual play, the dash and exquisite manipulation of Roberts almost put him in the shade, and, although we were prepared to see his opponent win, we did not expect to see such an unmistakable defeat. During the progress of the game, Bennett discovered that he was playing with a lighter ball than that used by Roberts, and it is to be regretted that it was not discovered ere play commenced; the makers say that ivory is such a difficult material to deal with that it is almost impossible to avoid accidents of this nature. The balls used were from a large stock, and, when they came to be weighed during the interval, Bennett's conjecture was found to be correct, and that there was a slight discrepancy—the 240th part of an ounce, which, however, was not sufficient to cause any change, and the game was continued with the original set of balls. With the exception that it was discovered, shortly after the game had commenced, that a referee had not been chosen, and that a foul stroke was claimed by Roberts, which he, under the circumstances, waived in his opponent's favour, a well-known amateur being then appointed to the office, nothing occurred to mar the progress of the play. Bennett had his cue knocked out of his hand by a passing waiter just as he was about to make a stroke; it was,



we felt quite sure, the result of carelessness, and not done intentionally, as some persons have asserted. It fell to the lot of Messrs Burroughes and Watts, the celebrated billiard-table makers of Soho Square, to provide the table for this occasion, and great credit is due to that firm for the splendid specimen of their handicraft. It is one of the most elegant tables we ever saw, treated in decorative gothic manufacture of handsome walnut wood, suitably relieved by ornaments and friezes of light oak, elaborately carved, forming a very pleasing combination. The bases of the legs are of walnut, surmounted with richly cut walnut columns and oak niches, in which are carved lions supporting shields. The panels are alike varied and full of detail.

Half-past seven was the time announced for play to begin, but it was five minutes to eight ere the players made their appearance at the table, and as soon as the preliminaries were settled the game commenced. The backers of Bennett gradually stood out for 5 to 4, and just prior to the opening break £60 to £40 was laid on Roberts' chance. Both played very carefully at the outset, and several misses were given, Bennett reaching 17 against 12 on the part of Roberts, who had just laid £30 to £20 that he won the match. From this point the last-named, with the aid of 12, 10, 31, and 24, successive breaks, got in front of Bennett, who had failed to score during the time, and, going rapidly ahead, was never afterwards caught, the respective scores being—Roberts, 90; Bennett, 17. The game now progressed rather slowly, until the marker called—Bennett, 37, Roberts, 114, when the latter ran up 29, followed shortly after by a well-played 51, Bennett responding to the last break of his opponent with 13 and 18, and reached 68 by the time Roberts was called 208, at which point Bennett took £40 to £10. The scoring now was exceedingly slow, and, when Roberts' figures had become 234 against 91 on the part of Bennett, each player gave three misses in succession. From 96 Bennett, for whom the balls lay a little more favourably placed, put on 25 (in the midst of which the dispute arose before referred to) and in the second subsequent break 46, and some of his admirers were most enthusiastic in their demonstration. Game. Bennett, 173; Roberts, 262. The latter, whose luck had deserted him for some little time, then placed 55 to his account, followed by 24 and 26, and presently 33, reaching 401 while his opponent had only got as far as 199, and offers of £50 to £10 found very few takers. The game now became very tame, neither caring to give an opening, and, adopting very cautious tactics, play was continued in this way until Roberts was called 437 against 248 on the part of Bennett. The former put 15, 18, and 20 to his credit, while the latter was unable to score for four successive breaks, and only reached 286 when Roberts, by the aid of an additional 20, stood at 523; he then made a winning hazard, but missed cue in attempting the second, when, as the marking board denoted Bennett, 286; Roberts, 526, an interval of half an hour occurred for refreshment. On resuming play, Roberts was the first to make a break of importance, 41, and during its manipulation 25 to 1 was laid on him. Bennett responded with 25, and Roberts after some time came out with 18, 20, and 29, getting as far as 707, his adversary's best effort being 19, and his total 401. Matters continued very evenly for some time, Bennett increasing his score to 433, Roberts to 739, when a well-played break of 44 by Bennett was responded to by Roberts with 25, 30, and soon after by 75, a beautiful display, the largest break made during the evening, which brought Roberts into the last "century," Bennett's full score being 540. Bennett then, by the help of 22, 31, drew up to 624, and Roberts did not

add anything to his lead for six successive breaks. He then got the balls into position, but, after making a winning hazard, missed cue, and Bennett, scoring 11, reached 637, Roberts, with 15, becoming 955, when he resigned the cue to Bennett, who, failing to score, let in Roberts, who ran out with an unfinished break of 45, winding up with a cannon, and winning by 363 points at 11-46, the game having lasted three hours and twenty-nine minutes.

C. Stanton was a most efficient and careful marker, and one of Burroughes and Watts' improved illuminated marking boards was used on the occasion.

We understand that Cook has staked £10 to play Roberts, and the match will take place accordingly in two months' time. We also hear that the younger Roberts is likely to accept Cook's plucky challenge to give 200 in 2,000 to any player in the world on a Burroughes and Watts' table with full-sized pockets.

### SIXTH MATCH.

JOHN ROBERTS, JUN., v W. COOK.

Played at St. James's Hall, May 25th, 1871

1,000 up. Cook won by 15 points

(*From "Bell's Life in London."*)

THIS spacious hall was the scene on Thursday evening of the very Derby of billiardism, the occasion being a match for what may be justly called the "blue riband" of the "board of green cloth," between J. Roberts, jun., and W. Cook. The attendance, though not so large as might have been expected, was very select, all factions of the sporting world being well represented. J. Roberts' career has been a somewhat chequered one during his contests for the championship, inasmuch as he has vanquished and been vanquished by all the leading players of the day, among whom we may mention Joe Bennett, Bowles, and his late opponent.

Although advertised to commence at 7 p.m., it wanted but a few minutes of eight when the competitors entered the arena. Cook broke the balls, and, after the usual safety misses, the two executants laid head and head for the first quarter-century. Subsequently, however, Cook took a slight lead, 26 and 35 up to this point having been his best efforts, Roberts apparently not playing with his usual *viz.* Game. Cook, 123; Roberts, 64. An even £50 was at this point offered on Cook. With the aid of two slightly lucky breaks, Roberts improved his position, but his opponent was again equal to the occasion, 27 and 25 being Cook's best contributions, while Roberts added 18, 17, 17, 15, and 13, thus making his total 203 to Cook's 231. The latter now launched out with a splendid all-round break of 77, and was now more than 100 ahead. Roberts' next noteworthy break amounted to 22, followed soon by one of 19, the last including a red loser, followed by a cannon, when both the red and his opponent's ball were in baulk. Cook was 101 to the good, when, from 367, another good break amounting to 40 carried him well into his fifth hundred. After a tedious bout of slow and somewhat cautious play, the marker called—Cook, 434; Roberts, 315. The latter, in two consecutive breaks, made

28 and 47, both being fine displays, and reached 392 before his adversary hung out a signal. Cook in turn made 25 and 88 running, the latter break being one of the most finished performances of the little wonder, and the largest break during the contest.

The interval for refreshment now took place (time 9.40), the respective scores being—Cook, 547; Roberts, 396. On resuming hostilities, both men increased their total by a brace, when Roberts, giving evidence of manifest improvement, in rapid succession added two grand breaks of 40 and 43, supplemented by two of 19 and 21. Full game: Cook, 579; Roberts, 525. The latter here accepted £10 to £5 about his chance, and so well did he acquit himself that, with the help of a 34 break, supplemented by smaller ones, he rapidly closed up the gap, and the score stood at 571 to 599. From 591 (Cook, 624) Roberts added a magnificent break of 42, and passed his adversary in grand style. An interval of nearly level play followed, and then occurred the only unpleasant *contretemps* of the game, viz. a dispute over a cannon of Roberts', and the referee (John Bennett) being unable to decide, it was settled by a show of hands in Roberts' favour. Nothing important, however, came from the dispute. Cook, with a break of 20, again passed his adversary, 670 to 668 being their respective totals. When Cook was 700, Roberts was but 8 in the rear, but the former added 77, while Roberts in the interim merely added 15. Cook now for five innings failed to increase his lead, his opponent getting as far as 759 before Cook scored again. A break of 42 was now posted to the latter's credit, the run commencing with a very lucky white loser in playing for a cannon. This made the totals—Cook, 819; Roberts, 766. The last named now began to force the pace, quickly putting together 18, 12, 23, 16, 16, 16, and 17, thus going to 893 to 872. £30 to £20 was here laid on Roberts, who was, however, quickly collared again, the marker calling the game—Cook, 925; Roberts, 921. Two breaks of 38 and 19 carried Roberts 50 ahead, namely, 978 to 928, and it seemed "all over bar shouting." Roberts was 985 to 964, and in playing for a cannon (by no means a difficult one) failed, leaving the balls in easy juxtaposition. Cook, amidst a scene of wild excitement, proved fully equal to the occasion, and scored the necessary 36 to land himself the winner by 15 points only. Messrs. Thurston and Company, Catherine Street, Strand, supplied a splendid pollard oak table for the match, which was most carefully marked by T. Hubble.

---

### SEVENTH MATCH.

W. COOK (CHAMPION) *v.* JOSEPH BENNETT.

Played at St. James's Hall, November 21st, 1871.

1,000 up. Cook won by 58 in 4 hours 25 minutes.

(From "*Bell's Life in London*.")

ON Tuesday evening the seventh contest for the blue riband of billiards was decided at St. James's Hall, Regent Street, when one of the most brilliant displays ever witnessed upon the board of green cloth resulted, and although we expected some splendid manipulation, we certainly did not expect that this would prove the most noteworthy match that has yet

taken place for the handsome trophy, for which the billiard players are indebted to the three principal table-makers in the Metropolis. This is the third time that both Cook and Bennett have entered the lists for this prize, though they have never hitherto been opposed to each other.

The present match was arranged to commence at 7.30, and like the preceding ones, took place at St. James's Hall, but it was nearly eight o'clock ere the balls were set in motion. The room was tolerably well filled by the time play commenced, and before the interval there were more visitors than we have seen on any previous occasion, except when the elder Roberts and Cook played the first match. Large placards were posted in different parts of the building announcing the fact that no betting was to take place, and consequently there was an utter absence of the unseemly shouting that had characterised the previous matches. It fell to the lot of Messrs. Cox and Yeman to furnish the table, and we must say that a more beautiful specimen of the manufacturers' handicraft could not possibly be, it being greatly admired by all who saw it. They broke the balls twenty-two minutes later than was announced, and Cook's third break was 23, in the compilation of which he had made some very pretty cannons, breaking down at a losing hazard, and both exhibiting great caution. Nothing particularly worthy of mention was accomplished until the marker called Bennett 14, Cook 35. The former then, by nice all-round play, ran together 34, and Cook responded subsequently with 27 and 19, bringing his total to 95, against 50 by Bennett, who had failed to score on three occasions. Cook after this made a splendid cannon, which brought him to 100, his opponent still remaining at the half-century. Slow play again became the order of the day, and by degrees Cook got as far as 132, Bennett merely adding 9 to his previously quoted score; he then, by some beautifully executed cannons and hazards, placed 40 to his credit, and gradually, by occasional fine play, began to get on better terms with his opponent, but neither made any breaks worthy of comment, and the game dragged its slow length along in the most tedious fashion, Cook being about 100 ahead of Bennett, who was the first to contribute a break of 20, which made their respective totals Cook, 258; Bennett, 178. The last-named then ran together 31, finishing up with a nice double baulk, after which Cook, when trying for a cannon, made a foul stroke, when the red was spotted and the balls re-broken, and matters proceeded much in the same way as before until the game was called: Cook, 340; Bennett, 240. Bennett then made successive breaks of 29, 13, and 27, and he was now only 31 behind. Cook followed on with 19, once more a lull occurring, and it was not until the marking-board denoted the scores as Bennett 404, Cook 412, that the game began to show signs of equality, the champion going away with 20, but his opponent, sticking gamely to his work, placed himself, for the first time in the match, in front of his antagonist, the scores being Cook, 433; Bennett, 435. Cook now seemed to fall off in his play, and only added 45 whilst Bennett increased his score by 100, showing great signs of improvement, breaks of 39 and 27 bringing him to 510, when an interval of nearly half an hour was allowed.

When play was resumed the champion again began to work his way to the front, but Bennett held his ground, despite the fact that his opponent had by some spirited play placed 46, the largest break up to this time made in the match, and minor scores to his account, some time after which the marker called "552 all," and it was not till Bennett's score stood at 575 and Cook's at 560 that the latter, with 14 and 26, drew

away again. He, however, was not allowed to go much in advance, for at 621 Cook, 607 Bennett, the latter contributed 46, to which the former responded with 47, and again went to the fore. Each player during the twenty-four breaks that followed did not materially add to his score, it being then—Bennett, 685, Cook, 717; after which Bennett made breaks of 22 and 26, reaching 743 to 731, and Cook, breaking down with a miss-cue, allowed Bennett still to maintain his advantage, but shortly after, aiding his score with 21, he was only two behind, and each alternately led when at twelve o'clock the figures were. Cook, 808, Bennett, 793, the champion having just passed into his eighth century with a run of 22. Cook again managed to hold his own, and 30 and 38 placed him once more considerably ahead of Bennett, who stood at 839 when Cook had attained 919. Here Bennett, who for a long time had shown a considerable falling off in his play, roused himself, and amidst the greatest excitement accomplished 93, the largest break ever made on a championship table in a championship match, and he again assumed the lead, their scores being Cook, 919; Bennett, 932. The famed spot-hazard player, however, was not to be denied, and he responded with a well-played 40, once more giving him the lead, of which he was never again divested, as Bennett, by small runs, could only get as far as 944, and Cook ran out with an unfinished break of 37, and made himself champion for the third time by 58 points at a quarter to one o'clock amidst tremendous applause, the game having occupied four hours and twenty-five minutes. He has thus equalled J. Roberts, jun.'s, feat by winning the cup twice in succession.

T. Hubble marked and called the game in the most accurate manner

### EIGHTH MATCH.

W. COOK (CHAMPION) *v.* J. ROBERTS, JUN.

Played at St James's Hall, March 4th, 1872.

Cook won by 201 points in 3 hours 30 minutes.

(*From "Bell's Life in London."*)

ON Monday evening the eighth contest for the championship of billiards and £100 a side was decided at St. James's Hall, and drew together one of the most numerous and respectable assemblages that has yet met within the building where the last six matches have been played. The contestants were W. Cook (holder) and John Roberts, jun., and the first-named won, it being the fourth time, thrice in succession, that he has succeeded in bearing off the handsome trophy.

Play was announced to commence at 7.30, but it was about five minutes to eight o'clock when John Bennett, who was elected to officiate as referee, took up his position, and the players strung for the break, Cook commencing proceedings and selecting the white ball. At the outset Roberts, who we believe was established a slight favourite, took a slight lead, and reached as far as 31 to Cook's 23, the latter having just failed in attempting an easy cannon, after making some splendid shots in a run of 13. Here the champion, who was evidently in his best form, by some splendid manipulation totalled 57, followed by 19, finishing the last break with a double baulk. Roberts in the meantime had essayed on five different occasions, but did not succeed in adding to

his score. Some very pretty play now ensued, but neither of the players was able to make a noteworthy break, and it was not until their respective totals stood—Cook, 154; Roberts, 92, that Cook by careful play added a contribution of 27, and at no distant period Roberts replied with 47, this turning out to be his largest break of the match. There were some very fine winning hazards in the run, and as his second subsequent break was 22, he became on much better terms with his opponent, the game being called. Cook, 191; Roberts, 165. A lucky cannon then enabled the champion to run together 42, finishing up with a miss in baulk, and Roberts by small efforts became 182 against 251. At this point Cook came out with the largest run ever made on a champion table in a championship, viz 116. When about half the break had been enumerated he got the balls close together near the left-hand top pocket, and after a “nursery” of twelve cannons, finished that portion of his play with an eight stroke, finally winding up the break with a double baulk. His full score was now 367, and one hour and five minutes only had elapsed since the balls had been set rolling. Twice Roberts failed to improve his position, and the champion knocked up 22 as his next instalment, Roberts replying with 24. Shortly after this Cook, by a very beautiful cannon, reached 400 (time, 1 hr. 10 min.), and Roberts added an additional 24, breaking down at a miss-cue, and in the next attempt he left Cook a double baulk. A break of 28 by Roberts, finishing with another double baulk, was the next feature, but Cook, with 20, 23, and 30 in quick succession, reached 493 to 339 on the part of Roberts, who replied by making 22 and 24, successive breaks, and became 385 to 501, at which time (twenty-five minutes to ten o’clock) an interval of half an hour was allowed. On resuming play Cook, who had allowed his adversary to become on much better terms with him, drew away again with breaks of 45 and 29. Roberts then placed a nice 23, 15, and 24 to his credit before Cook did anything noteworthy, when the latter added 33, but the play had been carried on very slowly for some time, and Cook had managed to hold his position about 200 in front. When the game was called—717, Cook; 527, Roberts, the last-named scored 39, during which he made the first spot-hazard of the evening, and this he supplemented a little farther on with 34 and 37, successive runs, and he once more approached his opponent. Cook’s best effort for some time had been 21, when he now came out with a splendid break of 43, principally losing hazards, and this very fine play was greatly applauded, their respective scores now being. Cook, 831; Roberts, 646. From this time the champion was never nearer approached, and before Roberts had made any material addition to his figures Cook made 21 and 59, the latter being a fine exhibition, and got as far as 981, having left his opponent several double baulks, off which he was unable to score, the best breaks by Roberts meanwhile being 23 and 29, and his total was 777. The latter then failed at an easy cannon, and, letting in Cook, he further increased his figures to 992, during which he made his only spot-hazard of the evening. Roberts in two attempts then advanced his total to 799, when Cook, with three cannons and a white winner, finished the game, winning by 201 points in rather over three hours and a half.

The game was exceedingly well marked by W. Hunt, of Southsea.

---

## NINTH MATCH.

W. COOK (CHAMPION) *v.* J. ROBERTS, JUN.

Played at St. James's Hall, February 24th, 1874.

1,000 up. Cook won by 216 points in 3 hours 10 minutes

*(From "Bell's Life in London.")*

AFTER a lapse of nearly two years, W. Cook, the undoubted champion of England, has had his title to the proud distinction once more questioned by John Roberts, jun., who has competed for the trophy no less than seven times—thrice successfully, and once over his present opponent.

Play was announced to commence at 7.30, but the clock denoted 7.45 before the players made their appearance at the table, and the balls being found to be of equal weight, they strung for the lead, which Cook won. After the usual misses Roberts scored 7, when he let in his opponent, who, by some of the most brilliant play ever seen all round the table, ran up 121, commencing with a by no means easy cannon, and breaking down by attempting to screw back into baulk for a cannon. He was on the spot twice during the break, but only accomplished it on two or three occasions consecutively, and this now stands as the largest break ever accomplished on a championship table. After this neither scored, and Cook, after giving a miss, went still further away with a splendid 82 and 40 (five spots), the applause being of a most deafening description. The marker here called their respective scores as Cook, 244; Roberts, 18; and then each in turn failed to add anything to his score in two consecutive breaks. It was then Roberts' turn, and in succession he made by some beautiful play 40, 28 (four spots), 24, and 17, Cook in the meantime only adding 5 to his previously announced total. A run of 26, in which were a couple of very lucky cannons, brought Roberts still nearer the champion, their scores at this juncture being: Cook, 255; Roberts, 156. Cook then placed 61 (six spots) to his account, and Roberts replied with 31, finishing up with an eight stroke, after which the game proceeded quietly for a short time, the latter being the first to do anything important by scoring 24, 44, and 15, against 16 and 22 by Cook, the marker then announcing the game as 379 Cook and 310 Roberts. The spirits of those who had been backing Roberts now seemed to revive, and his fine play was repeatedly applauded. Presently the marking board denoted. Cook, 402; Roberts, 317, play having up to this time lasted just one hour and a quarter, but Cook drew away again with 18, 19, and 14, relinquishing the table after a splendid cannon behind the line. Roberts replied with 34 and 22, on each occasion leaving double baulks, off which Cook failed to score, and the marker announced their scores as: Cook, 457, Roberts, 396; and this was the nearest he got to his adversary, as Cook, with 38 and 41 in quick succession, ran to 537, and Roberts stood at 397, when an interval of thirty minutes elapsed before play was renewed.

On resuming, Roberts led off with 20 and 15, and Cook, in his fifth break, scored 43, followed soon after by 21 and 31, and after some little time, reached 671 against 551, Roberts' best breaks being 20 and 19. The champion then scored 30, but little was done by either for

some time, when, as their figures were exhibited as Cook, 770; Roberts, 578, the first-named made 49 (four spots), 33, and 20, which carried him still further in advance, as the telegraph board now displayed Cook as 897 and Roberts 624. The latter, who had been unlucky for some time, then ran up 27, when once more the game became exceedingly slow, and this state of things lasted until the scores stood: Cook, 929; Roberts, 705. Some life was then put into the affair by Cook adding 38; and three breaks subsequently Roberts made a little headway with 44 and 43, in which were some splendid forcing hazards. Cook's total was now 972, Roberts' 780, and the champion placed 17 to his credit and reached 998 to his opponent's 784, when the champion, missing a very easy cannon, again let Roberts in; but he failed to score, and Cook, without much trouble, finished up with a cannon a winner by 216 points, after 3 hours 10 minutes' play.

D Ingarfield marked with his accustomed care, and T. Cook spotted the ball and otherwise officiated

### TENTH MATCH.

W. COOK (CHAMPION) *v.* J. ROBERTS, JUN.

Played at the "Criterion," May 24th, 1875.

1,000 up. Roberts won by 163 points in 3 hours 42 minutes.

(*From "Bell's Life in London"*)

PLAY was announced to commence at 730, but it was somewhat later when the players made their appearance at the table to string for the break, Cook having a slight advantage in what little betting we heard of. Roberts led off with a miss, but in his third essay scored 21, and before Cook could get in with anything like a run, his opponent made 13, 24, and 18, and reached 92 against 22. Cook then placed a dozen and 13 to his credit, and presently 29 made his total 90 against 111, the champion's manipulation being brilliant in the extreme, and before Roberts did anything calling for special mention, Cook approached him nearer still with 14. Roberts then by some superb play drew right away with breaks of 19, 10, 37, 13, besides a couple of 23 each, which made his full score 308 to 163 Cook, the latter having bad luck, and evidently did not seem in his accustomed form. A well-played break of 22, however, revived the hopes of Cook's backers, but presently Roberts replied with 11 and 24, which made him still further in advance. Here Cook failed to score on six consecutive occasions, and Roberts' total was 346 and his adversary's 201. By some brilliant play, which brought forth continual well-merited applause, Cook scored 30, 37, and 43, consecutive breaks, and as his opponent did but little, the champion was treading close on his heels. Roberts here pulled himself together again, and 47, 30, and 44 took him well away, and at the interval his score was 518 and Cook's 375.

On resuming play almost directly both did some brilliant execution, Cook being first to come out with a grand display of 52, Roberts responding with 42, and the applause after each break was great in the extreme. Careful play then became the order of things, neither throwing a chance away, when Cook, by beautiful execution, his cannons being especially clever, made 42 and 35, and before Roberts, who fell away a little, did anything worthy of comment, Cook went ahead with 40 and 33,



breaking down in the last break through poking his opponent's ball. There was tremendous cheering from Cook's partisans when his score was announced as 596, Roberts 582, and those who had been laying 7 to 4 on Roberts at the interval looked somewhat blue. They were very close together when they had just passed into the sixth hundred, but Roberts, by some difficult hazard striking which he accomplished in his well-known dashing style, made 20, 24, and 44, and advanced to 726 against 675. From this point Cook, who had just previously made 12 and 17, fell away, and missed some comparatively, for him, easy strokes; but Roberts kept going slowly in advance, making 29 as his best contribution during the time. Cook, however, was not deterred, and played a very careful game, scoring 23, which just made his score 700, after which a nice run of 30, ending with a splendidly played double baulk, carried him to within 31 points of Roberts. The latter once more rallied, and favoured with a little luck, ran together breaks of 24, 20, and 36, and when Cook again took up the cue he made 40 and 21 in succession, and the telegraph board displayed their respective totals as Cook, 811; Roberts, 844. This was Cook's last successful effort, for Roberts, by some excellent manipulation, made 30, 39, and 40, while Cook's best run was 15, and by this time Roberts stood at 985, and Cook 837, when the ex-champion ran out with 15 and became for the fourth time champion, a winner by 163 points, after three hours and forty-two minutes of the best play ever witnessed. The winner's hazard striking was brilliant throughout, but Cook seemed to rely more on cannons, especially during the latter half of the game. We hear Cook has signified his intention of once more contesting Roberts' pretensions to the title he so meritoriously earned.

H. Evans officiated as referee and D. Ingafield marked the game in his usual distinct and careful manner.

---

### ELEVENTH MATCH.

J. ROBERTS (CHAMPION) *v.* W. COOK.

Played at St. James's Hall, December 20th, 1875.

1,000 up. Roberts beat Cook by 135 in 3 hours 24 minutes.

(From "*Bell's Life in London*")

THE match took place in the usual room of St. James's Hall, and nearly every available seat was occupied before the game commenced. Messrs. Burroughes and Watts supplied a beautiful table for the occasion, and 7.30 was the hour appointed to begin, but the usual preliminary business occupied some time. Consequently more than fifteen minutes elapsed before the players were ready to string for break, the balls being set in motion at 7.47. Roberts led off with the usual miss, but at the outset little was done in the way of scoring. Cook then ran up half-a-dozen, when Roberts replied with 36, made up of some nice play near the top of the table; and as he presently supplemented this with 15, his score stood at 53 before Cook had reached a dozen. Roberts still continued scoring, the balls breaking badly for Cook; and when the latter essayed a long cannon but failed, Roberts, aided by 32, placed himself well in advance. Cook soon after this scored 21, when a foul stroke gave Roberts again possession of the table, of which advantage he did not at

once avail himself. Presently, however, he got the balls together, and some prettily executed cannons enabled him to add 26, followed by 32, the marker calling the game: Roberts, 157; Cook, 64. It was then Cook's turn, and pulling himself together, he made 22, 17, 41, and 39; but, unfortunately, holing his opponent's ball in one of the centre pockets, he relinquished the table to Roberts after trying but failing to make a double baulk. The champion did not score, and Cook presently brought his figures to within three points of his adversary with a run of 33, after which "191 all" was announced. From this point Cook continued to go in advance, reaching 275 to 211, and then 20 by Roberts brought him a little nearer; but Cook going away again the marking-board denoted their respective scores as . Roberts, 271; Cook, 302. Runs of 31, 19, and smaller breaks after this made Cook 101 points in front, and each exhibited the greatest care, the play being brilliant on both sides, the splendid strokes of either repeatedly calling forth the greatest applause. Cook then repeatedly failed to score, while Roberts kept steadily making up his lost ground, 48 and 22 being his best breaks, and when next the game was called he was only 14 points behind. When each player had passed his fourth hundred a few breaks of more or less importance were made, and again Roberts went ahead. He did not long remain in the premier position, however, for Cook, playing some of the most brilliant strokes ever witnessed, managed to reach 505 as Roberts stood at 478. Cook had the last stroke, and tried to leave a double baulk, but the red ball came just outside the line, at which juncture an interval was announced, play having lasted 2 hrs. 1 min.

Twenty-five minutes afterwards play was renewed, Roberts being in especially fine form, and going ahead, but the game progressed very evenly, the best breaks being 27 by Cook and 45 by Roberts, after which each kept alternately taking the lead, and the battle was fought with great determination, the contestants doing their utmost to gain the victory. For some time after the scores were registered Cook 737, Roberts 771, the champion continued his lead, a break of 51 and a little luck placing him 120 in advance. Even play continued for some time, their relative positions being steadily maintained, but when their scores stood Cook 817, Roberts 936, it looked a dead certainty on the latter. Cook, notwithstanding, pulled himself together, and scored 38 and one or two useful little runs, but eventually the game stood. Cook, 865; Roberts, 961. Roberts then took up the cue and finished the game off the reel, winning by 135 points in 3 hours 35 minutes, the time being a quarter to twelve o'clock.

Oxford Jonathan marked the game throughout in the most careful and distinct manner, and he was assisted at the table by T. Cook. We regret being unable to give a description of some of the beautiful strokes made by each player, but the room was so dark, the only lights being over the table, that we were unable to write a line, more especially in the "back seats" usually accorded to the Press on these occasions.

---

## TWELFTH MATCH.

W. COOK *v.* J. ROBERTS, JUN

Played at the Gaiety Restaurant, May 28th, 1877.

1,000 up. Roberts won by 221 points in 2 hours 45 minutes.

*(From "Bell's Life in London")*

THIS important contest, which had been anticipated with more than the usual interest attached to affairs of this kind, owing to the fact that both players had won championship honours an equal number of times, took place at the Gaiety Restaurant on Monday evening. A splendid light oak table was supplied by Messrs. Thurston, and gave every satisfaction. The room provided was quite inadequate to the requirements of the occasion, and it would be as well, if the comfort of those who support and delight in matches of this description is to be considered at all, to remedy this defect for the future by engaging a more capacious saloon. The heat was intense, and must have been distressing alike to the players and spectators. Besides the championship gold vase presented by the three great billiard-table manufacturers in 1870, to be held for five years, a stake of £200 depended upon the issue of the match. Although in the last affair of this kind, which took place on December 20th, 1875, Roberts beat Cook, the last-named has, owing to his having thrown down the gauntlet to the victor previous to his departure for the Antipodes, and which, for obvious reasons, was not taken up, rightly assumed the title of champion ever since. That he was perfectly justified in doing so Roberts admitted by issuing the challenge from which the contest under notice emanated almost as soon as he returned to England. For the present match Roberts was very much fancied, owing in a great measure to his defeat of Cook on the previous occasion and to the undoubted brilliancy of his performances while in Australia. Cook had plenty of backers, however, and a great amount of confidence was placed in him on account of the splendid form he has shown in exhibition matches, and more especially of his easy defeat of W. Moss, of Manchester, in the course of which he obtained 156, the highest break ever made on a championship table. Apart from his play, the popularity of Cook is so great that if good wishes could have ensured success, the result of Monday's contest would have been different. As the contestants entered the room Roberts had the appearance of being in fine health, and consequently able to put forth all his well-known ability, while, on the other hand, we thought that we had seen Cook looking much better.

Play was advertised to begin at 7.30, but it was 8.10 when Cook won the string and allowed Roberts to lead off. After the customary misses Cook placed to his credit 17 and 8 in very fair style, his opponent being content with three small breaks, which brought him to 25. Roberts then manipulated a capital 41, and following on with 14 and 15, while his opponent did comparatively nothing, except a moderate 19, he thus early gained an advantage, the game being called—Roberts, 96; Cook, 49. With 12 and 17 Cook advanced to 78, his opponent, in the meantime, having reached 125, and here Roberts, after fluking the red into the right-hand bottom pocket, secured 24 and followed on with 31, which included a splendid cannon off two cushions, the performance being loudly applauded. Roberts had certainly the best of the luck up to this time, and was now leading by 74, but after several small contributions

Cook in splendid style put together 59, which included a series of nursery cannons and several brilliant hazards. The score now stood: Roberts, 204; Cook, 187; but following on with 24, the last-named reached 211 at 9.5, the announcement of "204 all" just previous being greeted with a loud cheer. As Roberts failed to get beyond 15, his adversary, by the aid of 24 and shortly afterwards a fine 36, advanced to 298, which placed him in front. Here, however, Roberts contributed a capital 37, to which Cook responded with 16, having entered his third hundred in 1 hr. 20 min., and the scores stood: Cook, 314; Roberts, 285. Cook's next was a carefully compiled 36, but leaving the balls well on, his opponent scored a capital 31. Both players then performed badly for some time, Roberts missing cue twice and Cook once. The first to break the spell was Roberts, who accumulated 18 in good style, and, continuing with 18, repassed Cook and entered his fifth century 1 hr. 40 min. from the start. A fairly good break of 20 from Cook again caused him to hold a slight lead, but the advantage was only momentarily, for, with the figures at 408 to Cook 413, Roberts put on 36 and 52 in magnificent style, giving him an advance of 64. Cook responded with 29 and 36, but to very little purpose, as his antagonist, who seemed now to have fairly warmed to his work, commencing with a fluky cannon, contributed 35. Failing to score, Cook then left the balls "on," and Roberts, making the most of the position, did not relinquish his cue until he had put together 71 in a masterly manner. Cook then took possession of the table, but during his break the interval was called, at which time (10 20) the board showed 621 for Roberts against 501 for Cook. Upon resuming, Cook completed his stroke for 22, and with the exception of 21 by the same cueist, the form shown was, indeed, indifferent by both players for some considerable time. At length Roberts compiled a very good 33, which brought his total to 751 to Cook's 591, and followed shortly afterwards with 26 and 20, while his opponent, who had made a succession of very small breaks, secured 22, this being his largest contribution since the interval. The game was called—Roberts 805 to Cook's 638, and the former held the cue. Starting with a cannon, Roberts, by a succession of beautiful strokes, scored 118, the best break of the evening, which landed him so far ahead as to make Cook's chance appear very small. Misses then became the order, but ultimately Cook obtained possession of the balls, and secured 45 in grand style. It was now, however, too late, for Roberts at this period of the game seemed to be holding him very cheaply, and with good reason, as he was more than 200 in advance, the state of the poll being. Roberts, 939; Cook, 731. With 20 and 33 Roberts brought his total to 992, while his adversary's last three breaks had collectively amounted to 6, his score standing at 745. Roberts then made 7, and failed at a cannon, to which Cook replied with a well-deserved 34, but leaving the white over the pocket, Roberts scored a white winner, and won the game at five minutes to twelve by 221 points. J. Bennett was referee, and Oxford Jonathan marked the game with his usual accuracy.

Although Roberts had the best of the luck, there is no doubt that the better man won. He has considerably improved in style, and plays with more delicacy of touch than we ever remember him to have done. His precision was remarkable, and the manner in which he extricated himself from difficult positions was truly marvellous. Cook, on the other hand, played, we thought, nervously, and though he at times displayed that brilliancy which usually characterises his play, he seemed to be labouring under the knowledge that he had met more than his match.

## THIRTEENTH MATCH.

J. BENNETT *v.* W. COOK.

Played at St. James's Hall, November 8th, 1880.

1,000 up. Bennett beat Cook by 51 points in 3 hours 37 minutes.

*(From "Bell's Life in London.")*

OWING to the migratory habits into which those two great players, W. Cook and J. Roberts, jun, who are, without doubt, far and away the best exponents of the "fascinating game," have fallen, the right to the title of champion has lately been unsettled. First, in 1876, Roberts, who was the holder, went off to India, and Cook, who had three months previously suffered defeat at his hands, in default of his accepting a challenge on the usual conditions, announced himself and was admitted to be champion. On his return Roberts met and defeated Cook, but he went away again, and as in 1878 Cook followed his example, England was left without a champion at all until Cook's return last spring. On Roberts coming back a fresh complication occurred, many considering Roberts the better player and declining to accept Cook as the champion; but after the Cook *v.* Mitchell match, Joseph Bennett, who, a decade ago, vanquished Roberts, calmly stepped up to the table and offered to play Roberts for the championship and the usual stake of £100 a side. He, however, demanded to know who was the present champion, and Roberts withdrawing any claim to the distinction, Cook was necessarily his proposed antagonist. As might be imagined, there was no hesitation on the part of Cook, and the necessary money to bind the match was put up instant. A date also (last Monday) was soon pitched upon, and it being, according to the original agreement, Messrs. Cox and Yeman's turn to provide a table, it is almost unnecessary to remark that they did their utmost to send a fine specimen of their best work, it being one of the finest that has been seen in the banqueting-room at St. James's Hall—where the match took place last Monday—for many a day, which is stating a good deal, as the St. James's people generally have the pick in these matters. The arrangements on Monday were all that could be wished, with perhaps the exception that the door-keepers were rather too severe in deciding whom they should admit, they going upon the hard and fast rule that no one should have access to the building unless he had a ticket, the result being that one or two of our most important provincial contemporaries were refused admission, though they had to "wire" their reports off the same night. This is a state of things that should be avoided in future if our metropolitan players wish their doings up here to be reported, as our friends from the provinces may, and probably will, get tired of obtaining their information second-hand. The match was announced for seven o'clock, and on reaching the saloon our representative found a large company assembled, as, despite the long figure (£1 1s.) for a reserved seat, or half that amount for a "pitch in the gallery," vacant seats were few and far between until you got to the topmost row, and even that held a fair complement. Nearly a quarter of an hour elapsed before the players put in an appearance, and it was eighteen minutes past when Bennett, having won the string, Cook gave the customary miss. Bennett followed suit, and another miss from either side followed, after which

Bennett left his ball hanging over the right-hand middle pocket. Cook put it down, ran in off the red, and gave a miss in baulk. After some safety play, Bennett was the first to run up anything of a score, raising his figures from 4 to 31 in a well-played 27; 15 and 30 drew him away from his opponent, the scores at the end of the latter break being—Bennett, 78; Cook, 11; and although the latter ran up a nicely played 18 directly afterwards, Bennett, with another 15 break, turned into the second century with a long lead, the figures being presently called—Bennett, 110; Cook, 45. The latter now warmed up a bit to his work, and at Cook 51, Bennett 123, he doubled his score, making, with the aid of a fine nursery of 5 cannons, a brilliant white loser in the left top pocket, and other strokes, 51, at the conclusion of which he played slightly too hard, driving the white into baulk. He then gave a miss, and his opponent failing to score, he temporarily assumed the lead, the marker calling when he broke down. Cook, 127; Bennett, 124; Cook's break thus amounting to 25. Bennett followed with 13, and shortly afterwards put on 10, a kiss spoiling him when a grand cannon was on. This brought Bennett's figures to 165 and Cook's to 127, and after the champion had made 14 he broke down at a difficult cannon, just missing it by a hair's breadth. Here, aided by a fluke, Bennett obtained a cannon, and playing in rare style, his luck evidently having given him confidence, he pegged away merrily and rattled up 77. Here some question was mooted as to the balls and they were changed. This did not improve Cook's luck, Bennett making useful runs of 16, 18, and 17, whilst the only double figures Cook got into were 17 and 20, and the ex-champion looked like drawing away, his score at this period being 295 to Cook's 184. The latter now added 7, leaving a double baulk, off which Bennett failed to score, and Cook, getting the balls well together, made a nursery of four cannons, following it up with three more, his total break amounting to 30. Bennett played for safety, and Cook crept to 241 when Bennett ran from 328 to 351 in a well-played 23 10 and 20 from Bennett drew the latter further away, the marker presently calling Bennett, 385; Cook, 254. More safety play now took place until, at Cook 257, Bennett 388, the latter was again favoured by luck, as in trying for a cannon he missed it and fluked his own ball in the left bottom pocket, his innings amounting to 19, thus turning into his fifth century, whilst Cook's figures were only 257. Cook then put on 24, but Bennett was equal to the occasion and ran up 34 and 21. Score: Cook, 286; Bennett, 481. Here Cook made a grand effort to stem the tide which was setting in steadily against him, and made two splendid runs of 54 and 41, bringing up his total at the interval to 386 to Bennett's 508. The play had now occupied 1 hr. 56 mins., and an adjournment of half an hour was proclaimed, the game being resumed at 10 45. Cook, who was in hand, added 4 and gave a miss, Bennett following suit; but nothing was done of moment until at Cook 408, Bennett 509, the latter ran up 28, and, on Cook missing an apparently easy cannon, fluked the red into the left top pocket instead of making the cannon he tried for, and before he retired from the table added 22 to his score. Cook, in response, made 36, and after 10 from Bennett, drew a bit closer with 20 and 22, reaching 491 to Bennett's 573. Another fluke now favoured the ex-champion, his ball, though sent up for a cannon, running into the right-hand middle pocket, and 18 were added to his figures. Cook had the balls apparently left on, but after raising his total by 4, he left the red in the jaws of one of the top pockets, and Bennett putting it down, did not cease scoring until the game stood. Bennett, 611; Cook, 495.

Safety play was now the order of the evening for an innings or two, after which Cook was again busy, consecutive runs of 24 and 28 bringing him to 556 to Bennett's 619; 30 more soon afterwards brought Cook to 595 to Bennett's 644, but the ex-champion still had the best of the luck, and a fine run of 49 once more placed him nearly 100 in front, the game being: Bennett, 693; Cook, 606. Play now was rather slow and Cook's ill-luck seemed to stick persistently to him, as at 643 he appeared to have a chance, but he just missed it, leaving his ball in the jaws of the left middle pocket. Bennett went in off it, and did not cease scoring until he had added 28. Cook put on 45, and Bennett, aided by another fluke, made 10, which, with a little more luck, he supplemented a little later on with 20, reaching 795 to Cook's 698. Cook, after this, seemed to improve slightly and added 17. This met with no response, and, for once, the balls broke kindly. Cook, having an opportunity, got them together and made nurseries of four and seven cannons, which, with other fine play, ran him up a break of 107, this, for the first time, landing him in front. Bennett, however, in no wise seemed disconcerted, breaks of 11, 24, and 14 again taking him to the fore, the game at the end of the last-named break being: Cook, 834; Bennett, 844. Cook's next essay amounted to 37, and after 20 from Bennett he was off again with 28 and 39, the latter break containing his first fluke throughout the game, viz a fluke into the right top pocket. This break brought the figures to Cook, 938; Bennett, 864; and now it looked any odds on the champion. Bennett, however, played as calmly as if there was not a sixpence at stake and with great dash. He first made 15, leaving the balls so safely that Cook gave a miss, then, aided in no little measure by a fluke into the left top pocket, 37 was put on and 19 followed, 993 being reached, whilst Cook's score stood at 941. Cook again appeared to have a chance, but when he had made 6 the balls touched and had to be broken. This finally did the business, Cook only making 3 more, and Bennett running from 994 out, thus won at four minutes to twelve a well-contested game by 51 points. Mr. J. H. Smith was referee, but so smoothly did everything pass off that his office was a sinecure.

## FOURTEENTH MATCH.

J. BENNETT (CHAMPION) *v.* T. TAYLOR.

Played at St. James's Hall on January 12th and 13th, 1881.

1,000 up. Bennett beat Taylor by 90 points.

(*From "Bell's Life in London."*)

PUNCTUALITY is certainly not a virtue with which billiard players are endowed, and perhaps it is as well to allow a little margin for late arrivals; but in this case we would suggest the propriety of advertising the start to be effected a little earlier than 7 p.m., as the twenty minutes that were wasted on Wednesday evening would have just about sufficed to finish the game in, thus avoiding the waste of much valuable time. Of course, no one expected the match to last so long, but it would be well in future to avoid the possible recurrence of the mishap of both players and spectators having to attend twice. But to the game. Taylor won the string, and Bennett led off with the customary miss.

Taylor followed suit under the left-hand cushion; Bennett then, in trying for the cannon, missed it, but put his opponent's ball down, and after potting the red, gave a miss in baulk. Taylor did nothing. Bennett then made a red winner, and afterwards followed it up by putting in both whites and giving another miss. More safety play followed, and nothing was done worth recording until—from Taylor 9, Bennett 23—the former made matters even with 15, winding up with a miss. The champion, in reply, fluked a white loser, but did not follow it up, and Taylor also failing to make any appreciable advance, the scores crept very slowly up to: Bennett, 53; Taylor, 50. Here Bennett got the balls well set at the top of the table, made a series of cannons and red losers, then a white loser and a cannon, the latter leaving the balls at the top of the table, when he once more made the most of his position, chiefly off the red, and did not leave off until he had accumulated 93, his last shot, a white loser in the right middle pocket, being a treat to see. Taylor had a rather difficult cannon left on, and failed to make it, but after Bennett had added 4 only, thus bringing his score to 150, he was again busy making 40, principally by cannons and white losers. The play now slowed down until—at Bennett 167, Taylor 112—the champion made 20, including a magnificent long cannon, and wound up by leaving a double baulk. Taylor gave a miss, and on his opponent failing to move, got 10, leaving a difficult cannon on. This Bennett made, but did nothing further, and the next essay from either player was unproductive; but on again being let in, Bennett knocked up 22 in fine style, and supplemented it with 38 and 125, the last-named being the largest break on record in a championship match. This brought his score to 375, whilst Taylor, who had scored nothing for four successive innings, was still at 129. The balls were now changed at the request of Taylor, and the improvement was at once apparent, his next two contributions being 79 and 40. This little spurt, however, being over, safety play and small scores were the order of the evening, 17 from Bennett being the best run for a considerable period. At Taylor 345, Bennett 454, Taylor made 35, and leaving Bennett an opening, the champion scored 19; game—Taylor, 380; Bennett, 473. Taylor only added 7, but Bennett did nothing, and in his next, a 10 shot aided Taylor in getting into the same century. Playing steadily, the challenger gradually decreased the gap, 21 and 57 bringing him within one of the elder player. At 487 Taylor caught his man, and did not complete his break until he was 10 in front. Bennett, who had not caused the marker to alter his figures in his last two essays, and had been, comparatively speaking, standing still for some time, again failed to score, and Taylor completed the first half of the game amid loud cheers. He kept on to 526, and then the usual interval was proclaimed, but slightly curtailed of its ordinary proportions owing to the lateness of the hour—ten o'clock.

Taylor resumed play at 10 22, but only added a couple, bringing his break to 31. At first neither had any very good opportunities, and safety play predominated, a considerable time elapsing before the scores were brought to: Bennet, 515; Taylor, 549. At this point Bennett had the misfortune to miss a long cannon, and Taylor, commencing with a lucky 5 shot, rattled up 53 in rare style, and following this up with 23 (chiefly losers), 37, and 16, looked like going clean away, the marker calling at the end at the last-named break—Bennett, 554; Taylor, 678. This state of affairs continued for a long time, and some of the spectators were evidently getting tired of the constant misses and double baulks; but both players were rightly apprehensive of throwing



away a chance, though ever on the look-out for one. At length fortune favoured Bennett, who had an opening, and getting the balls together at the top of the table, he nursed them with consummate skill, not leaving off until he had drawn within 77 of his opponent. Game: Bennett, 626; Taylor, 703. Taylor made 14, including a grand 5 shot (red loser and cannon), and Bennett, by dint of some magnificent play, in the course of which, however, he was once aided by luck in the shape of a fluky cannon, reached 696, his break being 70. He left a double baulk, off which Taylor failed to score. After a cannon from either player, Bennett was once more busy, a useful run of 45 reinstating him in the leading position. Scores. Bennett, 743; Taylor, 728. The champion, however, on again having possession of the table, only made 2, and Taylor, playing well and carefully, caused "745 all" to be called, finishing his break of 19 at 747. Three innings later Bennett ran away again with 55, this giving him a lead of 52. Taylor did not score, and 40 more from Bennett looked like making the result of the match very nearly a certainty; but Taylor played pluckily on, and two nice little runs of 18 and 25 brought him into the same century—viz. 805 to Bennett's 865. Closing time was now rapidly approaching, and it was evident that unless Bennett went right away the match could not be finished before the period arrived at which a paternal Government decrees that licensed premises shall be closed. Both players, however, took their time, and though naturally desirous of finishing, did not abate one atom of their care, Bennett in particular playing as leisurely as if it had been an hour earlier. Eleven, 25, and 24, with smaller runs, brought him to 938 to Taylor's 813, the latter player having nothing left on for some time, but here he got a look in, and raised the drooping hopes of his friends with a well-played 56. Bennett presently reached 976 to 882, when Taylor had another good try, and when time was called at 12 30 had made 26, and was still in hand with the balls well placed at the top of the table. The referee, Mr. J. H. Smith, then settled that play was to be resumed at three o'clock on Thursday. At that time, or, correctly speaking, ten minutes later, Taylor resumed his break, but only scored 2. Bennett then, in trying for a cannon, fluked his own ball into the right-hand middle pocket, and keeping the balls well in play, scored the remaining 22, thus winning by 90 points.

---

### FIFTEENTH MATCH.

J. ROBERTS, JUN., *v.* W. COOK.

Played at the Argyll Hall, Argyll Street, Regent Street, on  
March 30th, 31st, and April 1st, 1885.

3,000 up. Roberts beat Cook by 92 points.

(*From "Bell's Life in London."*)

COOK won the string, and Roberts opened with the customary miss. Cook replied under the cushion. Another miss on each side followed, and then Roberts went out for a cannon and made it, but failed at a second. Cook again played safety, and Roberts essayed a cannon, but it did not come off, and more wretchedly amateurish play protracted the proceedings, ten innings apiece being necessary to raise the totals to—

Roberts, 13; Cook, 27. Here the champion made the first double-figure break, 23, but doing nothing in his next essay. Cook with 37 moved on to 68 to Roberts' 36. More tedious play followed, Roberts, however, scoring the faster with breaks of 16, 11, 11, 15, 27, and 18, and reaching 144 to Cook's 116. The latter now seemed to have warmed to his work a little, and putting in useful runs of 35 and 34 against Roberts' 28, turned into his third hundred at 206 to Roberts' 181. Another spell of inactivity followed, 15 and 19 from Cook and 23 from Roberts being the only runs worth recording until, with the scores at Cook 288, Roberts 243, the ex-champion drew out with a finely played 84, breaking down at a very difficult red winner, which, perhaps, he should not have played for, as he might have made a screw-back cannon. This seemed to put Roberts on his mettle, the champion's next innings amounting to 67. This fast scoring, however, did not last, the subsequent play being uninteresting for a long while, the only break of any account up to the interval, which occurred at Cook 500, Roberts 426, being 29 from the former.

The interval—which, considering the lateness of the hour, might well have been confined to its announced proportions, viz. ten minutes, instead of being enlarged to nineteen—being over, Cook, who had nothing left on, gave a miss, and after a miss and a non-score for Roberts, progressed with 37, breaking down at a difficult loser off the white. Roberts answered with 22, when he missed a cannon by a hair's breadth. Cook did not alter his figures, and Roberts drew closer with a well-played 34, a loser again bringing his break to a close. Minor breaks were once more the order of the day, neither player seeming to master the tight pockets, although Roberts in one pretty run of 13 made three grand losers, each of which would probably have brought any less skilful player to grief, and eventually the scores were taken to: Cook, 565; Roberts, 531. Cook then advanced with 23, and Roberts replied with 17. This elicited 27 from the leader, after which Roberts drew closer with 16, 21, and 19, getting within twenty-three points of his man at 604 to 627. With breaks of 16, 21, 19, 16, and 51 Roberts caught and passed Cook, whose best break meanwhile had been 15, taking the lead at 671 to 660. The game became very tedious after this. Cook, regaining the lead with breaks of 15 and 21, reached 728 to 691. Directly afterwards Roberts contributed 39, and following it up with 32, arrived at 793 to 781. A break of 38 placed Roberts further in front, but Cook checked this advance with 37 and 80, taking the lead again at 950 to 924. Roberts pulled up after this, and at the close of the play at 12.55 the scores were: Roberts, 1,000, Cook, 971; the former to play.

Resuming his overnight break of 26, Roberts added 10, bringing it up to 36, and the score to 1,010 to 971. After this he did very little for some time, 24 being his best break, and Cook crept up with 10, 13, and 23, and took the lead again at 1,057 to 1,054. This seemed to rouse Roberts. Breaks of 32, 50, and 129 (the latter being the biggest break ever made in a championship match) followed in rapid succession, and taking the champion to 1,275 to Cook's 1,084. Cook seemed in no wise discouraged by this sudden advance, and playing in his best style, accumulated two useful breaks of 53 and 32 respectively, reaching 1,169 to Roberts' 1,275. The leader, however, drew further away three innings later with a grandly played run of 75, which he followed up with 22, arriving at 1,376 to Cook's 1,177. Cook responded with 29, and then the play became slow, nothing worth recording occurring for the next

dozen innings, when with the score at Roberts 1,406, Cook 1,245, the former put in a useful 33. More slow play followed, and the proceedings were again very tedious up to just before the interval, when Roberts put in 37 and Cook 23, and the former brought about the adjournment by arriving at 1,501 to Cook's 1,292, after one hour and thirty-five minutes' play, and was still in possession of the table, having made 9. When play was resumed after twenty-five minutes' rest, Roberts added 3, after which for the next sixteen innings on each side Roberts' highest break was 12 and Cook's 15. With the scores at Roberts 1,527, Cook 1,361, however, the leader progressed with 55, bringing the totals to 1,627 to 1,363. More slow play followed, Cook being the first to make a move with 51, which took him to 1,415 to Roberts' 1,658.

Play after this was again very slow, 18 from Cook being the only break of any account until Roberts from 1,744 progressed to 1,771 in a useful run of 27, and supplemented it in his next essay with 34. This brought the game to: Roberts, 1,806; Cook, 1,461; and for the next four innings neither made any material progress. With the score, however, at Cook 1,470, Roberts 1,818, Cook got well set, and playing in his very best style, manipulated 107, breaking down at a difficult cannon. Two innings later, Roberts, in essaying a winner, fluked his own ball in, and favoured in this respect, obtained an opening which produced 34. Cook answered shortly afterwards with 21, and the leader making no advance, the ex-champion drew up a bit with 67, reaching 1,670 to Roberts' 1,860. Roberts responded with 30, but Cook met this advance with 27 and 24, bringing the game to 1,757 to 1,908. Shortly after this, Roberts, while trying for a loser, accidentally touched his opponent's ball, and a foul thus nullified a promising opening. The game was now slow in the extreme, not a single break worth recording being made save 42 from Cook, until play closed at 12.25 with the scores at: Roberts, 2,001; Cook, 1,929.

When play ceased at 12.25 a.m. yesterday morning Roberts, with a loser off the white in the left bottom pocket, had brought his score to 2,001 to Cook's 1,929, and on resuming play last evening at 8.11 he played for a cannon, but just missed. He left Cook a cannon, and the latter made it, but failed to make any further advance. Roberts next had two unproductive innings, and then Cook drew closer with 42, when, losing the white, he gave a safety miss. Roberts returned the compliment, and Cook remaining stationary, the leader progressed with 58, breaking down when essaying a difficult screw loser off the white. Cook responded with a carefully played contribution of 34, after which play was rather slow for some time, the only item that roused the enthusiasm of the spectators being a grandly executed loser of Roberts', who, however, when he seemed to have an opening, broke down at his next shot by missing a cannon. He, however, made the next move with 24, and then the game flagged once more, strict caution being the order of the evening, and safety misses frequently coming from both sides. Eventually the scores crept up to Roberts, 2,136, Cook, 2,061. Each now had two unproductive innings, after which Roberts contributed 16, and Cook was answerable for 14. Roberts played safety, and Cook only made 2, after which the leader manipulated 40 in his best style, when, breaking down at a difficult hazard, he left Cook a good game on, and the latter utilised it to the extent of 52. Game: Roberts, 2,192; Cook, 2,130. Roberts was the next to move with 21, and on Cook replying with 24, the leader checked this advance with a break of exactly similar

value, bringing his total to 2,249 to Cook's 2,169. Four innings later Roberts put in a useful run of 31, Cook replying thereto with 20 and a splendidly played 59, in which he nursed the balls carefully at the top of the table, and made a series of delicately played cannons; at last, however, in trying to run in off the white, an unfortunate kiss terminated his break. Roberts only added 15, when he, too, had a slice of ill-luck, making a miss-cue. Another lull in the proceedings now occurred. Cook, however, scored the faster with 16, and got within forty-five points of the leader at 2,304 to Roberts' 2,349. A carefully played 24 brought them still closer at 2,349 to 2,303, and in his next essay Cook with 17 ran to within a point of his man and gave a miss. Roberts also played safety, and four more misses on each side were exchanged, after which Cook made the first move with a splendid long red winner in the top right-hand pocket, and in his next innings passed to the front with 21, Punch calling the game. Roberts, 2,373; Cook, 2,395. Still playing with the utmost care, Cook forged ahead with 33. Roberts was after him again with 20 and 43; but Cook held his own, and at the interval had reached 2,501 to 2,461 in an unfinished 30.

After twenty minutes' absence, Cook resumed his break, making it into 52, but after this remained quiet for his next four innings. Roberts, however, was unable to take advantage of this inactivity to any great extent, and Cook, getting a favourable opening, ran from 2,531 to 2,570, Roberts' score at this point being 2,494. Roberts now set to work, and playing in splendid style, presently caused the marker to call "2,570 all." He also was well set, and did not cease scoring until he had accumulated a grand run of 123. Game. Roberts, 2,617; Cook, 2,570—breaking down at a difficult winner. After a minor break on each side, Roberts drew out with 36, and the balls breaking badly for Cook the leader advanced to 2,684 to 2,586 with the aid of 20. Cook still having no opportunity of making a break, Roberts increased his lead with 46 and 51, the latter run taking his score to 2,783 to Cook's 2,592. Cook did nothing much in reply, and Roberts went further away with 16, 31, and 41, arriving at 2,877 to Cook's 2,612. Here Cook came out with 25, winding up with a safety miss, off which Roberts failing to score, Cook added 13, when, in trying for a loser, his ball came from the pocket, and left Roberts an opening, which the latter utilised to the extent of 19. Cook again failed to score, but Roberts only made 4, and Cook picked up a bit with 35—breaking down through missing a difficult cannon by a hair's breadth—and a 37, including a finely played nursery of ten cannons. Game. Cook, 2,723; Roberts, 2,905. The latter subsequently remained idle for some time, and Cook with consecutive runs of 19, 52, and 53, advanced to 2,862 to Roberts' 2,940, and after a miss on each side, put in a useful 31, reaching 2,894 to Roberts' 2,953. Roberts, however, presently ran out at 12.15 from 2,971 in an incomplete 29, a winner by 92 points.

---

## SIXTEENTH (AND LAST) MATCH.

J. ROBERTS, JUN. (CHAMPION) *v.* J. BENNETT.

Played at the Royal Aquarium, Westminster,  
on June 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th, 1885.

3,000 up. Roberts beat Bennett by 1,640 points.

(From "*Bell's Life in London*.")

THE makers whose turn it was to supply the table were Messrs. Cox and Yeman, and the one erected for this occasion seemed to play admirably. As usual full prices were charged, and although the newly formed saloon's seating capacity was not taxed to the utmost last evening, there was a large and fashionable attendance to witness the play. Roberts, as he invariably is just now, was in fine form, and some of his strokes were little short of marvellous; but Bennett did not show to advantage, having bad luck all through. Each time when he seemed about to make a good break the balls ran awkwardly, and, game and careful player as he is, he must have felt disheartened. Up to the interval he had only scored 81 points, and when Roberts reached 751 in an unfinished run of 15, he had only raised his score another 101 points. Roberts' longest run was 74, but he kept putting in breaks of about 60, and play was consequently fast, lasting only one hour thirty-five minutes. The scores were carefully taken and audibly called by J. Ellis. Punch Lombard spotted the ball and looked after the requirements of the players, and Mr. P. Jennings officiated as referee. Details —

Punctually to time, at 8 30 p.m., the players made their appearance, and little time was cut to waste in preliminary matters, the balls being weighed, and after a trial shot or two, the string for break took place six minutes later. In this Roberts proved successful, and selecting the plain ball, deputed his opponent to lead off, which he did in the usual manner. Roberts replied under the left cushion, and Bennett essayed to cannon, but missed, the white ball, however, rolling into the left top pocket. His next shot was a failure, and Roberts, commencing with a cannon, made the first important move, 33, a red loser terminating his innings. Bennett again tried to cannon, but an unlucky kiss robbed him of the score. The champion's next effort produced 14, when he again failed to make a red loser. Seventeen was the amount of Bennett's answering contribution. Score: Bennett, 20; Roberts, 47. The leader then progressed with half a dozen, and Bennett added 8, and looked like going on, but left himself with a difficult long cannon, in playing for which off two cushions he missed by a hair's breadth. Roberts did nothing in reply, and Bennett making 4, left the champion a favourable opening, which the latter utilised to the extent of 27, including a delicately played nursery of six cannons, but broke down through playing carelessly at an easy cannon. This took his score to 80 to Bennett's 32, and then Bennett again appeared like scoring a bit, but after adding 15, left both balls close together in baulk. He played up the table, and after striking both cushions, succeeded in hitting the white, but failed to touch the red. This also was not the worst of it, as the balls were left well placed for Roberts, who did not cease scoring until he had accumulated 69, when he failed at a difficult white loser. The score was now: Roberts, 149; Bennett, 47; and the first hundred had occupied exactly sixteen minutes. Once more Bennett had hard luck, as after making 7, he had an almost impossible cannon,

and naturally failed. For Roberts, on the other hand, the balls broke well, and playing in faultless style, he began to steal further away with 36, 39 (including a useful nursery of eight cannons), and 74, in which he nursed the balls carefully, and obtained a run of seven cannons, bringing the totals to 302 to Bennett's 72. Bennett did nothing in his next three essays, and as Roberts also remained quiet the scores slowly crept—Roberts, 330; Bennett, 81—when the former, who also had had a trio of unproductive innings, got well set, and carried his score to 375 in a grandly played, incomplete run of 45, thus causing the interval after forty-seven minutes' play. After nineteen minutes' rest Roberts increased his break to 61, and Bennett replied with 9. Some safety play and minor breaks followed, the scores slowly rising to: Roberts, 394; Bennett, 110. Here Roberts infused some life into the proceedings with 51, and three minutes later put on another useful run of 60, when, in trying to run in off the red, he left his own ball in the jaws of the left top pocket. Bennett, however, made no advance, and Roberts with 36 presently progressed to 569 to Bennett's 143. More slow play followed, after which, with 60, Roberts raised his total to 658 to Bennett's 152. Bennett next made a bit of a stand with 17, but Roberts answered with 59. Game: Roberts, 732; Bennett, 173; and with the score at 736 to Bennett's 182, Roberts ran to a point over the proportion for the day, having made 15, and being in possession of the table with an easy cannon on. The duration of the last half of the proceedings was 48 minutes.

When play ceased on Monday night Roberts, who had been having matters all his own way, reached 751 to Bennett's 182, and on resuming at 8.40 p.m. yesterday, he brought his break up to 109, when, finding nothing left on, he brought his own ball and the red into baulk, leaving them apparently safe. Bennett, however, made a cannon and a red loser before again letting the champion in. Unfortunately for the rearmost player, he left Roberts a cannon, which the latter effecting, succeeded in bringing the balls closer together, and manipulating a finely played nursery of twelve cannons before he separated them more than a few inches and resorted to more open play. At this he was equally at home, and did not cease scoring until he had accumulated 83, when a difficult white loser brought him to grief, his ball sticking in the jaws of the right top pocket. Four was all Bennett could make in reply, and Roberts, after adding 5, missed a long cannon. Again Bennett disappointed both himself and his friends by breaking down at a hard loser when he had just completed his second century. Roberts was once more busy on resuming possession of the table, a brilliant run of 121, in which he made, amongst other hazards, 3 and 2 spots, resulting from his next effort. Just as he looked like beating his own record of 129, made in his match with Cook, however, a red loser in the top pocket stopped his career. Still, Bennett made no progress worth recording; his next five innings, three of which were barren, produced but 20 points (9 and 11), and with 25, 17, and 20 unfinished (including a nursery of seven cannons), Roberts caused the interval by arriving at 1,126 to Bennett's 220, having thus scored 375 points to Bennett's 38. Duration of play, thirty-five minutes. Roberts being so far ahead, a much longer interval than usual was indulged in, the recess amounting to quite as long as the first instalment of the play. On resuming, Roberts increased his break to 72, and Bennett now seemed to warm up to his work, making a finely played run of 31, his biggest break up to this point, including a series of his favourite long losers. Roberts responded with 21, and Bennett bettered

his position with 17 and 39, reaching 316 to Roberts' 1,212, winding up by potting his opponent, and leaving both the other balls behind the baulk line. Roberts gave a safety miss, and on Bennett failing to score, went further ahead with 73, when, in trying for a 5 shot, he missed both the cannon and the hazard. Two innings later the champion added 24, and on Bennett replying with 37, moved forward with 25. Score: Roberts, 1,344; Bennett, 387. The latter made 9 and Roberts failed to score. Bennett then put on 26, Roberts replying with 25. Bennett's next two innings were unproductive, and Roberts with 4 and an unfinished 127, the finest break ever made in a championship, being within two of the record, and including thirty nursery cannons, terminated the day's play by arriving at his points, the scores standing: Roberts (to play), 1,500; Bennett, 422. Duration of play—1 hour 29 minutes.

On resuming possession of the table at 8 40 p.m. yesterday, Roberts, who, aided with a delicately played nursery of twenty cannons, had accumulated 127, or within a couple of points of the record, achieved by him in his recent match for the championship with Cook, made another cannon, bringing the nursery to twenty-one, and then commencing with a white loser, resorted to more open play, and did not cease scoring until he had converted his run into the magnificent total of 155, when, in trying to make a thin loser in the left-hand top pocket, he just missed, leaving Bennett a chance. This the latter, who was evidently in much better form than on either of the previous days, availed himself of to the fullest extent by putting in a brilliantly played run of 35, including several of his famous losing hazards. Some minor play followed, 18 apiece being the largest contributions, until, with his score at 1,521 to Bennett's 537, Roberts made the next important move with 21, obtained with the aid of a nursery of seven cannons. Bennett now seemed to wake up a bit, and, playing carefully, put in a faultless contribution of 68, winding up with a double baulk. Roberts, scoring, responded with 20, and, after another unproductive innings on each side, Bennett, responding with another fine run of 63, brings his total to 668 to Roberts' 1,662. He, however, left both balls behind the baulk-line, and this time Roberts gave a miss. Two innings later the champion put on 72, after which he remained quiet for the next half-dozen innings. Bennett also made nothing of a move, three out of his half-dozen innings being unproductive. Some life was presently infused into the proceedings by Bennett making 76 and reaching 777 to Roberts' 1,771. Subsequently he thrice failed to alter his figures, and Roberts progressed meanwhile with 16, 25, and 22 to 1,841. He (Bennett) got an opening and accumulated 39, and with the scores Roberts 1,848, Bennett 818, the usual adjournment took place after one hour twenty-one minutes' play. After eighteen minutes' rest, Roberts, whose turn it was to play, contributed 16, and Bennett answered with 11. The leader failed to alter his figures, and Bennett, getting an opening, brought the balls together at the top of the table, and nursing them in his best style, made runs of fourteen and five successive cannons in a total of 92, concluding his break by potting his opponent's ball and bringing the other two into baulk. Roberts did not score, but, after a minor break or two, seemed to think he had allowed his opponent sufficient opportunities, and playing in grand style, came out with runs of 45, 37, 38, 17, and 17, almost in succession, a miss being the only temporary stoppage in his victorious career, and running his total to 2,042 to Bennett's 981. Bennett, whose only break worth recording had been 19, now put on 9, and then Roberts was busy with 147, including a

beautifully played nursery of eleven cannons. Bennett replied with 26, after which Roberts was off again with 36 and an incomplete 21, terminating the day's proceedings after two hours thirty-two minutes' play by arriving at 2,259 to Bennett's 1,029. Play will be resumed and concluded to-night, commencing at 8.30 p.m.

As might be imagined after the poor show made by Bennett during the opening stages of the contest, there was not a particularly large attendance at the Royal Aquarium, Westminster, yesterday, to witness the finish of the match of 3,000 up between J. Roberts, jun (the holder), and Joseph Bennett for the above title and £100 a side. The play, too, does not call for any lengthy description, Roberts doing nearly all the work, Bennett seeming still out of form. Any shortcomings on his part, however, were amply atoned for by the brilliant execution of Roberts, who, as we predicted the other day, proved to the company that the spot stroke, although, of course, very difficult on a table with pockets but three inches in width, is still playable, in his case, at all events, the champion in one of his breaks making 15 of these hazards in succession, and looking like going on when the red unluckily stuck in the jaws of the right-hand top pocket. Later on, also, he made runs of 5 and 16. It is almost needless to remark that these elicited hearty rounds of applause, as also did some of his brilliant cannon play. During the first half of the final instalment of the game Bennett only scored 98 points, his highest break being 18, but he did better after the interval, making, amongst other things, four breaks of exactly 27. Still he had no chance of even decreasing his arrears, and Roberts won by no fewer than 1,640 points. J. Ellis again officiated as marker, Punch Lombard spotted the red and looked after the requirements of the players, and Mr. P. Jennings discharged the office of referee, which in this case proved a sinecure. Details.—

When play ceased on Wednesday night, Roberts, with an incomplete break of 21, had reached 2,250 to Bennett's 1,029, and on resuming yesterday at 8.36 he made his innings into 44, when he broke down at a difficult white loser. Bennett did very little now for some time, and Roberts, with 28, advanced to 2,309 to Bennett's 1,048. Some safety play followed, Roberts being again the first to make a move with 18. Bennett replied with 14, Roberts responding with 32. Two breaks later Bennett contributed 18, his only run worth recording up to the interval, which Roberts presently brought about by travelling to 2,627 to Bennett's 1,127, with breaks of 70 (including a nursery of thirteen cannons), 41, 25, 64 (fifteen spots), and 27 unfinished, after forty-three minutes' play. This he made into 35, when a red winner brought him to grief. Bennett failed to score, and Roberts effected a cannon. Again Bennett's effort was unproductive, and Roberts further increased his lead with 68 (three spots). As on the previous evening, Bennett warmed up after the interval, and played better, his next essay producing 28. Roberts answered with 15 (all spots), and, after 15 from Bennett, was again busy with 82 (sixteen spots). His next two innings amounted to 12 and 14 only, and Bennett, putting in 27 twice, took his score to 1,224 to the champion's 2,828. Neither scored in his subsequent essay, and then Bennett, strange to relate, put in two more runs of 27 and one of 36, reaching 1,347 to Roberts' (who had meanwhile been answerable for 33) 2,934. Roberts responded with 40, and, after 13 from Bennett, ran out in an incomplete break of 26, a winner by 1,640 points, the totals being: Roberts, 3,000; Bennett, 1,360. Duration of play, 1 hour 34 minutes.



# THE MATCH OF THE CENTURY.

---

## HISTORY OF THE ROBERTS-DAWSON MATCH.

---

*Sportsman*, November 4th, 1898 :—

C. DAWSON TO THE WORLD, JOHN ROBERTS PREFERRED.

Not having had any satisfactory reply to his challenge of October 25th, C. Dawson requests us to state that he is still prepared to play anyone in the world, John Roberts preferred, a match of 18,000 up, under the new rules, on a neutral "Standard" table, in a neutral hall, and under neutral management, for £100 a side. The "gate money" can go with the stakes, if desired. An acceptance through the *Sportsman* will be promptly attended to.

*Sportsman*, November 5th, 1898 :—

ROBERTS'S REPLY TO DAWSON.

£100 DEPOSITED TO BIND A MATCH.

In the *Sportsman* of yesterday C. Dawson repeated a challenge to the world, John Roberts preferred, to play a match at billiards of 18,000 up, under the new rules, on a neutral "Standard" table, in a neutral hall, and under neutral management, for £100 a side, the "gate money" to go with the stakes, if that were desired.

Roberts informed us yesterday that he would accept Dawson's challenge on one condition, this being that the stakes should not be less than £250 a side. On this point he desired to draw Dawson's attention to his letter of December 16th, 1897, in which he stated that he could not play for so small a stake as £100 a side. We may add that £100 has been deposited with us on behalf of Roberts to bind the proposed match on level terms with Dawson.

Roberts also made a proposal on his own account; namely, to give Dawson 5,500 in 21,000 up, spot and push barred, at the Egyptian Hall, bonzoline balls to be used, for £250 a side, Dawson to be paid £200 for his share of the "gate" in the event of Roberts losing.

The two matches, if played, would be quite distinct, and, added Roberts, "Dawson may have either or both, and in the order he prefers."

*Sportsman*, November 11th, 1898 :—

CHARLES DAWSON TO THE WORLD.

Charles Dawson wishes to state that, as he has not received any acceptance of his repeated challenge to play any man in the world on even terms, and as the championship promoted by the Billiard Association will be begun on January 9th next, he will leave the issue of that event to decide who is the best player. Whether he wins or loses in that contest, however, Dawson's offer is still open. He will play any man in the world for £100 a side—which has always been the amount of the stake in championship matches—and is prepared to bet the whole of the "gate money" upon the result.

With regard to Roberts's offer of absurd starts, Dawson adds that he has no intention whatever of playing for his (Roberts's) benefit; and, unless Roberts is prepared to play upon fair terms, he is only wasting his time in making such proposals.

*Sportsman*, November 12th, 1898 :—

ROBERTS ACCEPTS DAWSON'S CHALLENGE.

HE WILL PLAY FOR £100 A SIDE AND THE "GATE."

John Roberts called at the *Sportsman* office yesterday morning and intimated his willingness to accept Charles Dawson's challenge, and play him for £100 a side and the whole of the "gate money." The terms of Dawson's challenge published in the *Sportsman* were: "C. Dawson will play anyone in the world, John Roberts preferred, a match of 18,000 up under the new rules, on a neutral Standard table, in a neutral hall, and under neutral management, for £100 a side. The 'gate money' can go with the stakes, if desired."

Roberts has deposited £100 with the Editor of the *Sportsman*, and will be glad if Dawson will cover that amount without delay, so that a meeting may be held at the office of this paper early next week to draw up articles.

*Sportsman*, November 14th, 1898 :—

C. DAWSON TO JOHN ROBERTS.

Dawson called at the *Sportsman* office on Saturday and asked us to express his pleasure that Roberts has at length consented to play him on the terms of his original challenge. He will be glad to meet Roberts at the office of this paper on an early day to discuss the proposed match and draw up articles, but he begs to state that the engagements he has already entered into for the season will render it impossible for him to play Roberts until March, the only month he has left open being January, when the Billiard Association's

championship, open to the world, is to be contested. Whether Dawson wins or loses that contest, he will be prepared, as he stated in Friday's paper, to meet Roberts on the conditions laid down in his challenge. Dawson will be glad to learn which day next week at twelve o'clock will be convenient for Roberts to attend at the *Sportsman* offices.

*Sportsman*, November 22nd, 1898:—

ROBERTS *v.* DAWSON.

THE GREAT MATCH NOT YET ARRANGED.

DISAGREEMENT AS TO THE BALLS.

John Roberts and Charles Dawson attended at the *Sportsman* offices yesterday by appointment to discuss the arrangements for their long-talked-of match, and, if possible, to draw up and sign articles of agreement. The discussion had not proceeded far when it became evident that articles would not be signed, or even drafted that day. The question of the sort of balls to be used in the match was the rock on which the parties split, Dawson expressing his determination to play only with ivory balls, and Roberts contending that they should decide by the spin of a coin whether ivory or bonzoline balls should be used. Ultimately it was decided to refer the point to the committee of the Billiard Association. Roberts remarked that as he was to play under the rules of the Billiard Association, he would abide by the decision of the committee, and Dawson declared his belief that the committee would not vote for the use of bonzoline balls in a match of such importance, seeing that they had stipulated that ivory balls must be used in all matches for the championship of billiards. At the same time, the Huddersfield man made it clear that there would be no match if the committee decided in favour of the bonzoline balls.

At the outset of the meeting Roberts said he accepted the terms of Dawson's challenge in their entirety, and he intended to keep Dawson strictly to them. It may here be mentioned that the challenge was to play 18,000 up on even terms, under the new rules of the Billiard Association, "on a neutral Standard table, in a neutral hall, and under neutral management, for £100 a side, the 'gate money' to go with the stakes, if desired." The conditions having been read over,

Roberts said, "I wish the 'gate money' to go with the stakes."

Dawson: "I am quite agreeable; so that matter is arranged."

The date of the match was quickly settled. It was decided to commence on March 20th, 1899, and to play 750 up each afternoon and evening until the match was finished.

As to the table, the parties arranged that the maker should be mutually agreed upon on Monday, March 13th, a week before the commencement of play.

The matter of the referee was next considered, and both Roberts and Dawson expressed a hope that some well-known amateur player would be found to officiate. There will, we think, be little difficulty in obtaining the services of such a gentleman.

So far all had been plain sailing, and it appeared that the match would very quickly be fixed up. It was not to be, however. Said Roberts: "What about the balls?"

"Oh, ivory, of course," replied Dawson.

"There is no 'of course' about it," retorted Roberts. "You challenge me to play under the new rules of the Billiard Association, and in those rules I find nothing about ivory balls being compulsory."

"Well, whoever heard of a money match of any importance being played with bonzoline balls?" asked Dawson in a tone of surprise.

"Never mind," said Roberts. "The rules say nothing about the balls to be used, and I have as much right to claim that the match be played with bonzoline balls as you have to claim that ivory balls be used."

"Of course, you have a pecuniary interest in playing with bonzoline balls," remarked Dawson. "I am not in that position, and I tell you at once I won't play with bonzoline balls."

"Let us toss up for choice of balls," urged Roberts.

"No," said Dawson emphatically; "there will be no match if you insist upon playing with bonzoline balls."

"I insist upon nothing," Roberts replied. "My point is this, that as you have challenged me to play under the rules of the Billiard Association, and those rules make no stipulation as to the sort of balls to be used, I am entitled to say that bonzoline balls shall be used just as you are to say that ivory shall be used. If you wanted ivory, you should have said so in your challenge."

"I never dreamt of anything but ivory balls in connection with an important match," said Dawson. "Besides, the Billiard Association stipulates that ivory balls shall be used in the World's Championship that it is promoting."

"I don't care for that," said Roberts. "However," he added, "I am quite prepared to leave the question of the balls to be decided by the committee of the Billiard Association, who are responsible for the rules under which we are going to play. If they say that either sort can be used, we must toss for it."

"I can't believe," said Dawson, "that the committee would vote for anything but ivory. If they do, there will certainly be no match. I never heard of an important match for money being played with bonzoline balls, and I'm sure you would never have agreed to play with them in a match a few months ago."

The discussion continued for a while longer, and in the end the editor of the *Sportsman* was asked to communicate with the committee of the Billiard Association, and obtain their ruling as to the balls to be used in the match.

*Sportsman*, November 25th, 1898 :—

ROBERTS v. DAWSON.

THE DISAGREEMENT AS TO THE BALLS.

DECISION OF THE BILLIARD ASSOCIATION.

It may be remembered that when John Roberts and C. Dawson met at the *Sportsman* offices on Monday last to discuss the arrangements for their proposed match of 18,000 up on level terms, under the new rules of the Billiard Association, a disagreement arose as to the sort of balls to be used, Dawson expressing his determination to play only with ivory balls, and Roberts contending that they should decide by the spin of a coin whether ivory or bonzoline balls should be used. Ultimately it was decided to refer the point to the committee of the Billiard Association. Roberts remarked that, as he was to play under the rules of the Billiard Association, he would abide by the decision of the committee, and Dawson declared his belief that the committee would not vote for the use of bonzoline balls in a match of such importance, seeing that they had stipulated that ivory balls must be used in all matches for the championship of Billiards. At the same time, the Huddersfield man made it clear that there would be no match if the committee decided in favour of bonzoline balls.

The matter was accordingly referred to the Billiard Association by the editor of the *Sportsman*, who yesterday received the following reply from the secretary.—

"SIR,—I have to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 21st inst, and, in reply thereto, I beg to inform you that, at a meeting of the committee held this day, the following resolution was unanimously carried.—

"In view of the fact that no match of importance has yet been played with any but ivory balls, and, although no rule of the game of billiards bears directly upon the point raised by Mr. J. Roberts, this committee is of opinion that the match between Roberts and Dawson, being played on level terms, partakes of the nature of a championship, and therefore the conditions as to ivory balls being used for championships may fairly be held to apply in this case."

"Yours, etc.

"W. W STEVENS,

"140, FLEET STREET, E C,  
"November 24th"

"Secretary, Billiard Association of  
"Great Britain and Ireland"

As Roberts intimated his readiness to abide by the decision of the committee of the Billiard Association, and as the committee has expressed an opinion in favour of ivory balls (with which alone Dawson was willing to play), there will now, we hope, be no further obstacle to the drawing up of articles for this most interesting match.

*Sportsman*, November 29th, 1898:—

### THE GREAT MATCH.

ROBERTS *v.* DAWSON.

ARTICLES SIGNED.

What was generally regarded but a short time back as taking rank almost with the impossible has now brought itself within the range of the very probable, indeed, the long-talked-of match on even terms between John Roberts and Charles Dawson appears to be practically assured. The men met by appointment at the *Sportsman* office yesterday, and signed articles for a match in March next on the terms of Dawson's original challenge, namely, to play 18,000 up on even terms, under the new rules of the Billiard Association, "on a neutral Standard table, in a neutral hall, and under neutral management, for £100 a side, the 'gate money' to go with the stakes." Three points only were left unsettled, these relating to the choice of the hall where the match is to be played, the business manager of the affair, and the referee. In connection with the arrangement of these details no insuperable difficulties should arise, and thus everything looks promising for a match between the famous cueists—a match which, we fancy, will prove more attractive than any that has taken place since 1885, in which year Roberts defeated Cook for the championship. It is worthy of note that never once since the year just named has any player met Roberts in a match on even terms, though, of course, W. J. Peall frequently challenged him to a level match at English billiards—the "all in" game—without eliciting a response.

It may be remembered that at a meeting held on Monday in last week a disagreement arose as to the sort of balls to be used in the projected match, Dawson expressing his determination to play only with ivory balls, and Roberts contending that as by the rules of the Billiard Association both ivory and bonzoline were permissible, the point should be settled by the spin of a coin. Ultimately it was agreed to refer the question to the committee of the Billiard Association. That body met on Thursday last and unanimously passed the following resolution: "In view of the fact that no match of importance has yet been played with any but ivory balls, and although no rule of the game of billiards bears directly upon the point raised by Mr. J. Roberts, this committee is of opinion that the match between Roberts and Dawson, being played on level terms, partakes of the nature of a championship, and therefore the conditions as to ivory balls being used for championships may fairly be held to apply in this case."

At the outset of yesterday's meeting Roberts remarked that he had nothing to say against the committee's decision, with which he was perfectly willing to abide. It was then agreed that the ivory balls should be from  $2\frac{1}{16}$  in. to  $2\frac{3}{8}$  in. in diameter, and that three

sets of as nearly as possible the same size should be provided for the purposes of the match.

In accordance with an arrangement arrived at at the previous meeting, it was decided that the game should commence on March 20th next, and be continued afternoon and evening until it was finished, 750 points to be scored at each stage.

As to the "neutral" hall in which the match is to be played, nothing could be definitely decided, but inquiries will be made respecting St. James's Hall, Regent Street, St. George's Hall, Langham Place, and other halls that may be considered suitable.

When the question of management came up for consideration, Dawson asked whether it would be agreeable to his opponent to put the affair in the hands of the Billiard Association, if that body would undertake the task.

"No," replied Roberts hotly, and he added, "nor in the hands of the *Sportsman*. They are neither of them impartial enough for me."

It was arranged that the parties should mutually agree upon a manager. The same course was taken with regard to a referee, both men expressing a hope that some well-known amateur—Mr. R. Remington-Wilson, for instance—might be willing to officiate.

As to the stake money, £25 has already been deposited by each man with the editor of the *Sportsman*, the stakeholder, and it was agreed that a further £25 each should be posted on December 12th, and the remaining £50 each on January 12th.

Just about this time Roberts took occasion to refer to something that had appeared in print as to his "absurd" challenges to Dawson and others. He said: "There is nothing 'absurd' in my challenges. I mean what I say, and I am still open to give Dawson 5,500 points in 21,000, spot and push barred, for £200 a side."

Dawson: "And I suppose you want to play with bonzoline balls?"

Roberts: "Yes, and at the Egyptian Hall. And, further, I will give you £250 if you win, so that you have a chance of making £450 if you can beat me—an amount larger than you'll make during the remainder of the year, I'll wager."

Dawson: "If I don't make anything at all I shan't starve. But let me tell you I don't want any start from you. I want to play you level, and you can give starts to those who require them."

Roberts: "Well, I wanted to clear up the matter of my so-called absurd challenges. You can have the start I have mentioned, or I will give it to anybody else."

Dawson: "Let somebody else have it. I intend to play you on even terms. And now what odds will you lay me about our match?"

Roberts: "What odds? Why, I'll take £100 to £5 you don't finish."

Dawson: "You needn't be afraid about me. I'll finish all right, unless I get shot or meet with some other accident."

After this little digression, attention was turned to the question of

the "gate money," and it was decided that the whole of the receipts should go to the winner after payment of expenses. Roberts remarked that, for his part, he should prefer that the loser pay all expenses, but Dawson was quite content to let the arrangement that had been come to stand good.

Further discussion of no public interest followed, and in the end Articles of Agreement were signed as follows.—

ARTICLES OF AGREEMENT entered into this 28th day of November, 1898, between John Roberts and Charles Dawson, who hereby agree to play a match at billiards, eighteen thousand points up, on level terms, under the rules of the Billiard Association, for one hundred pounds (£100) a side. The match to commence on March the 20th, 1899, and seven hundred and fifty points (750) to be played each afternoon and evening on and after that day (Sundays excepted) until the match is finished. Ivory balls (diameter  $2\frac{1}{8}$  in. to  $2\frac{3}{8}$  in.) to be used, and three sets of the same size to be provided for the match. The match to be played on a Standard table at \_\_\_\_\_ under the management of \_\_\_\_\_ The table to be mutually agreed upon on Monday, March 13th, a week before the commencement of play. The referee also to be mutually agreed upon. Twenty-five pounds (£25) a side is already in the hands of the editor of the *Sportsman*, who is appointed stakeholder; a further sum of twenty-five pounds (£25) shall be deposited with him on Monday, December 12th, 1898, and the remaining fifty pounds (£50) on Thursday, January 12th, 1899. The expenses to be defrayed out of the gate money, and the winner to take the whole of the balance. Either party failing to comply with the terms of these articles shall forfeit all money deposited, and any question arising that is not provided for in the articles shall be left to the judgment of the referee, whose decision shall be final, and subject to no appeal at law or otherwise.

Witness. JOSEPH MACK. (Signed) JOHN ROBERTS.

Witness: JOHN P. MANNOCK. (Signed) C. DAWSON.



# JOHN ROBERTS v. CHARLES DAWSON

FOR £200 AND THE WHOLE OF THE RECEIPTS.

18,000 UP—LEVEL.

First 9,000 played at the ARGYLL HALL, Argyll Street, commencing Monday, March 20th, 1899.

Second 9,000 played at the EGYPTIAN HALL, Piccadilly, commencing Monday, March 27th.

*Referee.*—R. H. RIMINGTON-WILSON, Esq.

*Marker.*—T. HENRY.

---

## ARGYLL HALL.

Monday Afternoon, March 20th, 1899.

### SUMMARY.

DAWSON scored 750.

*Breaks*—22, 27, 24, 27, 66, 35, 24, 27, 152, 150, and 53 (unfinished).

ROBERTS scored 652.

*Breaks*—39, 32, 58, 91, 125, 28, 35, 62, 39, 20.

*Averages*—Dawson, 25.00; Roberts, 22.48.

*Totals*—Dawson, 750; Roberts, 652. Duration of play, 2 hours 12 minutes.

### Monday Evening.

ROBERTS scored 849.

*Breaks*—99, 33, 49, 62, 126, 25, 105.

DAWSON scored 641.

*Breaks*—58, 26, 94, 64, 28, 69, 46, 52, 56, 37, 28.

*Averages*—Roberts, 24.27; Dawson, 18.31.

*Totals*—Roberts, 1,501; Dawson, 1,391. Duration of play, 1 hour 50 minutes.

## Tuesday Afternoon, March 21st.

DAWSON scored 859.

*Breaks*—278, 128, 132, 89, 82, 83.

ROBERTS scored 189

*Breaks*—24, 43, 32, 47.*Averages*—Dawson, 50.52; Roberts, 11.11.*Totals*—Roberts, 1,690; Dawson, 2,250. Duration of play,  
1 hour 50 minutes.

## Tuesday Evening.

DAWSON scored 752.

*Breaks*—156, 56, 104, 138, 32, 76, 122, 48.

ROBERTS scored 528.

*Breaks*—130, 111, 53, 32, 83, 53.*Averages*—Dawson, 31.33; Roberts, 22.00.*Totals*—Dawson, 3,002; Roberts, 2,218. Duration of play,  
2 hours 6 minutes.

## Wednesday Afternoon, March 22nd.

DAWSON scored 748.

*Breaks*—32, 77, 127, 37, 138, 36, 22, 30, 22.

ROBERTS scored 978.

*Breaks*—140, 57, 69, 52, 172, 39, 38, 71, 40, 39, 81, 76*Averages*—Roberts, 30.56; Dawson, 23.12.*Totals*—Dawson, 3,750; Roberts, 3,197. Duration of play,  
2 hours 50 minutes.

## Wednesday Evening.

DAWSON scored 751.

*Breaks*—33, 78, 26, 29, 22, 26, 54, 78, 55, 29, 68.

ROBERTS scored 756.

*Breaks*—26, 43, 23, 163, 32, 33, 34, 29, 55, 21, 72, 35.*Averages*—Dawson, 13.65; Roberts, 14.45.*Totals*—Dawson, 4,501; Roberts, 3,991. Duration of play,  
2 hours 45 minutes

## Thursday Afternoon, March 23rd.

ROBERTS scored 882.

*Breaks*—169, 105, 47, 124, 45, 182, 35, 29.

DAWSON scored 751.

*Breaks*—97, 41, 39, 47, 76, 47, 264.*Averages*—Roberts, 35.29; Dawson, 26.82.*Totals*—Dawson, 5,252; Roberts, 4,873. Duration of play,  
2 hours 37 minutes.

## Thursday Evening.

DAWSON scored 749.

*Breaks*—79, 24, 55, 76, 24, 53, 39, 186, 126.

ROBERTS scored 253.

*Breaks*—38, 75.

*Averages*—Dawson, 27·7, Roberts, 9 38.

*Totals*—Dawson, 6,000, Roberts, 5,128. Duration of play,  
1 hour 50 minutes.

## Friday Afternoon, March 24th.

DAWSON scored 752.

*Breaks*—89, 79, 132, 58, 112, 44, 41, 25, 24, 36, 51.

ROBERTS scored 981.

*Breaks*—180, 132, 83, 66, 60, 37, 27, 26, 81, 143.

*Averages*—Dawson, 28·95; Roberts, 37·73.

*Totals*—Dawson, 6,752; Roberts, 6,109. Duration of play,  
2 hours 36 minutes

## Friday Evening.

DAWSON scored 749.

*Breaks*—87, 126, 56, 342, 40.

ROBERTS scored 969.

*Breaks*—118, 68, 53, 41, 266, 46, 54, 47, 57, 54, 62.

*Averages*—Dawson, 39·42, Roberts, 50·0.

*Totals*—Dawson, 7,501; Roberts, 7,078.

## Saturday Afternoon, March 25th.

ROBERTS scored 1,072.

*Breaks*—151, 48, 69, 73, 114, 31, 34, 86, 28, 129, 55, 31.

DAWSON scored 751.

*Breaks*—58, 58, 52, 132, 31, 22, 121, 46.

*Averages*—Dawson, 19 25, Roberts, 27·49

*Totals*—Dawson, 8,252; Roberts, 8,150. Duration of play,  
2 hours 50 minutes.

## Saturday Evening.

ROBERTS scored 851.

*Breaks*—329, 50, 38, 101, 45, 35, 65.

DAWSON scored 469

*Breaks*—121, 83, 77, 89.

*Averages*—Roberts, 40 52; Dawson, 22·33

*Totals*—Roberts, 9,001; Dawson, 8,721. Duration of play,  
2 hours.

## EGYPTIAN HALL.

## Monday Afternoon, March 27th.

ROBERTS scored 750.

*Breaks*—124, 72, 62, 33, 50, 55, 37.

DAWSON scored 482.

*Breaks*—33, 35, 170, 38.*Averages*—Roberts, 32.60; Dawson, 20.95.*Totals*—Roberts, 9,751; Dawson, 9,163. Duration of play,  
1 hour 45 minutes

## Monday Evening.

ROBERTS scored 750.

*Breaks*—272, 62, 89, 61, 65, 31, 58, 85.

DAWSON scored 456.

*Breaks*—64, 41, 39, 29, 23, 27.*Averages*—Roberts, 25.00; Dawson, 15.2.*Totals*—Roberts, 10,501; Dawson, 9,619.

## Tuesday Afternoon, March 28th.

ROBERTS scored 750.

*Breaks*—64, 63, 48, 155, 121, 108, 71.

DAWSON scored 395.

*Breaks*—67, 52, 59, 22, 32.*Averages*—Roberts, 37.5; Dawson, 19.75.*Totals*—Roberts, 11,251; Dawson, 10,014. Duration of play,  
1 hour 40 minutes.

## Tuesday Evening.

ROBERTS scored 751.

*Breaks*—43, 75, 136, 42, 58, 26 (thrice).

DAWSON scored 523.

*Breaks*—84, 76, 61, 29, 28, 75, 21.*Averages*—Roberts, 22.76; Dawson, 15.84.*Totals*—Roberts, 12,002; Dawson, 10,537.

## Wednesday Afternoon, March 29th.

ROBERTS scored 748.

*Breaks*—285, 45, 40, 52, 81, 126, 49, 73, 37, 32.

DAWSON scored 828.

*Breaks*—185, 95, 94, 104, 98, 101, 31.*Averages*—Roberts, 24.93; Dawson, 27.6.*Totals*—Roberts, 12,750; Dawson, 11,365. Duration of play,  
2 hours 15 minutes.

## Wednesday Evening.

ROBERTS scored 751.

*Breaks*—112, 62, 36, 87, 100, 59, 41, 26.

DAWSON scored 700.

*Breaks*—85, 34, 57, 29, 25, 164, 56, 49.*Averages*—Roberts, 24.22; Dawson, 22.58.*Totals*—Roberts, 13,501; Dawson, 12,065. Duration of play, 2 hours 20 minutes.

## Thursday Afternoon, March 30th.

ROBERTS scored 750.

*Breaks*—93, 140, 316, 69, 93.

DAWSON scored 483.

*Breaks*—35, 97, 78, 165, 51, 25.*Averages*—Roberts, 44.11; Dawson, 28.41.*Totals*—Roberts, 14,251; Dawson, 12,548. Duration of play, 1 hour 40 minutes.

## Thursday Evening.

ROBERTS scored 751.

*Breaks*—106, 236, 91, 54, 46, 144.

DAWSON scored 376.

*Breaks*—86, 40, 37, 46, 42.*Averages*—Roberts, 37.55; Dawson, 18.8.*Totals*—Roberts, 15,002; Dawson, 12,924.

## The following day was Good Friday.

## Saturday Afternoon, April 1st.

ROBERTS scored 748.

*Breaks*—85, 131, 43, 48, 82, 94, 76.

DAWSON scored 1,275.

*Breaks*—84, 212, 112, 94, 243, 63, 64, 29.*Averages*—Roberts, 22.66; Dawson, 38.75.*Totals*—Roberts, 15,750; Dawson, 14,199. Duration of play, 2 hours 55 minutes.

## Saturday Evening.

ROBERTS scored 751.

*Breaks*—80, 102, 89, 75, 79, 57.

DAWSON scored 1,495.

*Breaks*—83, 47, 104, 228, 80, 185, 155, 65, 136, 126.*Averages*—Roberts, 22.76; Dawson, 42.24.*Totals*—Roberts, 16,501; Dawson, 15,694. Duration of play, 3 hours 10 minutes.

# MODERN BILLIARDS

313

## Monday Afternoon, April 3rd.

ROBERTS scored 749.

*Breaks*—188, 42, 43, 45, 60, 56.

DAWSON scored 268.

*Breaks*—39, 56, 48, 56.

*Averages*—Roberts, 50.06; Dawson, 17.9

*Totals*—Roberts, 17,250; Dawson, 15,925.

## Monday Evening.

ROBERTS scored 750.

*Breaks*—213, 108, 207, 215, 44, 88

DAWSON scored 224

*Breaks*—58, 71, 59, 26

*Averages*—Roberts, 62.5; Dawson, 18.66

*Totals*—Roberts, 18,000; Dawson, 16,186. Duration of play, 1 hour 10 minutes.

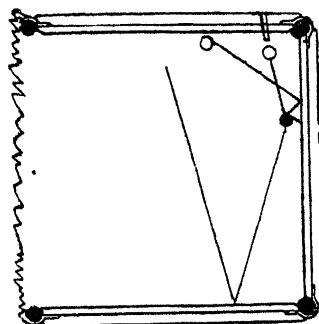
## AVERAGES FOR THE WHOLE MATCH.

Players' Names	Points Scored	By Misses	No of Innings	Highest Break	Average Pts Scored each Break
ROBERTS ...	17,923	.. 67	. 639	329	... 28.04
DAWSON ..	16,125	61	638	.. 342	.. 25.24

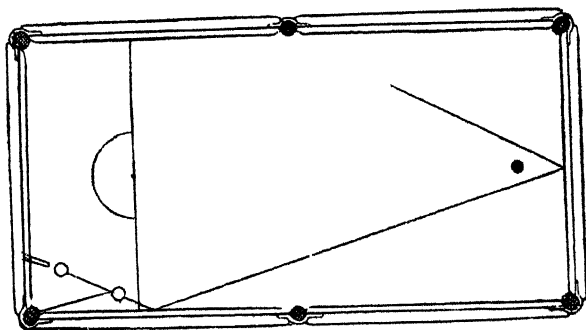
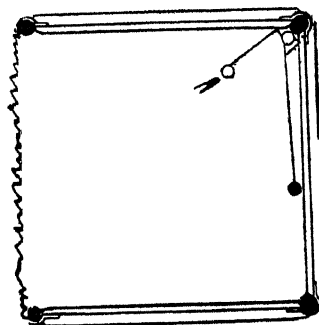
The "gate" receipts, after deducting expenses, amounted to £2,154. The value of the match to the winner was, therefore, this amount plus the stake of £100, *i.e.* £2,254. The charge for admission was 20s., 10s., and 5s.

## SOME STROKES IN THE MATCH.

Cannon by Roberts, bunting the balls together. Played very low on the cue ball, with strong left-hand side.

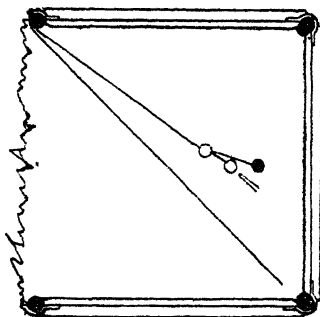


Cannon by Roberts.

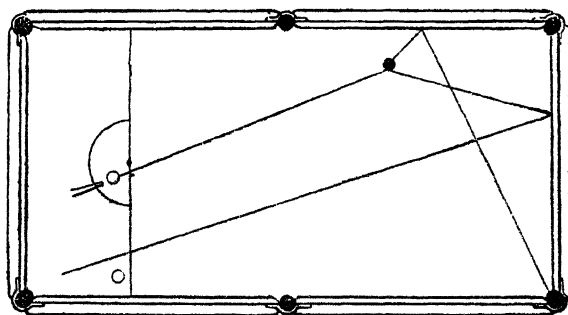
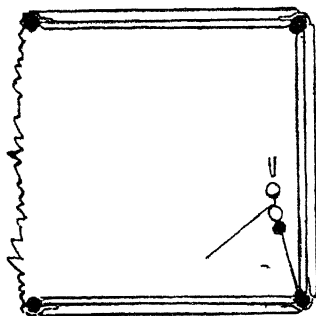


Difficult screw-back loser by Roberts, leaving position for a good break.

Screw-back cannon, made by both Dawson and Roberts. The opponent's ball was brought off the angle of No. 2 pocket and left at the top of the table, in excellent position for the continuance of the break.

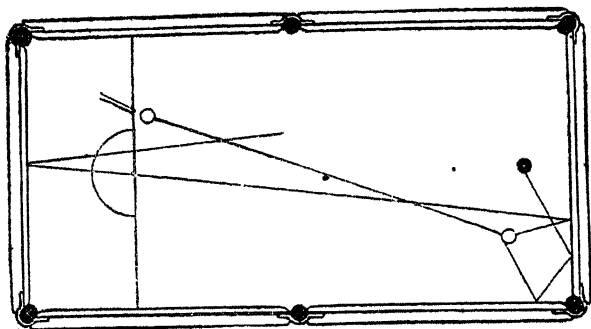


Very fine plant winner by Roberts. The cue ball was hit very low, and was almost a stab. The two object balls were touching

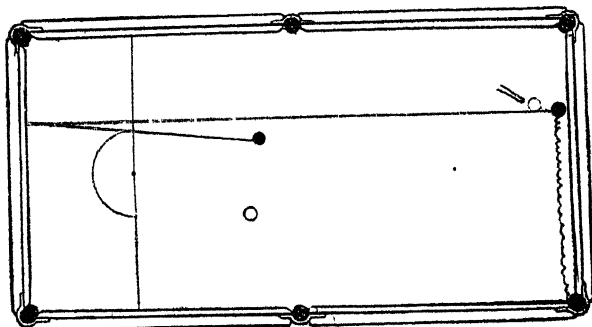


Roberts played here for a five stroke, but only succeeded in getting the winner. This stroke was described in the sporting press as a fluke.





Cannon by Roberts The cue ball was struck above the centre without side.



Splendid screw loser by Dawson, bringing the red out of baulk into position for losing hazard break.

# INDEX

	PAGE
American Tournament first played in England . . .	23
Australia, Roberts' first visit to . . .	29
Bagatelle Match between Roberts and Grundy . . .	27
Barber, J., Anecdotes of . . .	1
Baulks, Some useful . . .	116
Bennett, J., Anecdotes of . . .	12
Bennett, Alf., "No fluke for three years" . . .	12
Billings, Mr., exciting game with Roberts . . .	38
Bonzoline balls, Roberts plays exclusively with . . .	42
"    "    probably used by majority of players . . .	135
"    "    Break by Stevenson made with . . .	237
"    "    Roberts claims to play level match against Dawson with . . .	303
Bowles, J., never up to championship form . . .	11
Break, an actual, by Roberts . . .	135
"    "    by W. Mitchell . . .	180
"    "    by an Amateur . . .	199
"    "    by W. Spiller from the same leave . . .	208
"    "    of 534 by C. Dawson . . .	224
"    "    of 165 by C. Dawson . . .	234
"    "    of 125 by H. W. Stevenson . . .	238
"    "    by W. Spiller . . .	240
"    "    by W. Osborne . . .	242
"    "    by F. Bateman . . .	246
"    a Losing Hazard, for practice, by W. Mitchell . . .	220

Broadfoot, Major, game with Roberts	.	.	.
Brushing table, instructions for	.	.	.
Cannons, Close	.	.	.
„ Cushion	.	.	.
„ by first striking cushion	.	.	.
„ Following	.	.	.
„ Kiss	.	.	.
Century, Match of the	.	.	.
Championship, The,	.	9, 11, 12, 14, 2	.
„ „ Rules for	.	.	.
„ „ Match for. First	.	.	.
„ „ „ Second	.	.	.
„ „ „ Third	.	.	.
„ „ „ Fourth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Fifth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Sixth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Seventh	.	.	.
„ „ „ Eighth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Ninth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Tenth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Eleventh	.	.	.
„ „ „ Twelfth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Thirteenth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Fourteenth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Fifteenth	.	.	.
„ „ „ Sixteenth	.	.	.
Cook, W., begins to make breaks of 300	.	.	.
„ Match with Roberts at the Bentinck Club	.	.	.
„ his rooms a gathering-place for Pool players	.	.	.
„ first takes a start from Roberts	.	.	.
„ sensational billiards at his rooms	.	.	.
Courjon, Eugene, best player in India, anecdotes of	.	.	.
Cues, best length and weight for	.	.	.
„ how to care for	.	.	.

	PAGE
Dufton, W., Match with Green for £1,000 . . .	7
Drayson, Colonel, Game with Roberts . . .	31
Dickinson, C.S., Mr. J.       "       " . . .	31
Dacca, Nawab of . . . . .	23, 37
Dawson, Charles, Breaks by . . . . .	224, 234
"       "       level Match with Roberts . . .	300
Edinburgh, Sensational Game at . . . . .	19
Elliott, Sir William, Anecdotes of . . . . .	5
Evans, H. . . . .	7
Four-handed Match · Roberts and Cook against Stanley and Taylor . . . . .	24
Galway, Dr., Game with Roberts . . . . .	33
Gathering Strokes . . . . .	111
Green, E., Anecdotes of . . . . .	18
Green, W. M. . . . .	6
Guildhall Tavern, Handicap at . . . . .	22
Handicap at St. James's Hall in 1867 . . . . .	3
Herst, J. . . . .	1, 6
Hotel, A strange meeting at an . . . . .	16
India, Standard of Amateur play in, higher than at home . . .	35
Ironing Table, Instructions for . . . . .	48
Ives, Frank, Match with Roberts . . . . .	40
Johnson, Julius, Anecdote illustrating the antagonism with Moss . . . . .	6
Kilkenny, L., Pyramid Match with Roberts . . . . .	7
"       funny story by . . . . .	8
Losing Hazards, easy . . . . .	51
"       "       with side . . . . .	58
"       "       from cushion . . . . .	86
"       "       run-through . . . . .	120
Manchester, Handicap at the Post Office Hotel . . . . .	5
"       Handicap at the Bush Hotel . . . . .	21
Mant, Major, Games with Roberts . . . . .	31

	PAGE
Mitchell, W. . . . .	14
„ Breaks by . . . . .	180, 220
Mohammed Bey and the Sapphires . . . . .	29
Morris, Mr., Game with Roberts . . . . .	32
Moss, W, turns five shillings into £1,100 . . . . .	5
Nell Gwynne Tavern, Handicap at . . . . .	16
Newcastle, Roberts' rooms at . . . . .	5
Nichol, the Nottingham bookmaker, anecdotes of . . . . .	5
Old-time Tactics, illustration of . . . . .	5
One-handed Match, Roberts, senr, and Bowles . . . . .	11
Osborne W., Break by . . . . .	242
Parsee accuses Roberts of being in league with the devil . . . . .	32
“Patience” Game, a Billiard . . . . .	248
Position, Importance of . . . . .	125
Pursell's Pool Room . . . . .	19
Pyramids, Cook and Roberts play for two hours without either taking a ball . . . . .	15
Pyramids Championship, Cook and Richards play for the . . . . .	25
Roberts, John, Junr, closest Match ever played . . . . .	7
„ „ first handicap won by . . . . .	3
„ „ Sensational Match with Timbrell . . . . .	8
„ „ Match at Bentinck Club with Cook . . . . .	9
„ „ Remarks on first Championship Match . . . . .	9
„ „ On his father's position as Billiard Player . . . . .	10
„ „ three years an abstainer . . . . .	16
„ „ exciting Match at Pyramids with Cook . . . . .	20
„ „ his only appearance as a Bagatelle Player . . . . .	27
„ „ first visit to Australia and India . . . . .	28
„ „ appointed Court Billiard Player to the Rajah of Jeypore . . . . .	30, 38
„ „ second visit to India . . . . .	35
„ „ first consecutive cannon record . . . . .	35
„ „ first gives a start to Cook . . . . .	39
„ „ beaten by Ives . . . . .	40

# INDEX

321

	PAGE
Roberts, John, Junr., record break . . . .	41
„ „ Match with Dawson . . . .	300, 42
„ „ plays exclusively with Bonzoline Balls . .	42
Ram Singh, Rajah of Jeypore . . . .	30, 38
Rest, mode of using . . . .	54
Scoring from a "safe" position . . . .	77
Shorter, F. . . .	33
Spiller, W., Breaks by . . . .	208, 240
Spots, position of . . . .	47
Stevenson, H. W., Break by . . . .	238
Strength . . . .	55
Taylor, Tom . . . .	27, 28, 34
Williams, Mr. Hugh, a frequent player with Mr. Barber for heavy stakes . . . .	1
„ „ a betting anecdote . . . .	7
Weston, Mr., Game with Roberts . . . .	33
Winning Hazards . . . .	83, 106



A SELECTION  
FROM  
C. ARTHUR PEARSON'S CATALOGUE



"A book to buy, read, and keep."—*Literary World*.

## War's Brighter Side

By Julian Ralph

Extra crown 8vo, with 15 Illustrations, cloth

Price 6s.

The history and principal contents of *The Friend*, the unique newspaper edited by RUDYARD KIPLING, JULIAN RALPH, MR. LONDON, MR. GWYNNE (War Correspondents), and published at Bloemfontein at the special request of Lord Roberts during his occupation.

It contains 13 contributions by

**RUDYARD KIPLING,**

most of which are now published for the first time in this country. Dr. CONAN DOYLE, Lord STANLEY, and many officers and other eminent men also contribute to this interesting and unique journal.

"As entertaining as it is instructive. This is one of the war books which will live."—*Globe*

"Very entertaining."—*Daily Telegraph*.

"A very interesting book."—*St. James's Gazette*

"A really desirable possession"—*Morning Post*

*Copy of a letter from Earl Roberts*

17 Dover St, W.  
5th May 1901.

Dear Mr. Ralph—

Thank you very much for presenting me with a copy of "War's Brighter Side." It is extremely interesting, and I am delighted to possess a copy.—Believe me, yours very truly,  
Roberts, F. M

## The Private Life of the King

By

One of His Majesty's  
Servants

With numerous Illustrations.

Crown 8vo

Price 5s.

Handsomely bound in royal  
blue, with crest in gold

Some of the 18 chapters are—

CHAPTER II

THE KING'S DOMESTIC LIFE

CHAPTER V

THE HEAD OF SOCIETY

CHAPTER VI

THE LOVE OF HIS LIFE

CHAPTER VIII

LONDON LIFE

CHAPTER XI

THE KING AND HIS GAMES

CHAPTER XV

WHAT THE KING WEARS

CHAPTER XVI

OUR LORD PROTECTOR

CHAPTER XVIII

IS THE KING A GOOD FELLOW?

C. Arthur Pearson, Limited, Henrietta Street, W.C.

# Fun on the Billiard Table

A Collection of 75 Amusing  
Tricks and Games, with Photo-  
graphs and Diagrams

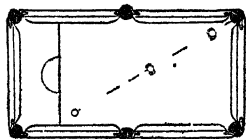
By "Stancliffe"

Crown 8vo

Post free, 2s. 6d.

## TRICK WITH MATCHBOXES

Get two outside covers of any  
sort of the ordinary matchboxes,  
large size. Place them on the  
billiard table with a ball on each.  
Put a third ball in a line with a  
pocket and the two other balls as  
in diagram.



Play a hard shot with the ball  
on the table into the pocket through  
the matchboxes, which should fly  
off the table, and the two balls  
will occupy the places where the  
matchboxes stood.

The above is an example of one  
of the seventy-five tricks contained  
in the book.

"To say that no billiard-room  
should be without this joyous and in-  
genious little volume is nothing: there  
is no player, amateur or professional,  
who would not get his moneysworth  
out of it."—*Sportsman*.

THIRD LARGE EDITION

# Besieged with Baden-Powell

A Complete Record of the  
Siege of Mafeking

By J. Emerson Neilly

Special War Correspondent of the  
"Pall Mall Gazette" in Mafeking

Crown 8vo

Price 1s. net; post free, 1s. 3d.

"Mr. Neilly tells admirably the  
thrilling story of the siege."—*Scotsman*.



"As a realistic  
picture of how  
things actually  
happen, no less  
than as a worthy  
record of one of  
the most splendid  
incidents of our  
history, 'Besieged with B.-P.' is a  
notable work."—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

# Towards Pretoria

By Julian Ralph

A Record of the War to the  
Capture of Bloemfontein

Bound in Real Khaki and Scarlet

Price 6s.

"Brisk and graphic."—*Scotsman*.

"Distinctly one of the war books  
to be read."—*Literature*.

"Cannot fail to be popular."—*Echo*.

"Mr. Ralph as a descriptive writer  
is amongst the first of the day."—*Sheffield Independent*.

C. Arthur Pearson, Henrietta Street, W.C.

# The Illustrated Scarlet Library

Printed on Antique Cream-laid Paper. Large crown 8vo, with 8 Original Illustrations.

**Price 2s. each Volume.**

MESSRS. C. ARTHUR PEARSON, Ltd., have just issued the First Volumes of THE ILLUSTRATED SCARLET LIBRARY, which will consist of an Edition of Standard Works by Popular Authors.

The unique feature of THE SCARLET LIBRARY will be the excellent quality of the Illustrations, Printing and Binding, combined with the very popular price of Two Shillings each Volume.

The first four volumes in this series are—

## The Pilgrim's Progress

By JOHN BUNYAN, Illustrated by H. M. BROCK.

## The Wide, Wide World

By SUSAN WARNER. Illustrated by FRED PEGRAM.

## Uncle Tom's Cabin

By H. BEECHER STOWE. With 8 Illustrations by LOUIS BETTS.

## Ben Hur

By General LEW WALLACE. Illustrated by H. M. BROCK.

*To be followed by many others.*

# Pearson's Illustrated Gossipy Guide=Books

*With New Maps and the latest information for all travellers, arranged Alphabetically, and with beautiful Illustrations from photographs specially taken for this Series. Foolscap 8vo, price One Shilling, and in a few cases Sixpence each.*

This Series has been designed for the convenience of the traveller wishing an accurate and up-to-date Guide-book, containing full information of all kinds for those wishing a brightly written and handy Guide-book at a moderate price.

The Series will consist of Guide-books to all seaside and inland resorts of importance in England, Scotland, and Ireland, and to some on the Continent.

- No. 1. BOURNEMOUTH AND DISTRICT (including the NEW FOREST) Price 1s.
- No. 2. SWANAGE AND DISTRICT. By CLIVE HOLLAND Price 6d.
- No. 3. NORTH CORNWALL. Price 1s.
- No. 4. ILFRACOMBE AND DISTRICT. Price 1s.
- No. 5. GLASGOW, THE CLYDE, AND EXHIBITION. Price 1s.
- No. 6. GREAT YARMOUTH, LOWESTOFT, AND CROMER Price 1s.
- No. 7. THE ENGLISH LAKES. Price 1s.
- No. 8. SOUTH DEVON. Price 1s.
- No. 9. WEYMOUTH. Price 1s.
- No. 10. THE THAMES. Price 1s.
- No. 11. THE ISLE OF WIGHT. Price 1s. (*Shortly*)
- No. 12. NORTH WALES. (*Shortly*.)
- No. 13. CHANNEL ISLANDS, NORMANDY, AND BRITTANY. Price 1s.
- No. 14. WHITBY AND DISTRICT. (*Shortly*)
- No. 15. SCARBOROUGH AND DISTRICT. Price 1s. (*Shortly*)
- No. 16. OBAN AND THE WESTERN HIGHLANDS (*Shortly*)
- No. 17. BRIGHTON AND DISTRICT. (*Shortly*)
- No. 18. PARIS. (*Shortly*.)
- No. 19. EDINBURGH AND DISTRICT. (*Shortly*)

*To be followed by many others.*

C. Arthur Pearson, Limited, Henrietta Street, W.C.

# Abyssinia

Through the Lion Land to  
the Court of the Lion  
of Judah

By

Herbert Vivian

Author of "Tunisia," "Sevia"

Demy 8vo. With 2 Maps  
and 80 Illustrations

Price 15s.

"An entertaining narrative . . .  
useful and pleasant reading."—*Morn-  
ing Post*.

"A new book by Mr. Vivian is  
like a glass of champagne to sea-sick  
tourists. From cover to cover his  
latest work does not cease to sparkle."  
—*Morning Advertiser*.

"The pictures of Abyssinian life  
which Mr. Vivian so skilfully draws  
are many-coloured and very vivid."  
—*Daily Graphic*.

"A valuable book."—*Literature*.

"A delightful book."—*M. A. P.*

"Full of interest, and illustrated  
with some delightful photographs, this  
book of Mr. Vivian's is sure of a warm  
welcome."—*Irish Times*.

SECOND IMPRESSION

# The Siege of Kumassi

By Lady Hodgson

Wife of Sir Frederic M. Hodgson, late  
Governor of the Gold Coast

Demy 8vo, profusely Illustrated

Price 21s.

"A handsome volume. It is an  
interesting, valuable, and vivid account  
of the siege."—*Daily Graphic*.

"Of remarkable interest. Lady  
Hodgson is to be congratulated upon a  
volume which will be read with keen  
interest, and with admiration alike of  
the courage and endurance she dis-  
played, and of the skill with which she  
tells her story."—*Standard*.

"There is a delightful, simple  
womanliness in all she says, and the  
result is a singularly vivid picture of a  
stirring episode."—*Outlook*.



"A very interesting account, made  
graphic and vivid by the natural inten-  
sity of the writer's feelings. Her book  
is likely to live as part and parcel of  
the literature of feminine adventure and  
endurance."—*Globe*.

C. Arthur Pearson, Limited, Henrietta Street, W.C.

# The Best Books for the Youngsters

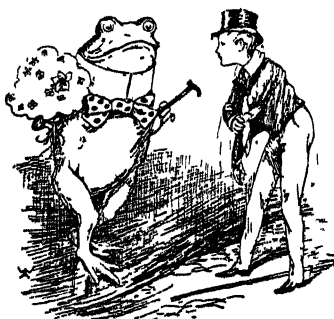
By

George Edward Farrow

Handsomely bound in cloth, gilt  
edges, and all are illustrated  
by either HARRY FURNISS and  
DOROTHY FURNISS, or ALAN  
WRIGHT

Extra crown 8vo

Price 5s. each



**The Wallypug of Why**

**The Missing Prince**

**The Wallypug in London**

**Adventures in Wallypugland**

**The Little Panjandrum's  
Dodo**

**The Mandarin's Kite**

# How to Take and Fake Photographs

By

Clive Holland

Author of  
"Practical Hints on Photography,"  
"The Artistic in Photography,"  
etc. etc.

With numerous Illustrations.

Crown 8vo, cloth

Price 1s. ; postage 2d. extra

CHAPTER I

THE DARK ROOM

CHAPTER II

CAMERAS AND PLATES

CHAPTER III

ON SELECTION OF SUBJECTS

CHAPTER IV

EXPOSURE AND DEVELOPMENT

CHAPTER V

INTENSIFICATION, REDUCTION,  
AND AFTER-TREATMENT OF  
NEGATIVES

CHAPTER VI

PRINTING PROCESSES

CHAPTER VII

MOUNTS, MOUNTING, AND FRAM-  
ING

CHAPTER VIII

COMPETITION AND EXHIBITION  
WORK

CHAPTER IX

SOME DECORATIVE USES OF  
PHOTOGRAPHS

CHAPTER X

FINAL HINTS

C. Arthur Pearson, Limited, Henrietta Street, W.C.

THIRD EDITION

## Becky

By Helen Mathers

Author of "Coming thro' the Rye,"  
"Cherry Ripe," "Bam Wildfire," &c.

Crown 8vo, cloth

Price 6s.

"Miss Mathers draws women of undeniable vitality . . . a singular mixture of instruction, impertinence, bizarrerie, cleverness, artificiality, absurdity, and womanly nature."—*Outlook*.

"Eminently readable . . . undeniably amusing."—*Daily Telegraph*.

"One of the most entertaining and one of the most thoroughly alive stories I have met with for many a long day."—*Echo*.

"Without following throughout the thread of Miss Mathers's stirring story, it is plain it will imbue every one who peruses it with an ardent wish to go to the Cape forthwith."—*Morning Advertiser*.

## The Skipper's Wooing

By W. W. Jacobs

Crown 8vo, cloth

Price 3s. 6d.

"It contains scenes which we shall not be able to recall without a smile for many weeks to come. . . . It is a good story well told, and full of humour and drollery."—*Daily Telegraph*.

## TWO FAMOUS NOVELS

By C. J. Cutcliffe Hyne

Crown 8vo, cloth

Price 6s. each

## Adventures of Captain Kettle

AND

## Further Adventures of Captain Kettle

"The reader of fiction who has not made the acquaintance of Mr. Cutcliffe Hyne's fascinating little sea-captain is to be pitied. He would be well advised to purchase the earlier adventures first, then to read these, and if he is not unfeignedly sorry when Mr. Hyne, at the end of the present volume, gently retires Kettle to a border farm and a competency it will not be the author's fault."—*Daily Telegraph*.

"Likely to be not only one of the most read, but also one of the most talked of works of fiction."—*World*.

"Never has a hero won the heart of the public so spontaneously as this fire-eating little sailor, whose name has become as familiar and as typical as Dickens's Captain Cuttle."—*Birmingham Gazette*.

C. Arthur Pearson, Henrietta Street, W.C.

# The Home Arts Self-Teacher

How to teach yourself

DRAWING  
LITHOGRAPHY  
ETCHING  
ILLUSTRATING  
WATER-COLOUR PAINTING  
PAINTING IN OILS  
MINIATURE PAINTING  
PAINTING IN PASTEL  
TAPESTRY PAINTING  
DISTEMPER PAINTING  
PAINTING ON SILK  
FAN PAINTING  
ILLUMINATION  
CHINA PAINTING  
GLASS PAINTING  
MODELLING IN CLAY  
MODELLING IN GESSO  
WOOD CARVING  
FRET SAWING  
POKER WORK  
PYROGRAVURE  
LEATHER DECORATION  
SAW-PIERCING  
ETCHING ON METAL  
METAL HAMMERING  
BENT-IRON WORK  
APPLIED DESIGN  
ORNAMENT  
WALL-PAPER DESIGNING  
TEXTILE DESIGNING  
TILE DESIGNING  
DAMAGED CHINA RESTORING  
"GRANGERISING"  
TAXIDERMY

&c. &c.

*With nearly 600 Designs and Illustrations.*

Complete in 12 Parts. Price 7d. net Each.  
Case for Binding, Price 1s. 6d.

After the Issue of Part 12 in August 1901,  
"The Home Arts Self-Teacher" will be for  
sale, complete, in a handsome cloth  
cover Price 7s. 6d. net.

*An Illustrated Prospectus will be sent free on  
application from all Booksellers, or from  
the Publishers.*

# Small Gardens

and

How to Make the Most  
of Them

By Violet Biddle

Crown 8vo, cloth.

Price 1s.

This handbook teems with hints and  
winkles of the utmost importance  
to amateur gardeners

Some of the 18 Chapters are:—

**The Management of Room Plants**

—Best kinds for "roughing it"—The  
proper way of watering them," &c.

**Window Boxes**—How to make them

—Suitable soil—Window-plants for dif-  
ferent aspects, &c.

**Table Decoration**—Preserving and  
resuscitating flowers—Table of flowers in  
season, &c.

**Various Hints**—Artificial manures—

Labelling—Cutting off dead flowers—  
Buying plants.

&c. &c.

# "Kitchener of Khartoum"

By Horace G. Groser

Author of

"The Life of Lord Roberts," &c.

Crown 8vo, cloth.

Price 2s. 6d.

C. Arthur Pearson, Limited, Henrietta Street, W.C.

# Woodings and Weddings in Many Climes

By

Louise Jordan Miln

Author of "When We Were Strolling  
Players in the East," &c.

With 48 Full-page  
Illustrations. Demy 8vo.

Price 16s.

"Fascinating text. . . . Fascinating pictures."—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

"A most attractive and sumptuously got-up volume, brightly written, and enriched with numerous photographs. . . . A charming gift-book."—*Daily News*.

"Full of charm as of information, and is plentifully and beautifully illustrated from photographs."—*Scotsman*.

"Should prove as popular with the single as with the wedded, written with such sympathy, humour, and with such a sense of the goodness and joy of life that the veriest sceptic of wedded bliss must acknowledge the unfailing charm of her discourse."—*Lady's Pictorial*.

"A beautiful volume and an interesting work."—*Glasgow Herald*.

# The North American Indians of To-day

By George Bird Grinnell,  
Ph.D.

Author of "Pawnee Hero Stories  
and Folk Tales," &c.

Illustrated with 55 Full-page  
Portraits of Living Indians.

Demy 4to, bound in art canvas.

Price £1, 1s. net.

"We cannot be sufficiently grateful to Mr. Grinnell for having decided to publish his book. . . . A real contribution to ethnography. As to the actual life of the Red Man of to-day, we must refer our readers to the volume itself."—*Daily Chronicle*.

13th Thousand

# The Private Life of Queen Victoria

By One of Her Majesty's  
Servants

With numerous Illustrations.

Crown 8vo, cloth.

Price 2s. 6d. post free.

"It gives a charming sketch of Her Majesty as the mistress of her own household and as the head of her large family."—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

C. Arthur Pearson, Henrietta Street, W C.



FOURTH EDITION

## Nell Gwyn

By F. Frankfort Moore  
Author of "The Jessamy Bride," &c.

Crown 8vo

Price 6s.

"'Nell Gwyn' has certainly never been before the reading public in a more interesting and agreeable light. . . . Every page of the book sparkles with wit. . . . A sprightly, entertaining, and clever story."—*Scotsman*.

"The passages from the life of 'Nell Gwyn' are set out with animation."—*Athenæum*.

"A brisk and entertaining sketch of the life and manners of the Court of the Restoration."—*Spectator*.

"A brilliant novel."—*World*.

## The Phantom Army

By Max Pemberton

Crown 8vo, cloth

Price 3s. 6d.

"A strange, stirring, and romantic story."—*Scotsman*.

"A brilliant book."—*Daily News*.

"As a romantic tale, full of life and colour, 'The Phantom Army' excels anything else that Mr. Pemberton has yet done."—*Speaker*.

The Most Successful Novel  
of Modern Times

FOURTEENTH ENGLISH EDITION

## David Harum

A Story of American Life

By

Edward Noyes Westcott

Crown 8vo, cloth

Price 6s.

The Sales of this Book have  
reached the phenomenal  
number of **620,000**

Mr. CHAMBERLAIN says: "I have read 'David Harum' with great appreciation."

Dr. JOSEPH PARKER says: "I have read 'David Harum' and found it most entrancing."

Sir HENRY CAMPBELL-BANNERMAN says: "I have read 'David Harum' with interest as presenting a fresh and characteristic type of man."

"Set forth with loving fidelity and rare humour."—*Outlook*.

"Full of humour and pathos."—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

"Altogether a refreshing and amusing book."—*Liverpool Post*.

"Almost impossible to open the book without coming on some droll saying or laughable incident."—*Review of Reviews*.

"Delightful."—*Echo*.

C. Arthur Pearson, Henrietta Street, W.C.

FORTHCOMING BOOKS

---

**Ellen Terry and Her Sisters**

AN AUTHORISED BIOGRAPHY

By T. EDGAR PEMBERTON

Author of "The Kendals," etc.

WITH ABUNDANT ILLUSTRATIONS

*Demy 8vo. Price 16s.*

Mr T. EDGAR PEMBERTON has been cordially assisted by Miss Terry and Sir Henry Irving in the preparation of this book. Miss Terry has gained so high a position in the public estimation that such a book cannot fail to be of the greatest interest to all, whether playgoers or not.

---

**Great and Small Fish of Florida**

By J TURNER-TURNER

WITH  
REPRODUCTIONS OF 48 MAGNIFICENT PHOTOGRAPHS  
IN TWO COLOURS

*Crown 4to, cloth. Price 10s. 6d. nett*

---

NEW EDITION

**The Confessions of a Poacher**

Being the True Adventures of a Living Poacher

By J CONNELL

*Crown 8vo, paper covers. Price 1s.*

---

**Pearson's Fortune Teller**

BY CARDS AND CRYSTAL, Etc.

Edited by PROFESSOR FOLI

*Crown 8vo, cloth Price 1s*

---

**Pearson's Dream Book**

By PROFESSOR FOLI

*Crown 8vo, cloth. Price 1s.*

---

C. Arthur Pearson, Ltd., Henrietta Street, W.C.

THE MOST SUCCESSFUL NOVEL OF  
MODERN TIMES

# DAVID HARUM

*A Story of American Life*

By EDWARD NOYES WESTCOTT

*Crown 8vo, cloth. Price 6s*

The Sales of this Book have exceeded  
the phenomenal number of

**620,000**

Mr. CHAMBERLAIN says:—"I have read 'David Harum' with great appreciation."  
Dr. JOSEPH PARKER says:—"I have read 'David Harum' and found it most entrancing."

Sir HENRY CAMPBELL-BANNERMAN says:—"I have read 'David Harum' with interest as presenting a fresh and characteristic type of man."

"Set forth with loving fidelity and rare humour."—*Outlook*.

"Full of humour and pathos."—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

"Altogether a refreshing and amusing book."—*Liverpool Post*.

"Almost impossible to open the book without coming on some droll saying or laughable incident."—*Review of Reviews*.

"Delightful."—*Echo*.

**A REALLY HUMOUROUS BOOK**

THIRD EDITION

# THE NEW MASTER

By ARNOLD GOLSWORTHY

Author of "Hands in Darkness"

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS BY TOM BROWNE

*Crown 8vo, cloth. Price 3s. 6d.*

"Mr. Golsworthy is a born humourist. This book is brimful of fun, and it shows so keen an insight into boy nature, and so much humour that it ought to commend itself to those who are capable of enjoying a healthy laugh."

*Glasgow Herald.*

# LOUIS TRACY'S GREAT NOVEL THE FINAL WAR

*A Story of the Great Betrayal*

WITH EIGHT ILLUSTRATIONS BY E. F. SHERIE

*Crown 8vo, cloth. Price 3s. 6d.*

**AT ALL BOOKSELLERS, RAILWAY BOOKSTALLS, AND LIBRARIES**